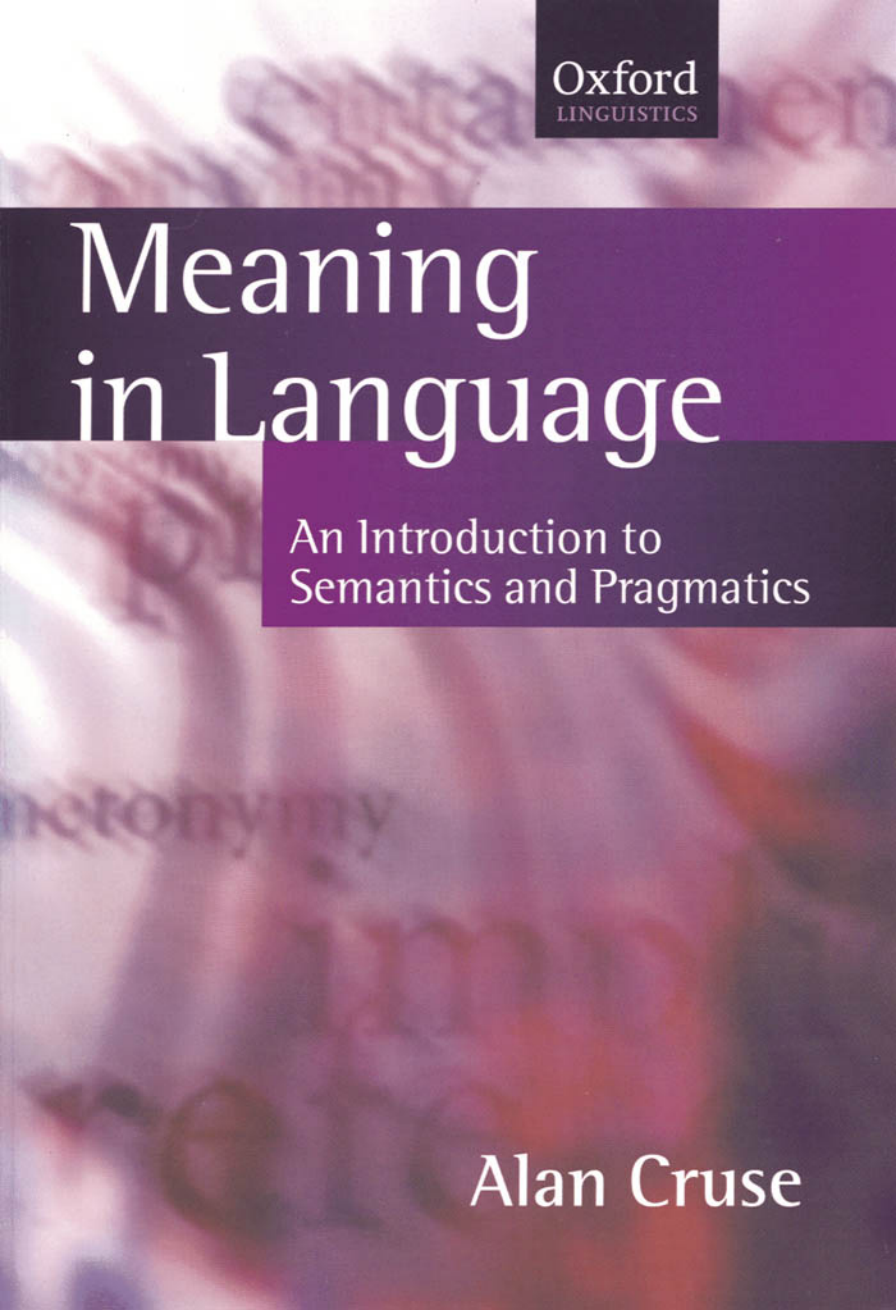

Oxford
LINGUISTICS
Meaning in Language
An Introduction to Semantics and Pragmatics
Alan Cruse

OXFORD TEXTBOOKS IN LINGUISTICS

Series editors
Keith Brown, Eve V. Clark, Jim Miller, Lesley Milroy,
Geoffrey K. Pullum, and Peter Roach

Meaning in Language

An Introduction to Semantics and Pragmatics

Meaning in Language

An Introduction to Semantics and Pragmatics

D. Alan Cruse
University of Manchester

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Athens Auckland Bangkok Bogotá Buenos Aires Calcutta
Cape Town Chennai Dar es Salaam Delhi Florence Hong Kong Istanbul
Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Mumbai
Nairobi Paris São Paulo Singapore Taipei Tokyo Toronto Warsaw

with associated companies in Berlin Ibadan

Oxford is a trade mark of Oxford University Press
in the UK and in certain other countries

Published in the United States
by Oxford University Press Inc., New York

© Oxford University Press 2000

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,
without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press,
or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate
reprographics rights organizations. Enquiries concerning reproduction
outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department,
Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover
and you must impose the same condition on any acquirer

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Data available

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

(Data applied for)

ISBN 0–19–870010–5

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Typeset by RefineCatch Limited, Bungay, Suffolk
Printed in Great Britain
on acid-free paper by
Bath Press Ltd., Bath, Avon

To Paule, Pierre, and Lisette

Contents

Typographic conventions ix
Preface x

Part 1 Fundamental Notions 1
1 Introduction 3
2 Logical matters 17
3 Types and dimensions of meaning 41
4 Compositionality 65

Part 2 Words and their Meanings 83
5 Introduction to lexical semantics 85
6 Contextual variability of word meaning 103
7 Word meanings and concepts 125
8 Paradigmatic sense relations of inclusion and identity 143
9 Paradigmatic relations of exclusion and opposition 163
10 Word fields 177
11 Extensions of meaning 197
12 Syntagmatic relations 217
13 Lexical decomposition 237

Part 3 Semantics and Grammar 263
14 Grammatical semantics 265

Part 4: Pragmatics 301
15 Reference and deixis 303
16 Speech acts 329
17 Implicatures 347

Conclusion 379
Answers to questions 383
References 401
Index 409

Typographic conventions

Small capitals
For concepts; occasionally for lexical roots.

Small capitals in square brackets
For semantic components.

Angled brackets
For selectional restrictions

Bold type
For technical terms when first introduced.

Italics
For citation forms when not set on a different line.

Bold italics
For emphasis.

Single quotation marks
For quotations from other authors; 'scare quotes'.

Double quotation marks
For meanings.

Question marks
For semantic oddness.

Asterisks
For ungrammaticality or extreme semantic abnormality.

Preface

The aim of this book is not to present a unified theory of meaning in language (I am not even sure that that would be a worthwhile project), but to survey the full range of semantic phenomena, in all their richness and variety, in such a way that the reader will feel, on completing the book, that he or she has made face-to-face contact with the undeniably messy 'real world' of meaning. At the same time, it aims to show that even the messy bits can, at least to some extent, be tamed by the application of disciplined thinking. As far as semantic theories are concerned, I have been unashamedly eclectic, adopting whatever approach to a particular problem seems genuinely to shed light on it. If there is a theoretical bias, it is in favour of approaches which, like the cognitive linguistic approach, embrace the continuity and non-finiteness of meaning.

This is not intended to be a 'baptismal' text; it would probably not be suitable for absolute beginners. The sort of readership I had in mind is second- or third-year undergraduates and beginning postgraduates who have completed at least an introductory course in linguistics, and who require an overview of meaning in language, either as preparation for a more detailed study of some particular area, or as background for other studies. I would hope it would be found useful, not only by students of linguistics, but also students of ancient and modern languages, translation, psychology, perhaps even literature.

Most of the material in the book has grown out of courses in general semantics, lexical semantics, and pragmatics, given to second- and third-year undergraduates and postgraduates at Manchester University over a number of years. I owe a debt to generations of students in more than one way: their undisguised puzzlement at some of my explanations of certain topics led to greater clarity and better exemplification; critical questions and comments not infrequently exposed weaknesses in the underlying arguments; and very occasionally, a genuine flash of insight emerged during a classroom discussion.

The final form of the text was significantly influenced by constructive comments on a draft by Jim Miller of the University of Edinburgh, an anonymous American reviewer, and John Davey of Oxford University Press, although, of course, full responsibility for remaining imperfections lies with myself.

The organization of the book is as follows. It is in four parts. Part 1 discusses a range of basic notions that underlie virtually all discussions of meaning within linguistics; Part 2 concentrates on aspects of the meanings of words; Part 3 deals with semantic aspects of grammar; Part 4 introduces the core areas of pragmatics, and highlights the relations between meaning and context.

Within Part 1, Chapter 1 provides a very general introduction to questions of meaning, locating the linguistic study of meaning within the wider context of the study of signs and communication in general. Chapter 2 introduces a set of fundamental conceptual tools, mostly drawn from the field of logic, which, because of their wide currency in discussions of semantic matters, constitute indispensable background knowledge for a study of meaning in language. In Chapter 3, a number of concepts are introduced for the description of meanings and differences of meaning. A basic dichotomy (based on Lyons 1977) is introduced between descriptive and non-descriptive meaning and, under each of these headings, important types and dimensions of variation are described. It is rare to encounter any extended treatment of these topics in semantics textbooks, yet a mastery of them is essential to anyone who wishes to talk in a disciplined way about meanings. Chapter 4 discusses the way(s) in which simpler meanings are combined to form more complex meanings.

In Part 2, Chapter 5 provides a general introduction to the study of word meanings, first discussing whether there are any restrictions on what sort of meanings words can bear, then distinguishing the meaning of a word from that of a sentence or discourse, and the meanings of full lexical items from the meanings of grammatical elements. In this chapter the major approaches to lexical semantics are also outlined. In Chapter 6, the focus is on the range of variation observable in a single word form in different contexts, ranging from arbitrarily juxtaposed homonymies to subtle modulations of sense. Chapter 7 introduces a conceptual approach to lexical semantics, beginning with a discussion of whether and to what extent word meanings can be equated with concepts. The discussion continues with an outline of prototype theory, the currently dominant approach to natural conceptual categories, and its relevance for the study of word meanings. Chapters 8 and 9 deal with relations of sense between lexical items which can occupy the same syntactic position—in other words, paradigmatic sense relations, such as hyponymy, meronymy, incompatibility, synonymy, antonymy, complementarity, reversivity, and converseness. Chapter 10 looks at larger groupings of words—word fields—mainly structured by the sense relations examined in the previous two chapters. Chapter 11 describes the main types of process, such as metaphor and metonymy, which enable new meanings to be produced from old ones. In Chapter 12, meaning relations between words in the same syntactic construction, that is, syntagmatic sense relations, are examined. Topics discussed include the nature of normal and abnormal collocations, reasons for a

tendency for certain types of words to co-occur, and the nature and consequences of selectional pressures of words on their partners in a string. Chapter 13 outlines the componential approach to the description of word meaning, which specifies meaning in terms of semantic primitives.

The focus in Chapter 14, which constitutes the whole of Part 3, is on the sorts of meanings associated with various grammatical entities. First there is a discussion of the problem of whether there are any constant meanings attached to categories such as noun, verb, and adjective, and functions such as subject and object. There then follows a survey of the sorts of meaning borne by grammatical elements of various sorts, such as number and gender in the noun phrase, tense, aspect, and modality in connection with the verb, degree in the adjective, and so on.

Part 4 covers topics which are usually considered to fall under pragmatics, in that either they involve aspects of meaning which cannot be satisfactorily treated unless context is taken into account, or they are not propositional in nature (or both). Chapter 15 is concerned with reference, that is, establishing connections between utterances and the extralinguistic world. Reference is portrayed as the assigning of values to variables, the variables being signalled by definite expressions and the values being items in the extralinguistic world. Various strategies for indicating (on the part of the speaker) and determining (on the part of the hearer) correct referents are discussed, including the use and interpretation of deictic elements, names, and descriptions. Chapter 16 provides an outline of speech act theory, mainly following Austin and Searle (1969). It discusses the acts that people perform when they are speaking—acts such as stating, requesting, warning, congratulating, commanding, and so on. The range of different types of speech act is surveyed and their nature examined. Chapter 17 deals with conversational implicatures, that is, those aspects of the intended meaning of an utterance which are not encoded in its linguistic structure, but are, as it were, 'read between the lines'. Different types of conversational implicature are described and some proposed explanations of how they arise are considered.

The concluding chapter briefly surveys the areas covered in the book, suggests practical applications of the study of meaning, and highlights areas which are currently poorly understood, and where further research is needed. Each chapter except Chapter 1 and Chapter 5 contains a set of discussion questions and/or exercises, suggested answers to which will be found at the end of the book.

Part 1
Fundamental Notions

In this first part of the book, a number of fundamental, but fairly general notions are introduced, which need to be grasped before the more detailed discussions in later sections can be properly appreciated. Chapter 1 has a scene-setting function, identifying the place of linguistic signs and linguistic communication in the broader domains of semiotics and communication in general. Chapter 2 introduces a number of vital conceptual tools drawn from the field of logic. Chapter 3 surveys the range of different sorts of meaning, and dimensions of variation in meaning. Chapter 4 discusses the notion of compositionality, one of the essential properties of language, and its limits.

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

1.1 Communication 5

1.2 Semiotics: some basic notions 7

1.3 Language and other communicative channels 8

1.4 Characteristics of linguistic channels 9

1.5 Approaches to the study of meaning 10

1.6 The linguistic study of meaning 12

1.7 Branches of the study of meaning 15

Suggestions for further reading 16

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

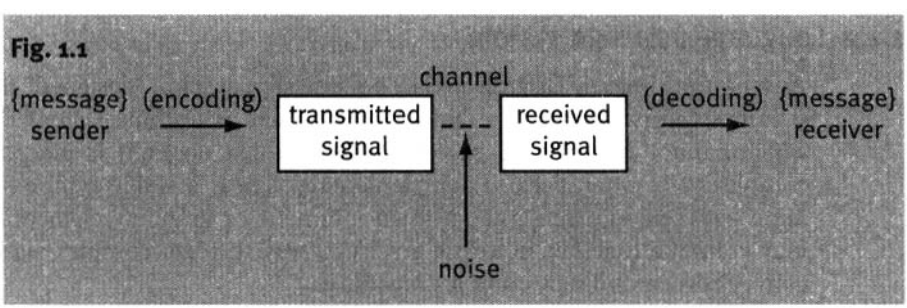
1.1 Communication

Meaning makes little sense except in the context of communication: the notion of communication therefore provides as good a place as any to start an exploration of meaning. Communication can be conceived very broadly, including within its scope such matters as the transfer of information between biological generations via the genetic code, the interaction between a driver and his car, and indeed any sort of stimulus-response situation. Here we shall confine ourselves to what is surely the paradigm communicative scenario, namely, the transfer of information between human beings.

1.1.1 A simple model

Let us begin with a simple model, as shown in Fig. 1.1 (after Lyons 1977).

In the model, the process begins with a speaker who has something to communicate, that is, the **message**. Since messages in their initial form cannot be transmitted directly (at least not reliably), they must be converted into a form that can be transmitted, namely, a **signal**. In ordinary conversation, this involves a process of **linguistic encoding**, that is, translating the message into a linguistic form, and translating the linguistic form into a set of instructions to the speech organs, which, when executed, result in an acoustic signal. The initial form of this signal may be termed the **transmitted signal**.



Every mode of communication has a **channel**, through which the signal travels: for speech, we have the auditory channel, for normal writing and sign language, the visual channel, for Braille, the tactile channel, and so on. As the signal travels from sender to receiver, it alters in various ways, through distortion, interference from irrelevant stimuli or loss through fading. These changes are referred to collectively as **noise**. As a result, the signal picked up by the receiver (the **received signal**) is never precisely the same as the transmitted signal. If every detail of the transmitted signal was crucial for the message being transmitted, communication would be a chancy business. However, efficient communicating systems like language compensate for this loss of information by building a degree of redundancy into the signal. Essentially this means that the information in a signal is given more than once, or is at least partially predictable from other parts of the signal, so that the entire message can be reconstructed even if there is significant loss. It is said that language is roughly 50 per cent redundant.

Once the signal has been received by the receiver, it has to be **decoded** in order to retrieve the original message. In the ideal case, the message reconstructed by the receiver would be identical to the message that the speaker started out with. Almost certainly, this rarely, if ever, happens; however, we may presume that in the majority of cases it is 'close enough'. All the same, it is worth distinguishing three aspects of meaning:

(i) speaker's meaning:	speaker's intended message
(ii) hearer's meaning:	hearer's inferred message
(iii) sign meaning:	this can be taken to be the sum of the properties of the signal which make it (a) more apt than other signals for conveying speaker's intended message, and (b) more apt for conveying some messages than others.

In the case of an established signalling system like language, the meanings of the signs are not under the control of the users; the signs are the property of the speech community and have fixed meanings. Of course on any particular occasion, the signs used may be *ad hoc* or conventional, if *ad hoc*, they may be prearranged or spontaneous.

1.1.2 Language as a sign system

Any natural human language is a complex sign system, 'designed' to ensure infinite expressive capacity, that is to say, there is nothing that is thinkable which cannot in principle be encoded (provided no limit is placed on the complexity of utterances). Each elementary sign is a stable symbolic association between a meaning and a form (phonetic or graphic); elementary signs may combine together in a rule-governed way to form complex signs which convey correspondingly complex meanings.

1.2 Semiotics: *some basic notions*

1.2.1 Iconicity

Signs can generally be classified as iconic or arbitrary. **Iconic** signs are those whose forms mirror their meanings in some respect; signs with no natural analogical correspondences between their forms and their meanings are called **arbitrary**. A simple example is provided by the Arabic and Roman numerals for "three": 3 and III. The Arabic form gives no clue to its meaning; the Roman version, on the other hand, incorporates "threeness" into its shape, and is thus iconic. Iconicity is a matter of degree, and usually coexists with some degree of arbitrariness. Three horizontal lines would be just as iconic as the Roman III: the fact that in the Roman symbol the lines are vertical is arbitrary, as is the fact that its size corresponds to that of letters.

Iconicity enters language in several guises. The majority of words in a natural language are arbitrary: the form of the word *dog*, for instance, does not mirror its meaning in any respect. However, the so-called onomatopoeic words display a degree of iconicity, in that their sounds are suggestive (to varying degrees) of their meanings:

bang clank tinkle miaow splash cuckoo peewit curlew
whoosh thud crack ring wheeze howl rumble, etc.

The predominance of arbitrariness in the vocabulary is not an accidental feature, but is a crucial 'design feature' of natural language. There is a limited stock of dimensions of formal variation in linguistic signs; if all signs were iconic, it is difficult to see how universal expressivity could be achieved.

Some iconicity is also apparent in grammar. For instance, words which belong together tend to occur together. In *The tall boy kissed the young girl* we know that *tall* modifies *boy* and not *girl* because *tall* and *boy* come next to each other in the sentence. In some languages this relationship might be shown by grammatical agreement, which is a kind of resemblance, and therefore also iconic. Another way in which iconicity appears in the grammar is that grammatical complexity by and large mirrors semantic complexity.

1.2.2 Conventionality

Many of the signs used by humans in communication are **natural** in the sense that they are part of genetically inherited biological make-up and do not have to be learned, although a maturational period may be necessary before they appear in an individual, and they may be moulded in various ways to fit particular cultural styles. The sort of signs which are natural in this sense will presumably include facial expressions like smiling, frowning, indications of fear and surprise, and so on, perhaps many of the postural and proxemic signs

that constitute the so-called 'body language', certain types of gesture, vocal indications of excitement, desire, etc. (whether or not linguistic), and many more. Natural signs are likely to be the most cross-culturally interpretable.

Other signs have conventionally assigned meanings; they have to be specifically learned, and are likely to differ in different communities. Linguistic signs are the prototypical conventional signs. Even onomatopoeic words usually have a significant conventional element; often the iconic nature of the word can only be appreciated, as it were, with hindsight. Take the Turkish word *bülbül*. What does it refer to? A baby's babbling? The noise of a mountain spring? In fact, it means "nightingale". Looking back, one can make the connection. It is not only linguistic signs that are conventional. Obscene or offensive gestures, for instance, can vary quite remarkably cross culturally: I was once reprimanded for pointing the soles of my feet at the Prime Minister of Iraq (in Arab culture this is disrespectful: my disrespect was entirely inadvertent). Even in Europe, conventional gestures can differ: Greeks are famously—and slightly inaccurately—said to shake their heads to say "Yes", and nod to say "No".

1.2.3 Discreteness

Some signs can vary gradually in their form, and their meanings vary in parallel with the change of form, like the fisherman's indication of the size of 'the one that got away'; these are called **continuous signs**. Other signs have fixed shapes, and must be chosen from a limited inventory: intermediate forms are not allowed, the range of possibilities is 'chunked'; such signs are described as **discrete**. Linguistic signs are virtually all of the discrete variety. Again, this is not an accidental feature, but has a close connection with iconicity and arbitrariness: continuous signs are necessarily iconic; arbitrary signs are necessarily discrete.

1.3 Language and other communicative channels

The prototypical scenario for linguistic communication is two people engaged in face-to-face conversation. Of course, in such an encounter, language signals are exchanged; but normally so are many other types of signal, and these modify and/or supplement the linguistically encoded message. Let us, then, briefly look at the semiotic environment of language in a typical conversation.

The signs that accompany language can be divided into two major types—**paralinguistic** and **non-linguistic**. The defining characteristic of paralinguistic signs will be taken here to be an extreme dependence on the accompanying language. Either they cannot be produced except during speech (because they are carried on the voice), or they cannot be interpreted except in conjunction

with accompanying language. Examples of the first variety are abnormal volume, tempo, pitch, and voice quality; to function as signs, there must be a departure from some (personal) baseline or norm. For instance, abnormally high volume, fast tempo, or high pitch typically signal a heightened emotional state. Examples of the second variety include pausing, emphatic gestures, and gestures which metaphorically depict, for instance, direction of motion.

The functions of paralinguistic signs can be conveniently classified under three headings:

(i) **Punctuation**: there are signs which have functions parallel to those of punctuation in written language, mainly to segment the stream of speech so as to facilitate processing.
(ii) **Modulation**: this involves the addition of an emotive or attitudinal colouring to the linguistically encoded message.
(iii) **Illustration**: some signs 'depict' a key element in the message, such as a direction of movement, or a shape; the depiction may be relatively literal, like the hand movements of someone describing the climbing of a spiral staircase, or metaphorical, as when vertical and parallel hands accompany the setting of limits of some kind.

Not all the signs that occur alongside language are paralinguistic in the sense defined. For instance, one may smile or frown while speaking, and this may well 'modulate' the message. But smiles and frowns (and many other signs) are perfectly interpretable and capable of being produced in the absence of any accompanying language. These are therefore to be considered as non-linguistic.

1.4 Characteristics of linguistic signs

Paralinguistic signs are typically natural, continuous, and iconic, whereas linguistic signs are for the most part arbitrary, discrete, and conventional.

1.4.1 Simple and complex signs

Linguistic signs may be simple or complex. This does not just mean that they can occur singly or in groups of various sizes: the occurrence of two or more signs together does not necessarily result in a complex sign. Take the case of someone who answers a question with the word *Yes*, at a higher than usual pitch, and at the same time smiling. This person has not produced a complex sign with three constituents, only three simple signs simultaneously. The meanings of the three signs are simply added together: there is no interaction between the signs other than additivity. Contrast this with a minimally complex sign such as *red wine*: to obtain the meaning of this sign, we do not simply

add the meaning of *red* to the meaning of *wine* (that would give us something like "wine plus redness"). What happens is the meaning of *red* interacts with the meaning of *wine* by restricting it.

There is no theoretical upper limit to the complexity of linguistic signs. This is rendered possible by the recursive nature of syntax, that is, the existence of rules which can be applied indefinitely many times (like the one which yields *This is the dog that worried the cat that killed the rat that ate the corn that . . .*). Such rules are an essential prerequisite for the 'universal expressivity' of language—the fact that anything thinkable is expressible, or at least can be approximated to any given degree of accuracy.

1.4.2 Signs at different linguistic levels

A linguistic sign may be no more than a phoneme (or two): this is one interpretation of the *sl-* of *slimy, slovenly, slug, slag, slum, slink, slattern, slut, slob*, etc. which seems to indicate something unpleasant, or the *gl-* of *glare, glimmer, glitter, glisten, glow, gleam*, etc. which all have something to do with light effects. These have no grammatical status, and no contrastive value, but the intuitions of native speakers leave no doubt that they should receive some recognition. Other signs occur at higher levels of linguistic organization, from morpheme level (e.g. the *-s* of *dogs*), through word level (e.g. *denationalization*), clause level (e.g. the formal difference between *John is here* and *Is John here?* which signals that one is a question and the other a statement), sentence level (e.g. *We'll do it as soon as you arrive* as opposed to *As soon as you arrive, we'll do it*), up to text level (e.g. the fact that a stretch of text constitutes a sonnet is indicated by the form of the text as a whole: this form therefore constitutes a high-level sign).

The fact that a sign manifests itself at a particular level does not entail that it is to be interpreted at that level. A few examples will illustrate this point. The item *the*, a word, exerts its semantic effect on a whole noun phrase ***the** little old lady who lives in the cottage on the hill*; the *-ed* of *John kissed Mary*, a bound morpheme, semantically situates the time relative to the moment of utterance of the whole event symbolized by *John kiss Mary*; a single word like *matrimony* may mark a whole discourse as being in a certain register.

1.5 Approaches to the study of meaning

Meaning may be studied as a part of various academic disciplines. There is of course a significant degree of overlap between disciplines, but characteristically all have something idiosyncratic and unique in their approach (the following remarks are merely illustrative).

1.5.1 Philosophy

Linguists typically take the existence of meaning for granted and accept it as an intuitively accessible 'natural kind'. They do not ask questions like *How is it possible for anything to mean something?* or *What sort of relation must hold between X and Y for it to be the case that X means Y?* Such questions are the province of the philosopher, particularly the philosopher of language.

1.5.2 Psychology

Meaning is a major concern of the psychology of language and psycholinguistics. (I shall not attempt to distinguish these.) A distinctive feature here is the experimental study of how meanings are represented in the mind, and what mechanisms are involved in encoding and decoding messages. An example of a fact that could only emerge within a psycholinguistic framework is that in the lexical decision task, where experimental subjects observe strings of letters flashed on a screen and must indicate by pressing the appropriate button whether the string represents a word or not, responses are faster to words with concrete meanings than to words with abstract meanings, even when extraneous factors like length and frequency are rigorously controlled. This observation presumably provides a clue to the role of meaning in word recognition (to the best of my knowledge it is still a puzzle).

1.5.3 Neurology

Psychologists take a 'macro' view of mental states and processes. Neurologists, on the other hand, want to know how these states and processes are implemented at the neuronal level. A psychologist might be broadly compared with a computer programmer, and a neurologist to the designer of computer chips. Meaning, like everything else in mental life (at least if one is a physicalist) must boil down ultimately to connections between neurons.

1.5.4 Semiotics

Semioticians view language as one sign system amongst many, and seek out those features which render it so successful. They are also likely to give emphasis to marginal aspects of linguistic signification. The recent strong interest in iconicity in language represents a significant overlap between the linguistic and semiotic approaches to meaning.

1.5.5 Linguistics

It is not easy to encapsulate the linguistic approach to meaning in language succinctly. There are perhaps three key aspects. The first is that native speakers' semantic intuitions are centre-stage, in all their subtlety and nuances: they constitute the main source of primary data. The second is the

importance of relating meaning to the manifold surface forms of language. The third is the respect paid not just to language, but to languages.

1.6 The linguistic study of meaning in language

1.6.1 What is linguistic meaning?

Here we attempt to say what is to count as meaning in language. Following an impulse towards generosity rather than austerity, we shall as a first step say that all meaning is potentially reflected in fitness for communicative intent. It will be assumed that a way of tapping into this is in terms of contextual normality: every difference of meaning between two expressions will show up as a difference of normality in some context. Thus, we know that *illness* and *disease* do not mean the same, because *during his illness* is normal, but *during his disease* is not; *almost* and *nearly* do not have precisely the same meaning because *very nearly* is normal but *very almost* is not; *pass away* and *kick the bucket* have different meanings because *It is with great sadness that we report that our Beloved Ruler kicked the bucket two minutes after midnight* is odd, but *It is with great sadness that we report that our Beloved Ruler passed away two minutes after midnight* is normal. We take *normality/oddness* and *relative oddness/normality* to be primitive intuitions.

It will be noticed that the move in the above characterization was from meaning to contextual abnormality. Unfortunately, the move cannot without further ado be made from abnormality to meaning, because there are other factors besides meaning which affect normality.

Let us assume that we are dealing with spoken language and that the utterance is correctly pronounced. The two sources of abnormality that we wish to eliminate if possible are grammatical deviance and 'meaning' that is non-linguistic in origin. Let us make the simplifying assumption that if a pinpointed deviance is grammatical in nature, it will not prove possible to reduce it by contextual manipulation, for instance by interpreting it as metaphor, science fiction, or fairy-tale. Thus, *They goes* is irredeemably deviant in any context, whereas *I shall go there yesterday* might just make sense in a setting where time travel (or at least temporal scrambling) is possible. That leaves non-linguistic meaning to be taken care of. Consider the possibility that a certain type of delivery, not amounting to mispronunciation, may be a sign that the speaker is under the influence of some pharmacological substance. Let us make the further assumption that some speaker is deliberately trying to convey this information. This might well be odd in, for instance, the context of a sermon. Is this linguistic meaning? (In the case described, it is certainly a kind of meaning, and language is used to convey it.) Presumably it is not linguistic meaning, but how do we exclude it? One way is to stipulate that linguistic meaning must either be conventionally associated with the linguistic forms used, or be inferable from the latter in conjunction with contextual knowledge.

One indication that the above example is not of this type would be its insensitivity to the actual words used.

1.6.2 What are we trying to achieve?

1.6.2.1 Specifying/describing meanings

A very important task is to discover a way of specifying or describing meanings, whether of isolated words or sentences, or of utterances in context. The position taken in this book is that in general, meanings are not finitely describable, so this task boils down to finding the best way to approximate meanings as closely as is necessary for current purposes (lexicographers have long had to confront this problem for words).

1.6.2.2 How meaning varies with context

The meanings of all linguistic expressions vary with the context in which they occur. For instance, the shade of colour indicated by *a redhead* and *red wine* are markedly different; the periods of time denoted by *month* in (1) and (2) are quite likely to be different:

(1) He's here for a month. (could be four weeks; not dependent on time of utterance)

(2) He's here for the month. (will depend on time of utterance, but could be 31 days)

Some variations, like the sex of the doctor in *Our doctor has just married a policeman* and *Our doctor has just married an actress* can be predicted by general principles; other variants are less, or not at all predictable. Semanticians seek a revealing account of contextual variation.

1.6.2.3 Kinds of meaning

There are different sorts of meaning, each with different properties. For instance, whatever the difference in meaning between (3) and (4), it does not affect the truth or falsity of the statement:

(3) Old Joshua Hobblethwaite popped his clogs last week.

(4) Old Joshua Hobblethwaite passed away last week.

1.6.2.4 What happens when meanings combine?

Another vital aspect of semantics is how simple(r) meanings combine to form more complex meanings. To some extent this is a function of grammatical structure: for instance, the way *red* and *hat* combine in *a red hat* is not the same as the way *turn* and *red* combine in *to turn red*. But differences occur even within the same grammatical construction: the mode of combination of *red* and *hat* in *a red hat* is different from that of *long* and *eyelash* in *long eyelashes* (compare *long eyelashes* and *a long river*).

1.6.2.5 Systematicity and structure; possibility of formalization

All semanticians are to some extent looking for regularities and system in the way meanings behave, as this leads to maximally economical descriptions. The most dedicated to this aspect of semantics are those who attempt to model the semantic behaviour of natural language expressions by means of a strict logical or quasi-mathematical formalism. This route will not be followed in this book.

1.6.2.6 New meanings from old

A striking feature of linguistic expressions is their semantic flexibility: beyond their normal contextual variability, they can be bent to semantic ends far removed from their conventional value, witness *She swallowed it hook, line and sinker* or *You'll find her in the telephone book*. The study of such extensions of meaning is an important task for semantics.

1.6.2.7 Role(s) of context

It is usually assumed that linguistic expressions can be assigned some sort of context-independent semantic value, although there is much disagreement regarding exactly what this is. There is also general agreement that context is of vital importance in arriving at the meaning of an utterance. The role of context ranges from disambiguating ambiguous expressions as in *We just got to the bank in time*, through identification of referents (who is *he*, where is *there*, in time for what, in *He didn't get there in time*), to working out 'between the lines' messages like B's ignorance of the whereabouts of the corkscrew in:

(5) A: Where's the corkscrew?
B: It's either in the top drawer in the kitchen, or it's fallen behind the piano.

1.6.3 The approach adopted in this book

We are not yet in a position to rule out any approaches which yield insights, even if some such approaches appear at first sight incompatible. This book therefore takes an ecumenical position on many issues. In so far as there is a theoretical bias, it is towards the cognitive semantic position. This means, in particular, that the meaning of a linguistic expression is taken to arise from the fact that the latter gives access to a particular conceptual content. This may be of indeterminate extent: no distinction is made between linguistic meaning and encyclopaedic knowledge.

Since this book is not intended to propound a body of theory, but to acquaint non-specialists with the range of semantic phenomena in language, there is a bias towards descriptive coverage at the expense of theoretical rigour.

1.7 Branches of the study of meaning in language

The following are the main broadly distinguishable areas of interest in the study of meaning. They do not by any means form watertight compartments: there are many points of overlap.

1.7.1 Lexical semantics

Lexical semantics studies the meanings of words; the focus here is on 'content' words like *tiger*, *daffodil*, *inconsiderate*, and *woo*, rather than 'form'/'grammatical' words like *the*, *of*, *than*, and so on. To a non-specialist, the notion of meaning probably has a stronger link with the idea of the word than with any other linguistic unit: words are, after all, what are listed in dictionaries, and the main function of a dictionary is to tell us what the listed words mean. For this reason, lexical semantics perhaps provides the easiest access route into the mysteries of semantics in general, and this is one reason why it has been given a prominent place in this book, and why it comes early.

1.7.2 Grammatical semantics

Grammatical semantics studies aspects of meaning which have direct relevance to syntax. This has many manifestations, which can only be briefly illustrated here. One problem is the meaning of syntactic categories (problematic, because not everyone believes they can be assigned meanings). Consider, for instance, the differences in the meaning of *yellow* in the following:

(6) She wore a yellow hat. (adjective)

(7) They painted the room a glowing yellow. (noun)

(8) The leaves yellow rapidly once the frosts arrive. (verb)

Another aspect of grammatical semantics is the meaning of grammatical morphemes like the *-ed* of *walked*, the *-er* of *longer*, the *re-* and the *-al* of *retrial*, and so on.

Clearly this overlaps with lexical semantics, partly because some grammatical elements are words (like *the*, and *of*), but more particularly because some aspects of the meanings of full lexical items determine to some degree their grammatical behaviour (for instance, the fact that *I am studying that question* is grammatical, but not *I am knowing the answer to that question*).

1.7.3 Logical semantics

Logical semantics studies the relations between natural language and formal logical systems such as the propositional and predicate calculi. Such studies usually aim at modelling natural language as closely as possible using a tightly controlled, maximally austere logical formalism. It is arguable that sometimes such studies shed more light on the formalism used than on the language being

modelled; none the less, valuable insights have come from this approach. To date, most such studies have concentrated on the propositional/sentential level of meaning, and have rarely attempted to delve into the meanings of words.

1.7.4 Linguistic pragmatics

For present purposes, pragmatics can be taken to be concerned with aspects of information (in the widest sense) conveyed through language which (a) are not encoded by generally accepted convention in the linguistic forms used, but which (b) none the less arise naturally out of and depend on the meanings conventionally encoded in the linguistic forms used, taken in conjunction with the context in which the forms are used. This rather cumbersome formulation is intended to allow into pragmatics things like the identity of the individual referred to by *John* in *I saw John today*, and the assumption that the room in question had several lights in *John entered the room; all the lights were on*, at the same time excluding, for instance, the possibility that the person saying *I saw John today* had a private *ad hoc* arrangement with the hearer that whenever he said *John*, he should be taken to mean "Mary" (since it does not arise naturally out of the normal meaning of *John*), and excluding also the possibility of someone's inferring from a speaker's slurred speech that they were drunk (since this does not depend on the conventional meanings of the words uttered). Pragmatics is usually contrasted with semantics, which therefore deals with conventionalized meaning; obviously, the three divisions discussed above belong to semantics.

Suggestions for further reading

Much fuller accounts of the semiotic environment of spoken language can be found in Argyle (1972), Beattie (1983), Ellis and Beattie (1986) and Clark (1996).

CHAPTER 2

Logical matters

2.1 Introduction 19

2.2 Arguments and predicates 19

2.3 Sense, denotation, and reference: intension and extension 21

2.4 Sentence, statement, utterance, and proposition 22

2.5 Logical properties of sentences 28

2.6 Logical classes 32

2.7 Logical relations 34

2.8 Quantification 35

2.9 Use and mention 36

Discussion questions and exercises 37

Suggestions for further reading 39

CHAPTER 2

Logical matters

2.1 Introduction

This chapter introduces a set of fundamental conceptual tools, mostly drawn from the field of logic, which, because of their wide currency in discussions of semantic matters, constitute indispensable background knowledge for a study of meaning in language. The level of treatment here is fairly elementary; some of the notions introduced will be further refined in subsequent chapters.

2.2 Arguments and predicates

A closely linked pair of concepts which are absolutely fundamental to both logic and semantics are **argument** and **predicate**. No attempt will be made here to explore the philosophical background and underpinning of these notions: the basic notions are fairly accessible and they will be treated in an elementary fashion. Put simply, an argument designates some entity or group of entities, whereas a predicate attributes some property to the entity denoted by the argument, or a relation between the entities denoted by the arguments, if there is more than one. Thus, in *John is tall*, we can identify *John* as the argument, and *is tall* as the predicate. In *John likes Mary*, both *John* and *Mary* are arguments, and *likes* is the predicate which attributes a particular relationship between the entities denoted by the arguments; in *John gave Mary a rose*, there are three arguments, *John*, *Mary* and *the rose*, with *gave* as the predicate. The combination of an argument and a predicate forms a proposition: notice that a proposition may have only one predicate, but may have more than one argument. It is not clear whether there is any theoretical upper limit to the number of arguments a predicate may take, but the most one is likely to encounter in linguistic semantic discussions is four, exemplified by *Mary paid John £500 for the car*:

Arguments: *Mary*, *John*, *£500*, *the car*
Predicate: *paid* (*for*)

An argument may have a more or less complex internal structure. For instance, a whole proposition, itself possessing argument(s) and predicate, may constitute an argument, as in *John was surprised that the man was tall*:

Arguments: (i) *John* (ii) *that the man was tall*
Predicate: *was surprised*
Argument (ii) Argument: *the man*
Predicate: *was tall*

There are various ways of incorporating propositions as constituents of complex arguments, and there is no limit to the resulting degree of complexity. An account of this is beyond the scope of this book.

Predicates are commonly described as **one-place**, **two-place**, **three-place**, etc. according to the number of arguments they take, so that, for instance, *is poor* is a one-place predicate, and *teach* is a three-place predicate (*John taught Mary French*). But what does it mean to say that *teach* is a three-place predicate? How do we determine how many places a predicate has?

This is, in fact, a very difficult question, but we can get some handle on it by looking at a few verbs. Let us start by looking at *teach*. One aspect of the problem is immediately obvious when we look at examples such as the following:

(1) John taught Mary French.
(2) John taught French for two years.
(3) A: What does John do?
B: I think he teaches at Lowhampton High.
(4) Anybody who teaches teenagers should get double salary.

Do we say that *teach* is three-place in (1), two-place in (2) and (4), and one-place in (3)? While there is some justification for such an analysis, there is intuitively a sense in which the (overt) argument structure of (1) is basic, and irreducible. Logically, for an act of teaching to take place, there must be someone who does the teaching, someone who undergoes the teaching (whether or not they actually learn anything!), and some item of knowledge or skill which it is hoped will be acquired by the latter. Without at least one each of these requirements, the notion of teaching is not logically coherent. What, then, are we to make of (2)–(4) above? It seems that we assume that the missing arguments could in principle be supplied, but the speaker has not supplied them, presumably because they are not currently relevant, or perhaps in some cases because they are extremely obvious. In (2), we do not have a vision of John discoursing in solitude on the French language; nor do we imagine that John in (3) does something like sneezing, which needs neither audience nor topic. By the same sort of criteria, *read* is a basically two-place verb, in spite of the existence of sentences such as *John is reading* and *John is learning to read*. We cannot make sense of *read* unless we have someone to do the reading and some coded signal to decode. As a final example, consider *buy*. This requires four

arguments, as in *John sold the car to Mary for £500*. If John receives no money, he is simply giving the car away; if there is no car, Mary is just giving John some money; if there is no one to receive the money and concede ownership of the car, then Mary is throwing her money away and taking possession of the car. And so on. In this way, it is usually possible to determine a basic logically minimum number of arguments for a predicate.

But our problems are not over. Acts of reading, teaching, and selling (and sneezing) take place at particular times and particular places. We may say that unlocated, timeless acts of reading, etc., are logically impossible. It is also necessarily the case that the ambient temperature has such and such a value. Whereas it is relatively easy to establish the ***minimum*** number of arguments for a predicate, how do we establish a ***maximum***? Or perhaps there is no such thing? After all, if we learn that John sneezed, we assume that the event happened at a particular place and time, and that even if the speaker did not specify these items, they could in principle be specified, along with countless other things. What is the difference in status, therefore, between the time and place of John's sneezing, and the subject that John teaches? One approach is to say that although a verb like *sneeze* in a sense conjures up a rather complex picture of a person in a setting acting in a certain way, it highlights only certain aspects of that scene, but without obliterating or denying the rest. These highlighted aspects are what distinguish the act denoted from other possible acts. This means that if we wish to ascertain whether a John-sneeze-event has occurred, we need only observe happenings pertaining closely to John; we do not need to check time, place, or temperature. In this way we can check that the minima we previously established for the number of arguments a predicate takes are generally also maxima.

2.3 Sense, denotation, and reference: *intension and extension*

Language is used to communicate about things, happenings, and states of affairs in the world, and one way of approaching the study of meaning is to attempt to correlate expressions in language with aspects of the world. This is known as the **extensional** approach to meaning.

The thing or things in the world referred to by a particular expression is its **referent(s)**: in saying *The cat's hungry*, I am (normally) referring to a particular cat, and that cat is the referent of the expression *the cat*. The whole utterance attributes a particular state to the cat in question. We can also consider the whole class of potential referents of the word *cat*, namely, the class of cats. This, too, is sometimes called the **reference** of the word *cat*. But this is clearly different from the designation of particular individuals as in the case of *The cat's hungry*, so, to avoid confusion, we shall follow Lyons and say that the class of cats constitutes the **denotation** of the word *cat*. So, in the case of

The cat's hungry, the word *cat* ***denotes*** the class of cats, but *the cat* ***refers*** to a particular cat.

The alternative to an extensional approach to meaning is an **intensional** approach. Take the word *cat*. Why do we use it to refer to cats, rather than, say, to platypuses or aardvarks or spiny anteaters? One answer is that the word is associated with some kind of mental representation of the type of thing that it can be used to refer to, and aardvarks do not fit the description associated with the word *cat*. This representation constitutes what is called the **sense** of the word (or at least part of it). We shall assume in this book that the main function of linguistic expressions is to mobilize concepts, that concepts are the main constituents of sense, and that sense (and hence concepts) constrains (even if it does not completely determine) reference. (It should be noted that some authors, for instance Lyons, understand *sense* in a different way. For them, sense is a matter of the relations between a word and other words in a language. So, for instance, the sense of *cat* would be constituted by its relations with other words such as *dog* (a cat is necessarily not a dog), *animal* (a cat is an animal), *miaow* (*The cat miaowed* is normal but *?The dog miaowed* is not).)

2.4 Sentence, statement, utterance and proposition

A number of distinctions need now to be made which at first sight might seem to be academic nit-picking of the worst sort. However, they are absolutely vital for clarity in semantics. For the sake of simplicity of exposition, the distinctions will first of all be explained in connection with declarative sentences only; how the various notions apply to non-declarative sentences will be dealt with later.

2.4.1 Sentence meaning; truth conditions; propositional content

A sentence is a grammatical unit, that is, it is a string of words of a particular type, whose well-formedness conditions are specified in the grammar of the language. Thus, *The cat sat on the mat* and *John put his hat on the table* are sentences of English; *John put on the table* and *Is the of mother boy swim* are not. We shall not spend too much time on discussing what distinguishes a sentence from other grammatical units, such as a phrase, or a word, except to say that a sentence must contain at least one independent clause (i.e., one that does not need another clause, to be grammatical), and a clause must contain at least one predication (i.e., an argument-predicate structure). The sentence is thus the smallest linguistic unit that can be used in an act of 'telling'. Compare the following for normality/oddness:

(5) A: Tell me something nice.
B: Chocolate.

A: What do you mean?
B: Well, chocolate is nice.

(6) A: Tell me something nice.
B: Love is a many-splendoured thing.
A: Ah! How true!

The oddness of B's reply in (5) consists in the fact that it neither overtly forms a sentence, nor permits a plausible sentence to be reconstructed from the context, as in, for instance, (7):

(7) A: He asked me what I wanted.
B: What did you tell him?
A: Ice cream.

Here, the full act of telling is reconstructible as *I want ice cream*, which involves a sentence. Henceforward we shall use our intuitions as to what constitutes a sentence.

Notice that we said above that the sentence was 'used in the act of telling': the sentence itself, on its own, does not in fact tell us anything. What does the sentence *The cat sat on the mat* tell us? Is it true? There is no way of knowing, or rather, the question does not make sense: sentences of themselves do not necessarily have truth values (some, arguably, have: *A molecule of water contains two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom*). Yet presumably no one would wish to say that *The cat sat on the mat* was meaningless. Let us introduce the notion **sentence meaning** to designate the semantic properties a sentence possesses merely by virtue of being a well-formed sentence (of English), before any question of context or use arises. A sentence possesses this meaning exclusively by virtue of the words it contains, and their grammatical arrangement. (I assume, here, that words have at least some context-independent conventionally assigned semantic properties.) We may assume that the grammar of a language is associated with principles of composition, that is, rules which tell us how to put together the meanings of the constituents of a construction to get the global meaning of the construction. Thus, in *The big cat sat on the small mat* we know, for instance, that smallness is attributed to *the mat* and not to *the cat*, and that a superior vertical position is attributed to *the cat*; we know, furthermore, what sort of animal is involved, and that only one of them would be intended as a referent in any actual use of the sentence. And so on. In a fairly obvious sense, the meaning of a sentence will constrain the uses to which it can be put, at least without the setting up of additional *ad hoc* conventions. (For example, *If I say **How are things?**, you will know it's my husband on the phone*: that is not what *How are things?*, by general convention, means.)

Although a sentence, outside of particular uses, does not have a truth value, it does have truth conditions, that is, conditions which must hold for the sentence to be used to make a true statement. Thus, before we can truthfully

say, on some occasion, *The cat is on the mat*, there must be some relevant feline occupying a specific position relative to an appropriate item of floor-covering. Those aspects of the meaning of a sentence which determine whether a statement the sentence is being used to make, in a particular situation, is true or false, are collectively known as the **propositional content** of the sentence. Two sentences with identical propositional content will yield statements with the same truth values on all occasions of use, as for instance: *John caressed Mary* and *Mary was caressed by John*. By the same token, if two sentences have different propositional content, there will necessarily exist some conceivable situation in which they will yield statements with opposite truth values.

Propositional content does not by any means make up the whole of sentence meaning, as conceived here. For instance, the interrogative meaning of a question is not included, nor the imperative meaning of a command (more generally, illocutionary meaning falls outside propositional content). The force of such words as *yet, still* and *already* (sometimes called **conventional implicature**) is excluded; the following two sentences, for instance, have the same propositional content, since their truth conditions are the same, but one would not want to say that they were identical in meaning (nor are they ***appropriate*** in the same circumstances):

(8) John has not arrived.
(9) John has not yet arrived.

Other aspects of meaning which do not fall under propositional content are expressive meaning:

(10) It's very cold in here.
(11) It's bloody cold in here.

and features of register such as the formal/colloquial distinction:

(12) My old man kicked the bucket yesterday.
(13) My father passed away yesterday.

To qualify as part of sentence meaning, a semantic property simply has to be a stable conventional property of some linguistic expression. We shall not even demand that it be manifested on every occasion of use of the expression in question: it is sufficient that it be potentially present, and not attributable to context. We shall be particularly impressed by evidence that expressions with closely similar propositional content do not possess the property in question. An example of this is the potential expressive nature of the word *baby* compared with *infant* (see Chapter 3 for a more extensive discussion of non-propositional meaning).

2.4.2 Statement meaning

One does not make a statement simply by producing a sentence of declarative

form. Someone in a language class, for instance, practising the tenses of English, who says:

The cat sat on the mat.
The cat sits on the mat.
The cat will sit on the mat.

is not making a series of statements. The first requirement for a statement to have been made is that a proposition must have been expressed; the second requirement is that an appropriate commitment be made to the truth of the proposition. Let us dwell on this for a moment, beginning with the notion of a **proposition**.

2.4.2.1 Propositions

A simple proposition attributes some property to an entity, or a relation between two or more entities. It is either true or false (even if it is not practically or even physically possible to ascertain which): truth or falsehood is a sign that at least one proposition has been expressed. A proposition is not a specifically linguistic entity (although we shall not dwell too long on the problem of what sort of entity it is, and in what Platonic or other realm it subsists). The same proposition may be expressed by an indefinitely large number of sentences:

John saw Mary.
John saw his sister.
Mary was seen by Peter's uncle.
etc.

These can all express the same proposition, provided, of course, that Mary is John's sister, and that John is Peter's uncle, and so on.

Why, then, is *The cat sat on the mat* not a proposition? As it stands, it is neither true nor false. It becomes true or false when it is asserted of some specific cat and some specific mat. Until definite referring expressions in a sentence have been assigned referents, it does not express a specific proposition. A sentence like *The cat sat on the mat* can be used to express an indefinitely large number of different propositions (i.e., with reference to different cats and different mats) on different occasions of use.

2.4.2.2 Epistemic commitment

A proposition may be 'entertained', without any stance being adopted towards its truth or falsehood, as, for instance, in a logic class, where propositions are entertained, and their interrelationships studied, such as

(14) All aardvarks are purple.
Tinkerbelle is an aardvark.
Hence, Tinkerbelle is purple.

However, a proposition on its own cannot actually communicate anything: it is not an item of knowledge. To communicate, it must be energized with some kind of illocutionary force. For instance, the proposition expressed by *The earth is a polyhedron* is of no interest until someone claims it is true (or false): a true or false proposition is an item of knowledge. The illocutionary force in such a case would be that of assertion. A (minimum) statement is therefore a proposition uttered, as Lyons puts it, 'with epistemic commitment'. There are other possibilities for illocutionary force, to be studied in due course.

2.4.2.3 Incomplete propositions

Consider the following exchange:

(15) A: What's the time?
B: Half-past four.

Is B telling A anything? Obviously he is. Then what proposition is he expressing? Again the answer is obvious: "The time is 4.30". But this is not what he actually ***says***. In such cases, it is up to the hearer to reconstruct the full form of the proposition on the basis of contextual clues, but there is no doubt that it is the full form of the proposition that the speaker intends to convey, and this should form part of statement meaning.

We are now in a position to spell out what **statement meaning** consists of. First of all, statement meaning incorporates in its entirety all aspects of sentence meaning which belong to the sentence used in making the statement. Secondly, statement meaning includes a specific proposition or propositions, the identification of which requires that (a) referents be assigned to any definite referring expressions in the sentence, and (b) incomplete propositions be completed. It is assumed that the proposition(s) is expressed with the appropriate epistemic commitment.

2.4.3 Utterance meaning

Even a fully elaborated statement meaning may not adequately represent everything the speaker intended to convey by uttering the sentence to which it applies. To take a very simple example, consider the following:

(16) A: Have you cleared the table and washed the dishes?
B: I've cleared the table.

In normal circumstances, it would clearly be part of B's intended message that s/he had not washed the dishes. Yet this cannot be obtained by elaborating or completing the proposition expressed. This is even clearer in the following case where it is obviously the speaker's intention to convey the proposition that A is too late for supper:

(17) A: Am I in time for supper?
B: I've cleared the table.

These extra (i.e. covert) propositions are expected to be inferred by the hearer on the basis of contextual information, but they go well beyond the mere filling out of missing bits in what is actually said. We shall give the name **utterance meaning** to the totality of what the speaker intends to convey by making an utterance, within certain necessary limits.

Two people might, for instance, have an arrangement such that *How was your day?* means "How was your day?", but *How was the day today?* means "My husband is going to his club this evening—we'll have plenty of time for fun". We would wish to exclude this sort of meaning from utterance meaning. I think the key point is that such a use requires a special *ad hoc* stipulation on the part of speaker and hearer: the hearer's understanding of the clue does not arise entirely from his general knowledge of the rules and conventions governing the use of the forms in question.

Once again, utterance meaning subsumes statement meaning, but only in the sense that the latter must be traversed in order to arrive at the former, i.e. is a necessary step in derivation: utterance meaning does not necessarily incorporate statement meaning as a proper part (although, of course, it may do).

2.4.4 Non-declaratives

So far, we have looked only at declarative sentences. However, the notions elaborated above apply equally to non-declarative sentences. Take the case of a question. The general notion of sentence meaning is probably unproblematic here. The equivalent to statement meaning will be **question meaning**. Recall that the propositional content of a statement determined whether it was true or false in a given situation. Now questions do not have truth values, but they do have propositional content. Although a question does not have a truth value, a given question-statement pair has what might be called an **answer value**, that is, the statement is or is not an answer to the question, and if it is, it is either true or false. This answer value is determined equally by the propositional content of the question and the statement:

(18) A: What day is it today? (said on Tuesday)
B: It's Monday today. (false answer)
A: What day is it today? (said on Monday)
B: It's Monday today. (true answer)
A: Who do you love best?
B: It's Monday today. (no answer)

Just as a declarative sentence has truth conditions, we can postulate that a question-and-answer pair, considered as sentences, has **answer conditions**, that is, the conditions which must hold for the statement to constitute a true answer to the question.

The same trick can be played with imperatives, except that a linguistic

response is not always, perhaps not usually, what an imperative sets out to elicit. Generally what is required is an action (in the broadest sense, which covers such cases as *Don't move!*). In the case of a fully contextualized command, where a full **command meaning** is operative, a given action either counts as compliance or does not, that is, it has a **compliance value**, equivalent (in the relevant respects) to the truth value of a statement. What its compliance value is, is determined by the propositional content of the command. An imperative sentence has a set of compliance conditions, but no compliance value (how do you obey *Put it there*, without knowing what *it* is, or where *there* is?).

Let us now try to summarize and generalize. Declarative sentences, in general, do not, in themselves, make statements, interrogative sentences do not ask questions, and imperative sentences do not issue commands. These only result when the sentences are fully contextualized. Each of these, however, has propositional content, which governs what illocutions it can be used to perform when properly contextualized, that is, which statements can be made, questions asked, and commands issued, etc.

2.5 Logical properties of sentences

2.5.1 Logical relations between sentences

A number of logical relations between sentences make a not infrequent appearance in semantic discussions, especially in lexical semantics. They are related to, but not identical to, relations that logicians recognize between propositions. It is, however, necessary to bear in mind their logical basis, if confusion is to be avoided. Five relations will be recognized here: implication/entailment, equivalence, contrariety, contradiction, and independence.

2.5.1.1 Entailment

This and the following relations strictly speaking hold between propositions, and that is how we shall treat them to begin with; the connection with sentences will be dealt with later. Entailment is the relation which holds between the P and the corresponding Q items in the following:

P	*Q*
It's a dog.	It's an animal.
John killed the wasp.	The wasp died.
All dogs are purple.	My dog is purple.

Notice that we are assuming that these sentences express propositions; that is to say, the sentences are being used in a particular context with particular reference. We are further assuming that in the first pair *it* refers to the same entity in each case, and in the second pair, the same wasp and the same event are being referred to. To say that proposition P **entails** proposition Q means

that the truth of Q follows logically and inescapably from the truth of P, and the falsity of P follows likewise from the falsity of Q. So, in the first pair of sentences above, if it is true of some entity that it is a dog, then it follows ineluctably that it is an animal, and if it is not an animal, then there is no way it can be a dog. Similarly, in the second pair, if John killed some wasp, then we cannot avoid the conclusion that the wasp died, and if the wasp did not die, then it cannot be the case that John killed it.

Entailment, as used by linguistic semanticists, is to be distinguished from what logicians call **material implication**. A proposition P materially implies another proposition Q if and only if (henceforward *iff*) it is never the case that P is true and Q false. At first sight this seems to be essentially the same as entailment. However, there is a crucial difference: the definition of material implication makes no reference to the meanings of the propositions, merely to a relation between their truth values; entailment, on the other hand, (sometimes called **strict implication**) is essentially a relation between meanings. To illustrate this point, consider the propositions *It's a dog* and *All bachelors are unmarried*. It can never be the case that the first is true while the second is false, so we have a case of material implication. But this is not entailment, because it is not a consequence of the meaning relations between the two propositions, but of the fact that the second proposition cannot under any circumstances (except by altering the meanings of the components) be false. On the other hand, although it is true that *It's a dog* materially implies *It's an animal*, because the former cannot be true while the latter is false, it is also the case that the former entails the latter, because the truth-value relation holds by virtue of the relation in meaning between *dog* and *animal*. Material implication is essentially of no interest to linguistic semantics, although the status of *All bachelors are unmarried* as being always true is of interest (see 2.5.2.1 below: *analytic expressions*).

Strictly speaking, entailment does not hold between sentences, because sentences do not have truth values. However, one frequently encounters in semantic texts statements to the effect that such-and-such a sentence entails some other sentence. This can be taken as a kind of shorthand for something slightly more complex. Saying that sentence S^1 entails sentence S^2 means that in any context where S^1 expresses a true proposition, S^2 also necessarily expresses a true proposition, provided that corresponding definite referring expressions in the two sentences are co-referential. Obviously, in the case of *It's a dog* and *It's an animal*, the two occurrences of *it* must refer to the same entity for the logical relation to hold, and in the case of *John killed the wasp* and *The wasp died*, we must be talking about the same wasp, and the time references must be the same.

Two other properties of entailment must be emphasized. The first is that the relation is not determined by context: it is context independent, since it depends entirely on the meanings of the constituents of the sentences. Consider a case where John has in front of him a box of coloured disks, in which

all the red disks are round in shape, and all the green disks are square. In such circumstances, the truth of *John picked a square disk from the box* follows inescapably from the truth of *John picked a green disk from the box*. But clearly this relation of truth values does not arise from relations between *green* and *square*, but from the context: it would in principle have been just as easy to have all the red disks square, and the green disks round. On the other hand, the relation between *It's a dog* and *It's an animal* is independent of any particular contexts.

The second property is that the truth of the entailed sentence must follow inescapably from the truth of the entailing sentence. It is not enough for it to be usually true, or even almost always true; it has to be unthinkable that it might be false. Consider the relation between *It's a dog* and (i) *It's a pet* and (ii) *It can bark*. Most dogs that most people encounter are pets, but there are such things as wild dogs, so the relationship is merely one of expectation. This is not entailment. Likewise in the case of (ii), most dogs can bark, but a dog with a defective larynx does not thereby cease to be a dog, so the relationship is not logically necessary. Only logically necessary, context-independent relationships count as entailment. (We shall modify this position in Chapter 3, but for the moment it stands.)

2.5.1.2 Equivalence

Propositional equivalence between two sentences can be straightforwardly defined as mutual entailment. That is, in effect, equivalent to saying that the two sentences always express the same proposition (provided, of course, that corresponding definite referring expressions are co-referential). The following are examples of equivalence:

John killed the wasp.	The wasp was killed by John.
The wasp is dead.	The wasp is not alive.
It began at 10 o'clock.	It commenced at 10 o'clock.

If it is true that John killed the wasp, then it is also true that the wasp was killed by John and if it is true that the wasp was killed by John, then it is also necessarily true that John killed the wasp; a parallel two-way entailment holds between the members of the other two pairs.

2.5.1.3 Contrariety

Contrary propositions may not be simultaneously true, although they may be simultaneously false. The following are examples:

John killed the wasp.	The wasp is alive.
John killed the wasp.	Mary killed the wasp.
This paint is red.	This paint is green.

It cannot be simultaneously true of some wasp both that John killed it and that it is still alive; on the other hand, if the wasp is actually dead, but it was

Bill who killed it, then both *John killed the wasp* and *The wasp is alive* are false. We can define this relation in terms of entailment, by saying that S^1 and S^2 are contraries iff S^1 entails not-S^2, but not-S^2 does not entail S^1 (and vice versa). Thus, *This paint is red* entails *This paint is not green*, but *This paint is not green* does not entail *This paint is red*, since it might well be, for instance, yellow.

2.5.1.4 Contradiction

Contradictory propositions must have opposite truth values in every circumstance: that is, they cannot be either both true or both false. In any particular circumstance, one member of a contradictory pair must be true and the other false. The following sentences exemplify contradictory pairs:

The wasp is dead.	The wasp is alive.
John is still singing.	John is no longer singing.
No dogs are brown.	At least some dogs are brown.

If John is still singing, then it is false that he is no longer singing; to this extent, this is like contrariety. However, there is a crucial difference: if it is false that John is still singing, then it must be the case that he is no longer singing, and if it is false that he is no longer singing, then he must be still singing. We can define contradiction in terms of entailment, by saying that S^1 and S^2 are contradictories iff S^1 entails not-S^2, and not-S^2 entails S^1 (and vice versa).

2.5.1.5 Independence

For some pairs of propositions, the truth values vary independently of one another: they may be both true, both false, or one true and the other false:

John is retired.	Mary is married.
It is Tuesday today.	Christmas day falls on a Wednesday this year.

The relations described in this section have an important role in the analysis of meaning relations between words, as we shall see in later chapters.

2.5.2 Analytic, paradoxical, and synthetic sentences

2.5.2.1 Analyticity

Analytic sentences are sentences which automatically express true propositions in any context, by virtue of the meanings of their constituent words and their arrangement. The following sentences are therefore analytical:

Bachelors are unmarried.
John's uncle is a man.
This proposition is either true or false.

2.5.2.2 Paradox

Paradoxical sentences automatically express false propositions:

Bachelors are married.
John's sister is a man.
This red paint is green.

2.5.2.3 Syntheticity

Synthetic sentences are those which express true propositions in some (conceivable) contexts (although they may be false of the world as we know it) and false ones in others (this is the normal kind of sentence used in communication):

John's sister is married.
This paint is green.
All dogs are brown.

(The last sentence is actually false, but it is not *logically* false; it is easy to imagine circumstances in which it would be true.)

2.6 Logical classes

2.6.1 Class relations

2.6.1.1 Identity

Two classes C^1 and C^2 are said to be **identical** if everything that belongs to C^1 also belongs to C^2, and vice versa. Thus, the class of fathers and the class of male parents are identical, as are the class of pairs of spectacles and the class of pairs of glasses (on the relevant interpretation of *glasses*).

2.6.1.2 Inclusion

Class C^1 is said to include class C^2 if everything that is a member of C^2 is also a member of C^1, but not vice versa. Thus, for instance, the class of animals includes the class of dogs, the class of aardvarks, etc. The set of dogs is described as a subclass of the set of animals, and the set of animals as a superclass of the set of dogs. (Inclusion is defined here so as to exclude identity; it can be defined so as to include identity.)

2.6.1.3 Disjunction

Classes C^1 and C^2 are said to be disjunct if no member of C^1 is also a member of C^2. The class of cats and the class of aardvarks are disjunct in this sense, as are the class of red things and the class of green things.

2.6.1.4 Intersection

Classes C^1 and C^2 are said to intersect if they have some members in common, but each has members which do not belong to the other (i.e. complete inter-

section, or identity, is excluded here). The class of red things and the class of round things intersect in this fashion, as do the class of architects and the class of amateur musicians. The set of common members to two (or more) overlapping classes is often referred to as the intersection of the two (or more) classes.

2.6.1.5 Union

The combined set of members belonging to either of two (or more) classes (including overlapping classes) is called the union of the two (or more) classes. Thus the union of the class of dogs and the class of cats is constituted by the class of all entities which are either cats or dogs.

2.6.2 Class relations and propositional relations

There are obvious connections between the class relations described above and the propositional relations described earlier. For instance, the fact that *It's a dog* entails *It's an animal* is not unconnected to the fact that the class of dogs is a subclass of the class of animals (although the connection is not a necessary one unless we define the class of dogs as "the class of all possible dogs"). Some relations emerge more naturally within one approach than another. For instance, we gave no propositional parallel for class overlap. This could be called propositional independence, since the truth of either proposition in such a pair imposes no logical restraint on the truth value of the other, as in the case of *John is an architect* and *John is an amateur musician*. The relation of contradiction, on the other hand, emerges more naturally within the propositional approach. To find an equivalent of the relation between, say *dead* and *alive* within the class approach, we would have to say that the class of dead things and the class of alive things were (i) disjunct and (ii) exhaustive of a superclass of animate things.

2.6.3 Mapping

It sometimes happens that the members of one class have a relation of correspondence of some kind with one or more members of a parallel class. This type of correspondence is known as **mapping**. An example will make this clear. It is a well-known fact that a person's fingerprints are uniquely distinctive. If, therefore, we think of the class of persons and the class of fingerprints, there is a straightforward mapping relation between the two classes, in that each member of one class corresponds to a specific member of the other set. This is known as **one-to-one mapping**. Contrast this situation with the two classes FATHERS and CHILDREN. Every member of the FATHERS class corresponds to one or more members of the CHILDREN class, but every member of the CHILDREN class corresponds to a single specific member of the FATHERS class. Here we have **one-to-many** mapping between fathers and children, but **many-to-one** mapping between children and fathers. Yet another elementary mapping relation holds between the class of word forms and the class of meanings. If we

allow the possibility of synonymy, then some word forms (e.g. perhaps *begin* and *commence*) will map on to the same meaning, whereas other word forms (e.g. *bank*) will map on to more than one meaning. This is known as **many-to-many** mapping (see section 7.1.2 for a more detailed consideration of mapping between words and meanings).

2.7 Logical relations

Another useful set of concepts borrowed from logic are to do with relations between individual entities. The entities may be anything at all: objects, people, places, ideas. So can the relations be anything: "brother of", "smaller than", "has played string quartets with", "logically depends on". The logical properties of such relations can be grouped under four headings: transitivity, symmetry, reflexivity, and converseness.

2.7.1 Transitivity

A relation that is **transitive** is one such that if A is related in this specific way to B and B to C, then it follows inescapably that A stands in the relation to C. Suppose A, B, and C are people, and the relation is "is taller than". Then if A is taller than B and B is taller than C, then A is necessarily taller than C. If a relation is **intransitive**, then if A stands in the relation to B and B to C, then it is logically impossible for A to stand in the relation to C. This is the case with "is the mother of": if A is the mother of B and B the mother of C, then A cannot be the mother of C. A relation may be neither transitive nor intransitive; we shall call such a relation **non-transitive**. If John has played duets with Bill, and Bill has played duets with Tom, then we are not in a position to conclude anything regarding John's musical relations with Tom.

2.7.2 Symmetry

A **symmetric** relation is one such that if A stands in a particular relation to B, then B necessarily stands in that same relation to A. For instance, if A is near to B, then B is near to A. If a relation is **asymmetric**, then if A stands in the relation to B, B cannot stand in the same relation to A. An example of an asymmetric relation is "is taller than". Once again, it is useful to have a designation for relations that are neither symmetric nor asymmetric, such as "is sexually attracted by"; we shall label these **non-symmetric**.

2.7.3 Reflexivity

The property of reflexivity is not of great usefulness in semantic analysis: it is included for the sake of completeness. A relation is **reflexive** if something necessarily stands in that relation to itself. This includes most types of identity

relation such as "has the same name as", "is the same age as", etc. Again, we can recognize **irreflexive** relations like "is taller than", and **non-reflexive** relations such as "knows the weight of".

2.7.4 Converseness

Converseness is a relation between relations. Two relations are **converses** if one yields the same proposition as the other when the arguments are reversed. By this criterion, "above" and "below" are converses (perhaps more strictly "is above" and "is below"), because *A is below B*, assuming constancy of A and B, expresses the same proposition as *B is above A*. Other examples of (sentences expressing) converse relations are: *A is B's offspring*/*B is A's parent*, *A saw B*/*B was seen by A*, *A sold B to C*/*C bought B from A* (it is usual to disregard 'automatic' adjustments in grammatical realization, such as the change from *to* to *from* in the case of *buy* and *sell*). We have defined converseness in terms of two-way entailment between two sentences (e.g. *A is taller than B* and *B is shorter than A*). It is useful to have a relation defined on a one-way entailment. For instance, *A is B's doctor* entails *B is A's patient*, but the reverse entailment does not hold because other practitioners in the medical and para-medical field, such as dentists and speech therapists, also have patients. We shall say that *doctor* is a **semi-converse** of *patient*.

2.8 Quantification

2.8.1 Quantifiers

In standard first-order predicate calculus, propositional functions are constrained by **quantifiers**: these in effect limit the applicability of the predicate to the argument(s). Classical logic only has two quantifiers, the **existential quantifier** and the **universal quantifier**. The existential quantifier says something like this:

There exists at least one 'x' such that 'x sneezed'.

This is typically expressed in logical notation as:

$\exists x$ (*sneezed* (x)).

This could be roughly translated as *Someone sneezed. A man sneezed* would go into this special logical language as:

There exists at least one individual x such that x is a man and x sneezed.
$\exists x$ (*sneezed* (x) & *man* (x)).

The universal quantifier corresponds roughly to the ordinary language *all*, *every*. Thus *Dogs are animals* would translate as:

For all x, *x is a dog* entails *x is an animal.*
$\forall x$ (*dog* (x) $\rightarrow$ *animal* (x)).

2.8.2 Scope

In the sentence *Mary ruffled John's hair and kissed him again* we do not know without further contextual evidence, whether it was only Mary's kissing of John that was repeated, or the double action of ruffling the hair and kissing. This is an ambiguity of **scope**: we do not know how much of the previous sentence is included in the range of applicability of *again*. The term *scope* is usually used in connection with quantifiers: *again* is a kind of quantifier over events. An example involving a more traditional quantifier is: *Some women and foreigners must register with the police*. Here we are uncertain whether only some foreigners should register, or whether they all should (which would be the most natural interpretation of *Foreigners must register*). Reversing the order of constituents would remove the ambiguity: *Foreigners and some women must register*. The possibilities for variations of scope of this sort are tightly constrained by syntactic structure. (For a more detailed discussion of quantification, see Chapter 14, section 14.6.)

2.9 Use and mention

Consider the difference between (19) and (20):

(19) Snow has four letters.
Snow is a noun.
Snow is a natural kind term.
Snow is an English word.
Snow is easy to pronounce.

(20) Snow is white.
Snow damages crops.
Snow is frozen water.

The difference between these two sets is usually designated as a difference between **use** (here, of the word *snow*), as in (20), and **mention** (of the word *snow*), as in (19). In the sentences in (19) we are using the word form *snow* to identify a word of the language, and we then proceed to say something about that word; in the sentences in (20) we are using the word form to identify a substance in the world, prior to predicating something of it. A simple way of distinguishing the two is to apostrophize (or italicize) the language unit in question. If this makes a negligible effect on the meaning, then it is a case of mention:

Snow has four letters.
Snow is an English word.

**Snow* is white.
**Snow* damages crops.

Mention may involve any stretch of language:

Go to home is ungrammatical.
*Go to home is ungrammatical.

This brings us to the end of our brief survey of useful logical notions, and provides an elementary toolkit which will be drawn upon, and sometimes further refined, as and when the occasion demands.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. Arguments and predicates

Mark the following predicates as one-, two-, three-, or four-place (1, 2, 3,4) (think in terms of semantics rather than syntax):

yawn steal thank pay be tall be taller than meet put imagine day-dream cost understand explain

2. Sentence, statement, utterance, and proposition

Of which of the above can the following be said?

X was inaudible.
X was uninformative.
X was false.
X was in a foreign accent.
X was ungrammatical.
X was insincere.

3. For each of the following pairs of sentences, say whether the propositional content of the members is the same or different:

(i) (a) Take your hands off me! (said by a woman to a man)
(b) Take your filthy paws off me! (ditto)

(ii) (a) I always get my bread from Gregg's, because it's cheaper.
(b) I always buy my bread from Gregg's, because it's cheaper.

(iii) (a) Don't you find him rather skinny?
(b) Don't you find him rather thin?

(iv) (a) Have you read the stuff he wrote about telepathy?
(b) Have you read the garbage he wrote about telepathy?

(v) (a) She was there at the start of the race.
(b) She was there at the beginning of the race.

(vi) (a) John hasn't turned up.
(b) John hasn't turned up yet.

(vii) (a) Old Joshua Hobblethwaite died last week.
(b) Old Joshua Hobblethwaite passed away last week.

4. In which of the following does the (a)-sentence entail the (b)-sentence? Are there any problems?

(i) (a) X is a cat.
(b) X has four legs.

(ii) (a) X is a cat.
(b) X is an animal.

(iii) (a) X is a cat.
(b) X is a quadruped.

(iv) (a) X is a quadruped.
(b) X has four legs.

(v) (a) X is a quadruped.
(b) X is an animal.

(vi) (a) X is a pet.
(b) X is an animal.

(vii) (a) X is a pet.
(b) X is alive.

(viii) (a) X is not dead.
(b) X is alive.

(ix) (a) X has stopped smoking.
(b) X doesn't smoke any more.

(x) (a) X taught Y Z.
(b) Y learnt Z.

(xi) (a) X killed Y.
(b) Y is not alive.

(xii) (a) X watched Y.
(b) Y was doing something.

5. Mark the propositional relationship between the members of the following pairs of sentences as either EQUIVALENCE, CONTRARIETY, CONTRADICTION, or CONVERSENESS:

(i) (a) Proposition P is true.
(b) Proposition P is false.

(ii) (a) John likes Mary.
(b) John dislikes Mary.

(iii) (a) Mary agrees with the statement.
(b) Mary disagrees with the statement.

(iv) (a) Mary borrowed the book from John.
(b) John lent the book to Mary.

(v) (a) John killed the wasp.
(b) The wasp is still alive.

(vi) (a) John is not married.
(b) John is a bachelor.

6. Classify the following relations with regard to their TRANSITIVITY (i.e., as TRANSITIVE, INTRANSITIVE, or NON-TRANSITIVE) and their SYMMETRY (i.e., as SYMMETRIC, ASYMMETRIC, or NON-SYMMETRIC):

   parent of *ancestor of* *brother of* *related to* *sibling of* *friend of* *near to* *to the right of* *far from* *resembles*

Suggestions for further reading

The treatment here has been very informal. A similar elementary treatment, but with more practical exercises, will be found in Hurford and Heasley (1983). Lyons (1995) develops the philosophical background more fully, but still at an elementary level. Those requiring initiation into logical formalization will find an accessible introduction in Allwood, Anderson, and Dahl, (1977). Lyons (1977) gives a more detailed treatment of many of the topics touched on here. Cann (1993), McCawley (1981), and Larson and Segal (1995) are only for those who are really serious about the application of logic to language.

CHAPTER 3

Types and dimensions of meaning

3.1 **Introduction** 43

3.2 **Descriptive and non-descriptive meaning** 46

3.3 **Dimensions of non-descriptive meaning** 48

3.4 **Non-descriptive dimensions** 58

Discussion questions and exercises 62

Suggestions for further reading 63

CHAPTER 3

Types and dimensions of meaning

3.1 Introduction

The purpose of the present chapter is to survey (albeit somewhat superficially) the range of possible varieties of meaning in language. Before we can do this, we need some idea of what is to count as meaning. There are many different opinions on this question, but the matter will not be argued in detail here, since many of the divergent views are simply a question of terminology—one is to some extent at least free to stipulate what is to count. In this book a broad characterization of meaning will be adopted: meaning is anything that affects the relative normality of grammatical expressions. This is an example of a **contextual** approach to meaning, because relative normality is a concept which applies only to combinations of elements; that is to say, it implies that meaning is to be studied by observing the interactions between elements and other elements, in larger constructions such as sentences. It follows from this characterization that if two expressions differ in meaning, then this will show up in the fact that a context can be found in which they differ in normality; conversely, two expressions with the same meaning will have the same normality in all contexts. So, for instance, we know that *dog* and *cat* differ in meaning (to take a crudely obvious case) because (for example) *Our cat has had kittens* is more normal than *?Our dog has just had kittens*. Likewise, we know that *pullover* and *sweater* are at least very close in meaning, because of the difficulty in finding contexts in which they differ in normality (for further discussion of synonymy, see Chapter 8). (Note that 'mention' contexts, such as *Pullover/?Sweater has eight letters*, do not count.) It also follows from the characterization adopted here that the **normality profile** of a linguistic item, that is to say, its pattern of normality and abnormality across the full range of possible contexts, gives in some sense a picture of its meaning. It does not, however, tell us what meaning *really is*. This is a deep and controversial question; it will be generally assumed in this book that meaning is in essence *conceptual* (see Chapter 6), but is most easily studied through language.

3.1.1 Semantic anomaly versus grammatical anomaly

For the characterization of meaning given above to work, we need to be able to separate semantic anomaly from grammatical anomaly. This is another contentious issue, but I believe it is possible to get some grip on it. The account given here largely follows that given in Cruse (1986).

The most commonly encountered criterion for separating the two types of anomaly is **corrigibility**: it is claimed that grammatical anomalies are typically corrigible in the sense that it is obvious what the 'correct' version should be, whereas semantic anomalies are typically not corrigible. Thus, **Me seed two mouses* can easily be corrected to *I saw two mice*, whereas there is no obvious way of amending **The noiseless typewriter-blasts squirmed faithfully*. However, while this may be generally true, it is not difficult to find easily correctable anomalies which intuitively are clearly semantic:* *This hole is too large for John to crawl through.*

There is a basic drawback with the notion of corrigibility, which is that it is presupposed that one knows what was originally intended. A better approach is to ask what is the minimum change to the sentence (or whatever) that will remove the anomaly. There are three possibilities (assuming that the anomaly has a single source):

(i) The anomaly can only be cured by replacing one (or more) of the full lexical elements (i.e. a noun, verb, adjective, or adverb). In this case we can be reasonably certain that we are dealing with a semantic anomaly:

(1) John is too *small to get through this hole.
√big

(ii) The anomaly can only be cured by changing one or more grammatical elements (affixes, particles, determiners, etc.), but not by changing a full lexical item. In this case we can be sure that the anomaly is grammatical:

(2) Mary *be going home.
√is

(iii) The anomaly can be cured either by grammatical or by lexical adjustment. In this case we need to know whether the lexical possibilities form a natural semantic class or not: if they do, the anomaly can be taken as semantic. Compare (3) and (4):

(3) *Mary went home tomorrow./Mary will go home tomorrow.
(grammatical adjustment)
Mary went home *tomorrow.
yesterday.
last week.
etc.
(lexical adjustment)

Here the items which remove the anomaly share a component of meaning, namely, an indication of past time.

(4) *Le livre est sur le table./Le livre est sur la table.
(grammatical adjustment)
Le livre est sur le *table.
fauteuil.
plancher.
buffet.
rocher.
frigo.

In this case the items which remove the anomaly have nothing in common semantically, and the anomaly of (4) can hence be diagnosed as grammatical.

There is one more possible diagnostic criterion: a semantic anomaly can often be **improved** by manipulating the context, whereas this is usually not possible with pure syntactic anomalies:

(5) The chair saw Mary.
(Mary has a persecution mania. She believes all her accidents are due to malevolent forces. No doubt the chair saw her, computed her path across the room, and placed itself just where she would trip over it.)

No amount of contextual elaboration can reduce the anomaly of *The mans possess three car.*

3.1.2 Types of anomaly

We have so far treated anomaly as a unitary phenomenon, without trying to distinguish different sorts. It is quite a useful analytical tool, even without further refinement, as most speakers have sensitive intuitions regarding the normality or oddness of a bit of language. But it is sometimes useful to make a distinction between different types of anomaly. The following are the main varieties (they are only illustrated here: more detailed discussion will be found in Chapter 12).

3.1.2.1 Pleonasm

John chewed it with his teeth.
It was stolen illegally.
Mary deliberately made a speech.

These examples give a feeling of redundancy: how else can you chew something, if not with your teeth? How can anybody make a speech accidentally? We shall look further into the reasons for pleonasm in a later chapter: for the moment an intuitive grasp is sufficient.

3.1.2.2 Dissonance

The balloon rose ever lower.
The hamster was only slightly dead.
Singing hypotenuses melted in every eye.

Here there is a sense of ill-matched meanings clashing, giving rise to paradox, contradiction, a need to look for figurative readings (interpretability varies).

3.1.2.3 Zeugma

Mary picked the roses she had planted the year before.
John expired on the same day as his TV licence.

A sense of punning is an unmistakable symptom of zeugma. The essence of zeugma is the attempt to make a single expression do two semantic jobs at the same time.

3.1.2.4 Improbability

The puppy finished off a whole bottle of whisky.
The throne was occupied by a gun-toting baboon.

In the last analysis, there is probably a continuum between improbability and dissonance. For present purposes, we shall distinguish improbability by the fact that *I don't believe it!*, *How fantastic!*, and *That's a lie!*, etc. are appropriate responses.

3.2 Descriptive and non-descriptive meaning

Several scholars have proposed ways of classifying meaning into types, and the various proposals by no means agree in their details. But there is one type of meaning on which there is substantial agreement, and we shall start by separating this type from all the rest, although, as we shall see, the division is not quite so clear-cut as it may at first seem. The type of meaning in question is variously labelled **ideational** (Halliday), **descriptive** (Lyons), **referential**, **logical** or **propositional** (many). These are characterized in different ways by different scholars, but there is substantial overlap in respect of the sort of meaning they are referring to; we shall adopt Lyons's term *descriptive* as being the best suited to our purposes. The prototypical characteristics of this type of meaning are as follows (these points are not necessarily independent):

(i) It is this aspect of the meaning of a sentence which determines whether or not any proposition it expresses is true or false (see the discussion in Chapter 2). This property justifies the labels *logical* and *propositional* for this type of meaning.
(ii) It is this aspect of the meaning of an expression which constrains what the expression can be used to refer to; from another point of view, it is

this type of meaning which guides the hearer in identifying the intended referent(s); this is the motivation for the label *referential.*

(iii) It is **objective** in the sense that it interposes a kind of distance between the speaker and what he says. It is **displaced** in Hockett's sense of not being tied to the here-and-now of the current speech situation.

(iv) It is fully conceptualized. That is to say, it provides a set of conceptual categories into which aspects of experience may be sorted. Such a categorization effectively 'describes' the experiences and licenses further inferences about their properties, and so on.

(v) Descriptive aspects of the meaning of a sentence are 'exposed' in the sense that they can potentially be negated or questioned. A reply from an interlocutor such as *That's a lie* or *That's not true*, targets the descriptive meaning within a statement.

Let us see how these criteria operate with a sentence which contains both descriptive and non-descriptive meaning:

(6) A: What's the matter?
B: Somebody's turned the bloody lights off.

Taking point (i) first, in B's utterance, *bloody* makes no contribution to the truth or falsity of the statement. That is to say, *Somebody's turned the lights off* and *Somebody's turned the bloody lights off* are true and false in exactly the same range of situations. On the other hand, of course, in a situation where *Somebody's turned the lights off* is true, *Somebody's turned the lights on* would be false, therefore what *off* signifies is part of the descriptive meaning of the utterance.

With respect to points (ii) and (iv), it is clear that *Somebody's turned the lights off* functions to inform A what has happened: it describes an event, in terms of shared conceptual categories such as TURN OFF and LIGHTS. The word *bloody*, however, has no descriptive function: it does not specify a subcategory of lights, nor give any help to the hearer in identifying the lights in question. It has a function which is entirely non-descriptive, which we will come to later.

As far as point (iii) is concerned, the descriptive meaning of the sentence can be displaced in the sense that it can be used to refer to events distant in time and space from the speech event:

(7) Somebody will go there and turn the lights off.

Notice, however, that the exasperation expressed by *bloody* cannot be displaced. In fact, in B's utterance in (6), while the descriptive meaning designates a previous event, *bloody* expresses B's exasperation at the moment of utterance.

Finally, the meaning of *bloody* is not amenable to straightforward contradiction. If someone replies *That's a lie* to B's statement, that would mean, not

that B is not exasperated, but that the lights had not been turned off; that is to say, only the descriptive meaning would be denied. A reply such as *They are not bloody lights* cannot mean "You are misleading me by expressing exasperation"; such a reply would be, to say the least, unusual, but it could have a metalinguistic meaning such as "You shouldn't have used the word *bloody*".

We shall adopt the above criteria for our conception of descriptive meaning, with two modifications, or provisos. The first is that we shall not require descriptive meaning to be categorically determinant for truth values/conditions, but merely that it should be directly relevant to truth in the sense of rendering the truth of a proposition more or less likely. For instance, the truth of "Fido is an animal" may be said to be crucial to the truth of "Fido is a dog", in that if Fido is not an animal, then he/it can in no wise be a dog. However, "Fido can bark" is not crucial in this way: it is quite conceivable that a particular dog may not be able to bark. But if "Fido can bark" is false, that makes it less likely that Fido is a dog. Of course, "Fido can bark" is part of a normal description of a normal dog, so the inclusion of such matters under the heading of descriptive meaning is not so perverse.

The second hedge is that we shall not require of descriptive meaning that it be within the normal scope of negation, questioning, etc., provided that it is of the type that can normally be negated, or whatever. In other words, we shall distinguish between descriptive meaning which is, as it were 'ring-fenced' against contradiction, and meaning which cannot be contradicted because it is the wrong type (usually because it does not present a proposition). For instance, *It's a dog* will normally be taken to indicate that (the referent of) *it* is an animal, that is, its being an animal is part (in some sense) of the meaning of *It's a dog*. But if someone points to a creature and says *Is that a dog?*, they are unlikely to be asking whether or not the referent of *that* is an animal.

With these provisos, let us proceed to an examination of a number of dimensions along which descriptive meaning may vary.

3.3 Dimensions of descriptive meaning

3.3.1 Intrinsic dimensions

Intrinsic dimensions are semantic properties an element possesses in and of itself, without (overt) reference to other elements.

3.3.1.1 Quality

What we shall call **quality** is at one and the same time the most obvious and important dimension of variation within descriptive meaning, and the one about which we shall say the least. It is this which constitutes the difference between *red* and *green*, *dog* and *cat*, *apple* and *orange*, *run* and *walk*, *hate* and

fear, *here* and *there*. Pure differences of quality are to be observed only between items which are equal on the scales of intensity and specificity (see below). A rough-and-ready check on difference of quality is whether one can say *not X but Y* and *not Y but X* without oddness:

(8) It's not here, it's there.
It's not there, it's here.
(9) I didn't run, I walked.
I didn't walk, I ran.
(10) Her dress is not red, it's green.
Her dress is not green, it's red.

These may be contrasted with the following, where there is a semantic difference, but not one of a descriptive nature:

(11) ?That's not my father, that's my Dad.
?She didn't pass away, she kicked the bucket.

Notice that items which differ in specificity will pass only half of this test:

(12) It's an animal, but it's not a dog,
*It's a dog, but it's not an animal.

Differences of quality can be observed at all levels of specificity. We may think of hierarchies of semantic domains of various scope, or, alternatively of different **ontological types**. A typical set of ontological types at the highest level of generality is the following:

THING QUALITY QUANTITY PLACE TIME STATE PROCESS EVENT ACTION RELATION MANNER

These represent fundamental modes of conception that the human mind is presumably innately predisposed to adopt. At lower levels of generality, we find (among other types) hierarchically arranged sets of conceptual categories:

Living things:	animals, fish, insects, reptiles . . .
Animals:	dogs, cats, lions, elephants . . .
Dogs:	collies, alsatians, pekinese, spaniels . . .

3.3.1.2 Intensity

Descriptive meaning may vary in intensity, without change of quality. For instance, one would not wish to say that *large* and *huge* differ in quality: they designate the same area of semantic quality space, but differ in intensity. It is characteristic of intensity differences that they yield normal results in the following test frame(s):

(13) It wasn't just X, it was Y.
I wouldn't go so far as to say it was Y, but it was X.

If these are normal, then Y is more intense than X:

(14) It wasn't just large, it was huge.
(cf. ?It wasn't just huge, it was large.)
I wouldn't go so far as to say it was huge, but it was large.
(15) I wasn't just scared of her, I was terrified of her.
I wouldn't go so far as to say I was terrified of her, but I was scared of her.

From (14) and (15) we can conclude that *huge* is more intense than *large*, and *terrified* than *scared*. (Note that virtually any pair of items can be made to seem normal in this frame, given a suitably elaborated context: the test is intended to work in a zero context.)

Variation in intensity is of course possible only in certain areas of quality space. But it is not confined to those areas designated by gradable adjectives (i.e., is not confined to the domain of QUALITIES). Examples from other areas are:

(16) It wasn't just a mist, it was a fog.
I wouldn't go so far as to say it was a fog, but it was a mist.
(17) He didn't just beat her, he thrashed her.
I wouldn't go so far as to say he thrashed her, but he did beat her.

3.3.1.3 Specificity

Differences of descriptive **specificity** show up in various logical properties. These differ according to the exact type of specificity involved (see below). For one major type of specificity, these properties include, for instance, unilateral entailment (in appropriate contexts):

(18) *It's a dog* unilaterally entails *It's an animal.*
It's not an animal unilaterally entails *It's not a dog.*

Note also that *dogs and other animals* is normal, but not *?animals and other dogs*.

From all this, we can conclude that *dog* is more specific than *animal* (alternatively, *animal* is more general than *dog*). Similarly, *slap* is more specific than *hit*, *scarlet* is more specific than *red*, *woman* is more specific than *person*. In all these cases one can say that one term (the more general one) designates a more extensive area of quality space than the other. Langacker (1993) likens difference of linguistic specificity to viewing something from different distances, the less specific the greater the distance. For instance, from a great distance, a dog may just look like an object; from closer in, one can see it is an animal, but not what kind of animal; closer still, and the fact that it is a dog becomes clear, but perhaps not what variety of dog, and so on.

It is possible to distinguish several types of specificity. All the cases illustrated above involve type-specificity, that is to say, the more specific term

denotes a subtype included within the more general type. But there is also part-specificity, illustrated by, for instance, *hand:finger* (where *finger* is the more specific), *bicycle:wheel*, *university:faculty*. *John injured his finger* is more specific than *John injured his hand*. The logical consequences of this type of specificity are different to those for type-specificity. Unilateral entailment appears (in general) only with locative expressions:

(19) *The boil is on John's elbow* unilaterally entails *The boil is on John's arm.*
John lectures in the Arts Faculty unilaterally entails *John lectures in the university.*

A third type of specificity is intensity-specificity, where one range of degrees of some property is included in another range. For instance, one reading of *large* includes all ranges of intensity of "greater than average size". Hence *It's huge* entails *It's large*, but *It's large* does not entail *It's huge*. The logical properties here are the same as for type-specificity.

3.3.1.4 Vagueness

We shall say that the meaning of a word is **vague** to the extent that the criteria governing its use are not precisely statable. Before examining this notion in greater detail, it is necessary to make as clear a distinction as possible between it and certain other notions with which it is often coupled in discussions, if not actually confused. The first of these is generality. Although someone who says *I saw a reptile* is not giving as much information as someone who says *I saw a snake*, they are not being any more vague. That is to say, the notion "reptile" is as clearly delimitable as the notion "snake", it is just that it denotes a more inclusive class. Another notion which must be distinguished from vagueness is abstractness. For instance, the notion of "entailment" is abstract, but is relatively well defined, and therefore not vague.

Under the heading of vagueness we shall distinguish two different subdimensions. The first is **ill-definedness**, and the second is laxness. These can vary independently. Ill-definedness is well illustrated by terms which designate a region on a gradable scale such as *middle-aged*. Age varies continuously: *middle-aged* occupies a region on this scale. But at what age does someone begin to be middle-aged, and at what age does one cease to be middle-aged and become old? There is quite an overlap between *middle-aged* and *in their fifties*, but the latter is significantly better defined: we know in principle how to determine whether someone is in their fifties or not. General terms may be better defined than their subclasses. For instance, *vertebrate* and *mammal* are relatively well defined, whereas the everyday words *dog*, *cat*, and so on are much less easily definable.

The second subtype of vagueness is **laxness** (vs. **strictness**) of application. For some terms, their essence is easily defined, but they are habitually applied in a loose way. This seems to be a characteristic of individual words. For instance, the notion of a circle is capable of a clear definition, and everyone is

capable of grasping the strict notion, even if they cannot give a correct mathematical specification. But the word *circle* is habitually used very loosely, as in, for instance, *The mourners stood in a circle round the grave*. No one expects the people to form an exact circle here, yet there is no sense of metaphorical or extended use. Contrast this with *odd number*, which is not only clearly definable, but is always applied strictly, so that, for instance, it would not do to call 2.8 an odd number, on the grounds that it was 'near enough to 3'. A word like *dog* could be said to be relatively ill defined, but it is strictly applied, in that applying it to something which is known not to be a dog is felt to be metaphorical, even if the referent looks like a dog.

3.3.1.5 Basicness

Another dimension along which descriptive meanings can vary is that of **basicness**: some meanings are considered more basic than others. This is a complex topic and cannot be fully explored here. There are several different interpretations of the notion. We shall look at three broad ways of thinking of basicness.

In many, extremely varied, approaches to language and meaning a distinction is made between words or features which are close to concrete everyday experience, and those which, though in some way ultimately derived from these, are to various degrees remote from actual bodily experience. For instance, the meaning of *cold* can be directly experienced through the senses, but the meaning of *gradable* as applied to adjectives (e.g. *a little bit/slightly/quite/rather/very/extremely cold*) cannot, though there is undoubtedly a connection of some sort between bodily experiences of coldness and the abstract notion of gradability. The distinction we are making here corresponds to one meaning of *concrete* (has spatio-temporal location) as opposed to *abstract* (does not have spatio-temporal location). A standard picture of meaning within the philosophy of language identifies a set of words, known as the **observation vocabulary**, whose meanings are fixed by their relations with observable properties of the environment. The meanings of words not belonging to this set are fixed by a network of inferential or other relations to the meanings of other words, including those belonging to the observation vocabulary. We can take observation vocabulary items to be the more basic. A general assumption is that the concrete/observable/basic terms will be the first learned, probably the first to arise in the evolution of human language, the most accessible in psycholinguistic terms, the most likely to be points of convergence between widely different languages, and so on. Cognitive linguists believe that cognition is built up as it were from concrete to abstract, and concrete domains function as source domains for metaphorical processes involved in creating abstract domains.

Another way of looking at more and less basic meanings is in terms of independence and dependence: one meaning may presuppose, or depend on, another. As an example of dependency, consider the case of *acceleration*. This

presupposes/depends on the notion of *speed*, which in turn presupposes the yet more basic notion of *movement*, down to the most basic notions of all: *physical object*, *location*, and *time*. Notice that *acceleration* is not more specific than *speed*, in the way that *dog* is more specific than *animal*, or *finger* than *hand*, but it is more complex, in that it builds on more basic meanings.

A natural way of thinking about this type of dependency is in terms of constituency: the dependent meanings, being more complex, are built up out of the more basic meanings. For instance, if we define *acceleration* as "rate of change of speed with time", we incorporate the simpler notion "speed" into the definition. A similar definition of *speed* would not need to make any reference to a notion of "acceleration" (e.g. "rate of change of location with time"). In a similar way, the meaning of *stallion* is built out of the more basic meanings "male" and "horse". On this view, the most basic meanings are the so-called semantic primes—elementary notions out of which all other meanings are built. There is no agreement on any set of primes. (This topic will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 13.)

Yet another interpretation of the notion of basicness is the cognitive psychologists' concept of a **basic level category**. This is treated in more detail in Chapter 7. Briefly, basic level categories are easier to use than other categories: examples are APPLE, ROSE, COW, CAR, BUTTERFLY, as opposed to FRUIT, FLOWER, ANIMAL, VEHICLE, or INSECT on the one hand, or RUSSET, HYBRID TEA, JERSEY COW, HATCHBACK, or SWALLOWTAIL on the other.

3.3.1.6 Viewpoint

A number of linguistic expressions encode as part of their meaning a particular **viewpoint** on the events or states of affairs designated. Perhaps the most obvious example of this is provided by deictic expressions (see Chapter 15 for more details), such as *this*, *that*, *here*, *there*, *now*, *then*, and so on, which are usually claimed to encode the viewpoint of the speaker at the moment of utterance. So, for instance, *the book on the table*, if it was valid for one speaker in a particular context, would be valid for anyone present; however, the validity of *this book here*, as a description of the same book, would clearly depend on the position of the speaker relative to the book in question.

There are less obvious encodings of viewpoint. Consider the difference between (20), (21), (22), and (23):

(20) The village is on the north side of the hill.
(21) The village is on the other side of the hill.
(22) The village is over the hill.
(23) The village is round the other side of the hill.

It is easy to envisage a situation in which all four sentences give the same information. But they differ in respect of implicit viewpoint: (20) gives what might be called a viewpoint-free description of the position of the village; (21) requires knowledge of a reference point to be interpretable (other side from

what?); (22) and (23) adopt (and encode) different viewpoints, but are similar in that they take the viewpoint of someone travelling to the village from the speaker's location, in the case of (22) a journey straight over the hill, in the case of (23) a less strenuous journey round the hill.

3.3.2 Relative dimensions

Under the next three headings, we shall look at parameters which relate not so much to complete meanings, but to semantic features which form part of a complete lexical sense. (The notion of decomposing meanings into features or components is discussed in greater detail in Chapter 13. Here we take a fairly naïve view.)

3.3.2.1 Necessity and expectedness

The first parameter is necessity. The simple view of this parameter is to make a sharp dichotomy between necessary and contingent logical relationships, and use entailment to determine whether or not a feature is necessary. On the basis of the following we could say that "being an animal" is a necessary feature of *dog*, whereas "ability to bark" is not:

(24) *X is a dog* entails *X is an animal.*
X is a dog does not entail *X can bark.*

As a first step towards moving away from a simple dichotomy, I would like to try to undermine the reader's confidence in the notion of entailment. How confident are we in our ability to say definitively whether some sentence A entails another sentence B? Consider the following putative entailments:

(25) *X stopped singing* ?entails? *X did not continue singing.*
(26) *X is a cat* ?entails? *X is an animal.*
(27) *X is pregnant* ?entails? *X is female.*
(28) *X is a physical object* ?entails? *X has weight.*
(29) *X is a quadruped* ?entails? *X has 4 legs.*
(30) *X is Y's wife* ?entails? *X is not Y's daughter.*

Presumably most speakers will have the greatest confidence in the entailment in (25): this seems to depend not on the structure of the world as we know it, but purely on the meanings of *stop* and *continue*: there is no conceivable world or universe in which the words mean what they mean in current English and this entailment does not hold. In (26)–(30), however, the solidity of the entailment is less certain.

Take (26), first. The well-known 'robot cat' argument is relevant here. It goes something like this. Suppose one day it was discovered that cats were not animals, as everyone has always thought, but highly sophisticated self-replicating robots. Other supposed animals retained their biological status.

Under such circumstances, would we be more ready to respond to the information with (31) or (32)?

(31) Aha! So there are no such things as cats, after all!
(32) Aha! So cats are not what we thought they were!

The vast majority of ordinary speakers unhesitatingly opt for (32), which at the very least suggests that animalhood is not a necessary criterion for cathood, since speakers are inclined to retain the name *cat*, but change their ideas about the referents.

This interpretation is strengthened by contrast with cases where speakers are not so accommodating. Suppose that it was discovered that there were no male horses; what we had been used to think of as stallions, actually belonged to a different species, and foals were produced parthenogenetically. Under these circumstances, would we be more ready to exclaim (33) or (34)?

(33) Aha! So there are no such things as stallions!
(34) Aha! So stallions are not what we thought they were!

This time, a majority of speakers is happier with (33), although less overwhelmingly than in the previous case, from which it appears that maleness and equinity ARE criterial to stallionhood (or, strictly, at least one of them is). It seems there are two different types of word, one with **referential stability** in the face of radical changes in the nature of the conceptual category, and the other without such stability. The first type are known as **natural kind terms**, and the latter, as **nominal kind terms**.

In the case of sentence (27) above, the argument against entailment is slightly different. Lyons points out that according to certain authorities, the biotechnology exists to implant a fertilized embryo into the body of a man, in such a way as to allow it to develop, and ultimately, be born. Would we be prepared to apply the term *pregnant* to such a man? (Most people are so prepared, even if reluctantly.) If so, the relationship in (27) is contingent on the way our world usually is—it is not a logical relationship.

People are less sure about examples like (28), which involve scientific truths of some fundamentality. Is it conceivable that the fundamental laws of physics might have been different? When faced with such a notion, the majority of people concede that they could, thus destroying the logical necessity of the relation.

Example (29) involves a different point. If a cat loses a leg in an accident, does it cease to be a quadruped? The majority view is that it does not, which is slightly disturbing in that "having four legs" is obviously part of the ***definition*** of a quadruped. However, the matter is fairly easily resolved (but it leaves the entailment in (29) in tatters): what the definition defines is not ***any*** quadruped, but a ***well-formed*** quadruped.

Example (30) is slightly dubious. In one sense it is not a logical relationship, but one contingent on particular social rules, which could well be different in

different societies. On the other hand, the relation arises from a legal definition (in one society). (One could perhaps say that for the logical relation to hold one would have to say:

(35) *X is Y's legal wife under English law* entails *X is not Y's daughter.*

Even then it is not certain that the relation is a logically watertight one. Suppose that neither X nor Y knew that X was Y's daughter, and they got married in good faith. Would it not be the case that X would be Y's legal wife unless and until it could be proved that she was his daughter?)

It seems clear that some of the relations illustrated in (26)–(30) are stronger than others, and that it would be more useful to recognize a scale of degrees of necessity. In fact we can go the whole hog and extend the scale to cover negative necessity, in other words, impossibility. A convenient and rough way of measuring degree of necessity is by means of the *but*-test. It operates as follows:

(36) It's a dog, but it's an animal. (tautology)
It's a dog, but it's not an animal. (contradiction)
("is an animal" is a **necessary** feature of *dog*)

(37) It's a dog, but it barks. (odd—tautology)
It's a dog, but it doesn't bark. (normal)
("barks" is an **expected** feature of *dog*)

(38) It's a dog, but it's brown. (odd)
It's a dog, but it's not brown. (odd)
("brown" is a **possible** feature of *dog*).

(39) It's a dog, but it sings. (normal description of an abnormal dog)
It's a dog, but it doesn't sing. (odd—tautology)
("sings" is an **unexpected** feature of *dog*)

(40) It's a dog, but it's a fish. (contradiction)
It's a dog, but it's not a fish. (tautology)
("is a fish" is an **impossible** feature of *dog*)

Finer distinctions are possible (and worth while), especially in the upper reaches of the *expected* region of the scale of necessity. Lyons (1981) suggests **natural necessity** for expectations based on the nature of the physical universe, and **social necessity** for expectations based on human laws and social conventions. Cruse (1986) has **canonical necessity** for such cases as (29); this could conceivably be extended to include cases like (27), since a male pregnancy, although not a logical contradiction, would be some sort of aberration, that is, it would be non-canonical. Obviously if the process became more common, "female" would fall down the necessity scale to being a merely *expected* feature of *pregnant*.

3.3.2.2 Sufficiency

Sufficiency is a kind of converse of necessity. We normally speak of the **joint sufficiency** of a set of features (for instance, the features [MALE] and [HORSE] are jointly sufficient to guarantee that anything possessing them is a stallion). We may interpret the notion as it applies to a single feature in terms of **diagnosticity**, an obviously gradable notion. For instance, the feature [BREATHES] is not very diagnostic for BIRD, since many other creatures breathe. The feature [TWO LEGGED] is much better, but applies also to humans. A maximally diagnostic feature for BIRD is [FEATHERED], since no other creature has feathers. Notice that all of these have the same degree of necessity (i.e. canonical). The *but*-test can be made to give results for diagnosticity comparable to those for necessity. Thus [CANONICALLY FOUR LEGGED] is what might be called **logically diagnostic** for *quadruped*, since *X canonically has four legs, but it's a quadruped* is a tautology and *X canonically has four legs but it isn't a quadruped* is a contradiction.

[CANONICALLY FEATHERED] comes out as **naturally diagnostic** in that while there are no known creatures with feathers other than birds (i.e., that is a feature of the world as we know it), the idea of, say, a feathered mammal is not a logical contradiction (cf. Angela Carter's (1984) *Nights at the Circus*): so, *X has feathers but it's a bird* is an odd use of *but*, whereas *X has feathers but it isn't a bird* is normal.

3.3.2.3 Salience

Things which are salient stand out from their background in some way, and have a superior power of commanding attention. This property may be shown by one linguistic element *vis-à-vis* other elements in a larger expression, or by one feature of the meaning of a word *vis-à-vis* other features of the same word. I would like to distinguish two types of saliency (without, however, wishing to deny their interrelationships).

One way of interpreting the notion of salience is in terms of the ease of access of information. Obviously, features which are easy to get at are going to play a larger role in semantic processing in real time than those which are harder to get at. Certainly, many of the so-called prototype effects observable between items and categories seem to depend on ease of access, and it would be reasonable to expect the same to be true of features. When people are asked to list the characteristics of some entity, under time pressure, there is a strong tendency for certain features to be mentioned early in everyone's lists. This is presumably because they are the easiest features to access.

A type of salience which is at least partly different from simple ease of access is degree of foregrounding or backgrounding. One reason for thinking it is different from simple ease of access is that it can be manipulated by speakers. This is most usually discussed in dichotomous terms as the **figure-ground effect**. For many purposes, this may be adequate, but I prefer to think in terms of continuously variable foregrounding vs. backgrounding. The effect

can be very easily illustrated by one use of verb aspect in English: the continuous aspect is regularly used to indicate a background against which information signalled by a simple tense verb is highlighted. Thus, in (41), the highlighted part of the message is "John watched the programme", which is presented against the background of another activity of John's, whereas in (42), the prominence relations are reversed:

(41) John watched the programme while he was having supper.
(42) John had his supper while he was watching the programme.

There are various syntactic devices which have the function of highlighting/backgrounding information. For instance, in (43) the spotlight is thrown back on to what was backgrounded in (41), without changing the aspect of the verbs:

(43) It was while he was having supper that John watched the programme.

One of the symptoms of backgrounding is that backgrounded information is not in the scope of, for instance, negation or questioning. In (44) and (45), for instance, the fact that John watched the programme is not questioned or negated, but is taken for granted, assumed by the speaker to be known as a fact to the hearer, or, as the technical term has it, **presupposed**:

(44) Was it while he was having supper that John watched the programme?
(45) It wasn't while he was having supper that John watched the programme.

Differences of relative prominence can also be observed within a simple sentence. Consider the difference between *John resembles Bill* and *John is taller than Bill*, and between *Bill resembles John* and *Bill is shorter than John.* The sentences in each pair may be mutually entailing, but they do not mean the same thing. In each one, the less prominent direct object is presented as a kind of standard against which the more prominent subject is assessed.

Less obviously, there can be prominence differences in the features of the meaning of a single word. For instance, *(a) blonde*, *woman*, and *actor* all designate human beings, and this is part of their meaning, but it is backgrounded; what they highlight, respectively, is hair colour, sex, and profession. Hence, if some one says *It wasn't a blonde that I saw*, the likeliest interpretation is that both [HUMAN BEING] and [FEMALE] are outside the scope of the negative, and only [FAIR-HAIRED] is being negated.

3.4 Non-descriptive dimensions

3.4.1 Expressive meaning

Consider the difference between (46) and (47):

(46) Gosh!
(47) I am surprised.

Sentence (46) is subjective, and does not present a conceptual category to the hearer: it **expresses** an emotional state in much the same way as a cat's purr or a baby's cry. Its validity is restricted to the current state of the speaker: it cannot be put into the past tense. No proposition is expressed: the hearer cannot reply *Are you?* or *That's a lie!* (which are perfectly possible responses to (47)). Sentence (46) is also **prosodically gradable**, in that greater surprise is expressed by both greater volume and greater pitch range. By contrast, (47) expresses a proposition, which can be questioned or denied, and can be expressed equally well by someone else or at a different place or time: *You are surprised* (said by hearer); *He was surprised* (said at a later time). It offers conceptual categories (CURRENT SPEAKER, SURPRISED), under which a given state of affairs can be subsumed. In a sense, of course, (46) and (47) 'mean the same thing', which suggests that the difference between descriptive and expressive meaning is a matter not of semantic quality (area of semantic space), but of mode of signification.

Some words possess only expressive and no descriptive meaning and to these we can assign the term **expletives**:

(48) It's freezing—shut the *bloody* window!
(49) Oh, *hell*! *Wow*! *Oops*! *Ouch*!

Notice that expressive meaning does not contribute to propositional content, so the action requested in (48) would not change if *bloody* were omitted: a bloody window (in this sense) is not a special kind of window.

Some words have both descriptive and expressive meaning:

(50) It was *damn* cold. (cf. *extremely*, which has only descriptive meaning)
(51) Stop *blubbering*. (cf. *crying*)

Questions and negatives only operate on the descriptive meaning in such sentences, so, for instance *It wasn't all that cold* in reply to (50) would deny the degree of cold indicated, but would not call into question the speaker's expressed feelings. **Evaluative** meaning has a variable status: sometimes it seems to be propositional:

(52) A: Don't read that—it's a rag.
B: No, it isn't, it's a jolly good paper.

There is no doubt that *rag* expresses contempt for the newspaper in question, but B's reply is not at all odd, which suggests that there is also an element of objective conceptualization. In the set *horse*, *nag*, *steed*, my intuitions are that the difference between *horse* and *steed* is purely expressive (you can't say: *?It's not a steed, it's just a horse*), but the difference between *horse* and *nag* is propositional/descriptive.

The expressive words we have considered so far cannot be used unexpressively. However, some words seem to be potentially, but not necessarily

expressive. With one type of such words, the expressivity appears only when appropriate intonation and stress are added:

(53) *still, yet, already*
Does she still live in Manchester?
Has the postman been yet?
The railway station had already been closed when we came to live here.

These sentences all seem to be expressively neutral, but feeling can be added prosodically:

(54) Are you ***still*** here?
Surely she hasn't gone ***already***?
You mean you haven't done it ***yet***?

What in Chapter 9 are called *implicit superlatives* (such as *huge, tiny, beautiful, brilliant*) are expressively neutral if not stressed, but seem to be able to acquire an expressive element if stressed. They contrast remarkably in this respect with their non-superlative counterparts:

(55) It was absolutely ***huge***.
?It was absolutely ***large***.
(56) It was absolutely ***tiny***.
?It was absolutely ***small***.

Out of a set of near-synonyms, it sometimes happens that some but not others can be expressively stressed:

(57) *baby* vs. *infant, child, neonate*
Mother and baby are doing well.
Oh, look! It's a ***baby***! Isn't he lovely?
?Oh, look! It's a ***child/infant/neonate***! Isn't he lovely?

Some words (called in Cruse 1986 **expressive amplifiers**) can be used with neutral expression, but can also pick up and amplify any expressiveness in their context without needing any prosodic assistance and in this respect they often contrast with synonyms (which frequently are Latinate). For instance, there is little or no difference between (58) and (59), whereas there is a more palpable difference between (60) and (61):

(58) I want you to go on with the treatment for a few more weeks.
(59) I want you to continue with the treatment for a few more weeks.
(60) They went on banging on the wall for ages.
(61) They continued banging on the wall for ages.

3.4.2 Dialect and register allegiance: evoked meaning

Put briefly (and simplistically), dialectal variation is variation in language use according to speaker, and register variation is variation within the speech of a

single community according to situation. Usages characteristic of a particular dialect or register have the power of evoking their home contexts, and in the case of register variants, of actually creating a situation. Such associations, which have no propositional content, are called **evoked meaning** in Cruse (1986). Evoked meaning may be very powerful. It would be almost unthinkable for publicity material for tourism in Scotland to refer to the geographical features through which rivers run as *valleys*, although that is precisely what they are: the Scottish dialect word *glen* is *de rigeur*, because of its rich evoked meaning.

Three main types of dialect can be distinguished: geographical, temporal, and social. The first type is self-explanatory; dialects of the second type vary according to the age of the speaker (who now speaks of the *wireless*, even though modern radios have far fewer wires than their forebears?); the third type vary according to the social class of the speaker.

A well-known division of **register** is into **field**, **mode**, and **style**. **Field** refers to the area of discourse: specialists in a particular field often employ technical vocabulary to refer to things which have everyday names. For instance, doctors, when talking to other doctors, will speak of a *pyrexia*, which in ordinary language would be called a *fever*, or just a *temperature*. Of course, the apparent sameness of meaning between an expert word and an everyday word is sometimes illusory, since the technical term may have a strict definition which makes it descriptively different from the everyday term. This is true, for instance, of our use of the term *utterance* in the last chapter, which can scarcely occur in everyday language without sounding pompous; its closest correspondent in ordinary language would probably be *what X said*, which is much more loosely defined.

Mode refers to the difference between language characteristic of different channels, such as spoken, written, in the old days, telegraphic, and perhaps nowadays, e-mail. For instance, *further to* is more or less exclusive to written language, whereas *like* (as in *I asked him, like, where he was going*) is definitely spoken. (Problems with the taxonomy show up in the fact that *further to* is probably also characteristic of business correspondence—a matter of *field*—and *like* is definitely informal, and is at least partly also a matter of the next sub-dimension, **style**.)

Style is a matter of the formality/informality of an utterance. So, for instance, *pass away* belongs to a higher (more formal) register than, say, *die*, and *kick the bucket* belongs to a lower register. But things are more complicated than that. Take the sexual domain. Looking at descriptively equivalent expressions, *have intercourse with* is relatively formal, *have sex with*/*go to bed with*/*sleep with* are fairly neutral, but while *bonk*, *do it with* and *fuck* are all informal, there are significant differences between them. *Did you do it with her?* might be described as 'neutral informal'; however, *bonk* is humorous, whereas *fuck*, *screw*, and *shag* are somehow aggressively obscene (although perhaps to different degrees). In the same humorous-informal category as *bonk*, we find *willie* (cf. *penis*), *boobs* (cf. *breasts*), and perhaps *pussy* (cf. *vagina*).

Discussion questions and exercises

1. Types of anomaly

Attempt to identify the types of anomaly present in the following, noting any difficulties:

(i) Your misfortune is better than mine.
(ii) What happened tomorrow was a bad disaster.
(iii) Someone's coming! Quickly, conceal in the wardrobe!
(iv) Dogs, on average, are heavier than bitches, but are easier to breed than cats.
(v) Two of the mice in the front row weren't in tune.

2. Degree of necessity

Given the truth of *X is a cat*, assign a 'degree of necessity' (e.g. logically necessary, canonically necessary, expected, possible, etc.) to the following:

(i) X likes classical music.
(ii) X has a tail.
(iii) X catches mice.
(iv) X divides by 2 without remainder.
(v) X is visible (i.e. reflects light).
(vi) X is not a dog.
(vii) X is ginger and white.
(viii) X has whiskers.

3. What are the presuppositions of the following?

(i) Lesley is a lesbian.
(ii) Lesley plays the clarinet brilliantly.
(iii) Lesley will graduate next year.
(iv) Lesley is sorry for all the trouble she has caused.
(v) It was Lesley who wrote the letter.
(vi) When Lesley was ill, Jane deputized for her on the committee.

4. On what dimension of descriptive meaning do the following differ?

(i) a. The prisoner was killed.
    b. The prisoner was murdered.
(ii) a. The prisoner was murdered.
    b. The prisoner was executed.
(iii) a. The shirt was not clean.
    b. The shirt was filthy.
(iv) a. Lesley is a young woman.
    b. Lesley is in her twenties.
(v) a. We're coming up to the exams.
    b. The exams will soon be here.

5. On what dimension(s) of non-descriptive meaning do the following differ?

(i) a. Are you leaving?
b. You're not leaving, surely?

(ii) a. He's been dismissed.
b. He's got the sack.

(iii) a. He has a fractured humerus.
b. He has a broken arm.

(iv) a. Get lost!
b. Please go away.

(The sentence pairs in question 3, chapter 2, can also be examined from this point of view.)

Suggestions for further reading

For syntactic versus semantic anomaly, see Cruse (1986: ch. 1); for types and degrees of semantic anomaly, see Cruse (1986: ch. 4.12).

Lyons's categorization of meaning into descriptive and non-descriptive types can be found in Lyons (1977: ch. 2.4). Also worth looking at for classifications of meaning types are Halliday (1970) and Leech (1974). The account given here largely follows Cruse (1986: ch. 12.2) (this section describes allowable differences between propositional synonyms).

Presupposition is just touched on in this chapter; Cruse (1992d) gives a fuller, but still introductory, survey of different theoretical approaches; a much more detailed account can be found in Levinson (1983:ch. 4).

Langacker (1991*b*: ch. 1) discusses a variety of dimensions along which meaning can vary; see also Cruse (forthcoming *c*) for dimensions of descriptive meaning.

CHAPTER 4

Compositionality

4.1 The principle of compositionality 67

4.2 Modes of combination 68

4.3 Limits to compositionality I: idioms, etc. 70

4.4 Limits to compositionality II: non-compositional aspects of compositional expressions 77

4.5 Some reflections on compositionality 79

Discussion questions and exercises 80

Suggestions for further reading 81

CHAPTER 4

Compositionality

4.1 The principle of compositionality

In this chapter, the focus is on the way meanings combine together to form more complex meanings. We begin by considering a basic principle governing the interpretation of complex linguistic expressions, namely, the **principle of compositionality**. The strongest version of this principle runs as follows:

(I) The meaning of a grammatically complex form is a compositional function of the meanings of its grammatical constituents.

This incorporates three separate claims:

(i) The meaning of a complex expression is completely ***determined*** by the meanings of its constituents.
(ii) The meaning of a complex expression is completely ***predictable*** by general rules from the meanings of its constituents.
(iii) Every grammatical constituent has a meaning which contributes to the meaning of the whole.

(Claim (ii) incorporates claim (i), but claim (i) could be true without claim (ii) being true. Claim (iii) is presupposed by the other two, as they are formulated above.)

What is the rationale behind this principle? It derives mainly from two deeper presuppositions. The first is that a language has an infinite number of grammatical sentences; the second is that language has unlimited expressive power, that is, anything which can be conceived of can be expressed in language. There is no way that the meanings of an infinite number of sentences can be stored in a kind of sentence dictionary—there is not enough room in a finite brain for that. The infinite inventory of sentences arises from rule-governed combinations of elements from a finite list according to generative rules at least some of which are recursive; the only way such sentences could, in their entirety, be interpretable, is if their meanings are composed in rule-governed ways out of the meanings of their parts.

To begin with we shall assume that there is nothing problematic about the principle of compositionality and consider only straightforward cases; later we shall deconstruct the notion to some extent (although, in one form or another, it is inescapable).

4.2 Modes of combination

The principle of compositionality, although basic, does not take us very far in understanding how meanings are combined. There is more than one way of combining two meanings to make a third (to take the simplest case). We may make a first division between **additive modes** of combination and **interactive modes**. A combination will be said to be additive if the meanings of the constituents are simply added together, and both survive without radical change in the combination. Typical of additive combinations are simple syntactic co-ordinations:

(1) [A man and a woman] [entered the room and sat down].
(2) Jane is [tall and fair].

In interactive types of combination, the meaning of at least one constituent is radically modified. We can distinguish two types of interactive modification; first, the **endocentric** type, where the resultant meaning is of the same basic type as one of the constituents, and the **exocentric** type, where the resultant meaning is of a different basic type to either of the constituents. Let us look first at endocentric interactive combinations.

4.2.1 Endocentric combinations

Even under the general heading of endocentric combinations there are different modes of interaction between meanings. The following are illustrative (but not necessarily exhaustive).

4.2.1.1 Boolean combinations

The Boolean combination is the most elementary type, and is illustrated by *red hats*. Extensionally, the class of red hats is constituted by the intersection of the class of hats and the class of red things; in other words, red hats are things that are simultaneously hats and red. Notice first, that what *a red hat* denotes is of the same basic ontological type as what *a hat* denotes (i.e. a THING), hence we are dealing with an endocentric combination; second, the effect of *red* is to restrict the applicability of *hat*, hence we are dealing with an interactive combination.

4.2.1.2 Relative descriptors

The relative descriptor exemplifies a more complex interaction between mean-

ings. It is illustrated by *a large mouse*. This cannot be glossed "something which is large and is a mouse", because all mice, even large ones, are small animals. *Large* must be interpreted relative to the norm of size for the class of mice, and means something more like "significantly larger than the average mouse". Here we have a two-way interaction, because *mouse* determines how *large* is to be interpreted, and *large* limits the application of *mouse*. It is none the less the case that what *a large mouse* denotes is of the same basic ontological type as what *mouse* denotes, so we are still in the realm of endocentric combinations.

4.2.1.3 Negational descriptors

In negational descriptors, the effect of the modifier is to negate the head, while at the same time giving indications as to where to look for the intended referent. The following are examples of this type:

(3) a former President
an ex-lover
a fake Ming vase
an imitation fur coat
reproduction antiques

Notice that an imitation fur coat is not something that is simultaneously a fur coat and an imitation: it is an imitation, but it is not strictly a fur coat. On the other hand, there is no radical change in basic ontological type as a result of combining the meanings.

4.2.1.4 Indirect types

Indirect combinations require a more complex compositional process, but still can be held to be rule governed. Consider the (often-discussed) case of *a beautiful dancer*. This phrase is ambiguous. One of the readings is of the standard Boolean type, denoting someone who is simultaneously beautiful and a dancer. The other reading, however, requires some semantic reconstruction of the phrase so that *beautiful* becomes an adverbial modifier of the verbal root *dance* and the phrase means "someone who dances beautifully".

4.2.2 Exocentric combinations

An **exocentric** combination is one where the resultant meaning is of a radically different ontological type from that of any of the constituent meanings; in other words, there has been some sort of transformation. An example of this would be the combination between a preposition such as *in*, which denotes a relation, and a noun phrase such as *the box*, which denotes a thing, producing a prepositional phrase *in the box*, which denotes a place. Another example would be the production of a proposition from the combination of, say, *John*,

a person, and *laughed*, an action. These types, especially the latter one, are in some ways deeply mysterious, but we shall not dwell on them any further here.

4.3 Limits to compositionality I: *idioms, etc.*

There are some aspects of the combination of meanings which seem to call into question the principle of compositionality, and while the abandonment of the principle would seem too drastic, it may be that it should be reconsidered and perhaps reformulated. We are not talking here about the existence of non-compositional expressions, which can be accommodated by a reformulation of the principle: what is being referred to here concerns the validity of the principle in cases where it is usually considered to be operative. We shall look at three types of case which might undermine one's faith in the principle. But first we must look at non-compositional expressions.

4.3.1 Non-compositional expressions

The principle of compositionality as set out above is not universally valid, although it must in some sense be a default assumption. That is, someone hearing a combination for the first time (i.e., one that has not been learned as a phrasal unit) will attempt to process it compositionally, and the speaker will expect this. The reason for the non-applicability of the principle is the existence of expressions not all of whose grammatical constituents contribute an identifiable component of its meaning. Think of phrases like *paint the town red* or *a white elephant*: knowing what *white* means and what *elephant* means is no help whatsoever in decoding the meaning of *white elephant*. It is possible to reformulate the principle to cover such cases:

(II) The meaning of a complex expression is a compositional function of the meanings of its semantic constituents, that is, those constituents which exhaustively partition the complex, and whose meanings, when appropriately compounded, yield the (full) global meaning.

Notice that this version is tautologous unless the notion "semantic constituent" can be defined independently. If it can, then we will have a way of accurately characterizing expressions (at least some of) whose grammatical constituents are not semantic constituents (thereby abandoning assumption (iii) given earlier).

4.3.1.1 Semantic constituents

Semantic constituents can in general be recognized by the **recurrent contrast test**. Prototypically, semantic constituents have the following characteristics:

(i) They can be substituted by something else (belonging to the same grammatical class), giving a different meaning.

This expresses the old principle "Meaning implies choice": that is, an expression cannot have meaning unless it was chosen from a set of possible alternatives. The corollary of this is that if an element is obligatory, it cannot be said to have meaning. So, for instance, *cat* in *The cat sat on the mat* satisfies this criterion because it can be substituted by *dog* giving the semantically different *The dog sat on the mat*; conversely, *to* in *I want to eat* does not satisfy this criterion because it is both grammatically obligatory and unique. As we shall see, this criterion is too strict and is probably best regarded as prototypically valid.

(ii) At least some of the contrasts of meaning produced by substitution in one context should be reproducible using the same items in a (formally) different context.

This sounds clumsy and obscure. It attempts to state precisely the simple idea that a meaningful linguistic item should be capable of carrying a constant meaning from context to context. Let us now look at some examples of this test in operation:

(4) (mat/box) The cat sat on a —.=
(mat/box) The—is dirty.

Here we have two items, *mat* and *box*, which produce the same semantic contrast in two different contexts. These two items therefore pass the recurrent contrast test for semantic constituency, and can be considered to be semantic constituents of the sentences which result when they are placed in the appropriate slots. Although we have shown that, for example, *mat* is a semantic constituent of *The cat sat on the mat*, we have not shown that it is a **minimal semantic constituent**, that is, one that cannot be divided into yet smaller semantic constituents. For that we must test the parts of *mat*. Let us now apply the recurrent contrast test to the *-at* of *mat*:

(5) (-at/-oss) The cat sat on the m—.=(?) (-at/-oss) He has a new b—.

Notice first of all that the first part of the test is satisfied: substituting *-at* by *-oss* gives us *The cat sat on the moss*, whose meaning is different from that of *The cat sat on the mat*. The second part of the test is not satisfied, however, because no context can be found where putting *-oss* in place of *-at* produces the same contrast of meaning that it does in *The cat sat on the mat*. (Only one of the contexts where the substitution of forms is possible is illustrated in (5).) What is being claimed is that the contrast between *The cat sat on the mat* and *The cat sat on the moss* is not the same as that between *He has a new bat* and *He has a new boss*, and that an equivalent contrast can ***never*** be produced by switching between *-at* and *-oss*. Some people are uncertain what is meant by 'the same contrast'. It may be helpful to think in terms of a semantic proportionality like stallion:mare::ram:ewe ("stallion is to mare as ram is to ewe"), which can be verbalized as 'the contrast between *mare* and *stallion* is the same as that between *ewe* and *ram*'.

It is useful to run through a few of the results of this test. We find, for instance, that although the *dis-* of *disapprove* comes out as a semantic constituent (because the presence vs. absence of *dis-* has the same semantic effect in the context of *approve* as it has in the context of *like*), the *dis-* of *disappoint* is not a semantic constituent because the semantic effect of removing it does not recur with any other stem (intuitively, adding *dis-* does not create an opposite, as it does with both *approve* and *mount*). On the same basis, the *re-* of *re-count* ("count again") is a semantic constituent, but not the *re-* of *re-count* ("narrate"), nor the *re-* of *report*, *receive*, *revolve*, etc. The reader should find that, on reflection, these results accord with intuition. Perhaps less in accord with intuition, at least initially, is the fact that neither the *straw-* nor the *-berry* of *strawberry*, and neither the *black-* nor the *-bird* of *blackbird*, pass the test for semantic constituency. Let us take the *blackbird* example (the same arguments apply to lots of similar cases). Surely a blackbird is not only a bird, but also black? Yes, of course. However the test says not only that the contrast between, *A blackbird was singing* and *A bird was singing* is not matched by that between, say, *John was wearing a black suit* and *John was wearing a suit*, but that it cannot be matched at all. Think of it this way: adding together the meaning of *black* and the meaning of *bird* does not give us the meaning of *blackbird*, it gives us the meaning of *black bird*. To understand what *blackbird* means, we have to have learned to attach a meaning to the whole complex *blackbird* which is not derivable from *black* and *bird*. Some might wish to argue that *black-* in *blackbird* carries whatever meaning differentiates blackbirds from other kinds of bird. However, this is not intuitively appealing: can one give even an approximate paraphrase of this meaning? Furthermore, there is no evidence that elements like *black-* behave in any way like semantic constituents (for more detailed arguments, see Cruse (1986: ch. 2.4)).

With this notion of semantic constituent we can make non-tautologous sense of the principle of compositionality as expressed in (II). We can also characterize a type of grammatically complex expression not all of whose grammatical constituents are semantic constituents. These we shall call idioms. By this definition, *blackbird* is an idiom, but the term is more usually applied to phrasal units, and we shall now consider some of these.

4.3.1.2 Idioms

Phrasal idioms are expressions like:
to pull (someone)'s leg
to paint the town red
to kick the bucket
to be round the twist
to be up the creek
to have a bee in (one)'s bonnet
etc.

It is important to realize that when one of these expressions is used in a sentence, it is rare that the whole sentence is idiomatic in the sense defined above. Take the case of *Jane pulled Martha's leg about her boyfriend.* By the recurrent contrast test, the following items come out as (minimal) semantic constituents: *Jane*, *-ed*, *Martha*, *about*, *her*, *boyfriend* (possibly *boy* and *friend*), *pull- —'s leg*. Strictly, it is only the last item which is an idiom; notice that it is semantically equivalent to a single lexical item, such as *tease* or *congratulate*. All the items except those which form part of the idiom can be changed without destroying the idiomatic meaning; however, changing *pull*, or *leg*, causes the idiomatic meaning to be lost. Although it is not true of all idioms, it seems fruitless to ask what *pull* and *leg* mean in *to pull someone's leg*: they do not mean anything, just as the *m-* of *mat* does not mean anything—all the meaning of the phrasal unit attaches to the phrase, and none to its constituents.

Phrasal idioms have some peculiar grammatical properties, which can be attributed either to the fact that their constituents have no meaning, or to the fact that such meaning is not independently active. The following are the main points:

(i) Elements are not separately modifiable without loss of idiomatic meaning:

(6) *She pulled her brother's legs.
(7) *She pulled her brother's left leg.
(8) *She pulled her brother's leg with a sharp tug.

Only the idiom as a whole is modifiable:

(9) She pulled her brother's leg mercilessly.

(ii) Elements do not co-ordinate with genuine semantic constituents:

(10) *She pulled and twisted her brother's leg.
(11) *She pulled her brother's leg and arm.

(Notice, however, the normality of *She pulled her brother's and her father's leg*, where only semantic constituents are co-ordinated.) The asterisks in (10) and (11) apply only to the idiomatic reading.

(iii) Elements cannot take contrastive stress, or be the focus of topicalizing transformations, and the like:

(12) *It was her brother's LEG that she pulled.

(cf. *It was her **brother's** leg that she pulled, which is normal.*)

(13) *What she did to her brother's leg was pull it.

(iv) Elements cannot be referred back to anaphorically:

(14) *Mary pulled her brother's leg; John pulled it, too.

(cf. the normality of *Mary pulled her brother's leg; John did, too*, where the whole idiom is referred to anaphorically.)

(v) An idiom does not survive the substitution of any of its constituent elements by a synonym or near-synonym:

(15) *The poor old chap kicked the pail.
(16) *She tugged his leg about it.
(17) *She pulled his lower limb about it.

In all these respects the superficially anomalous behaviour of idioms is in fact a natural consequence of the fact that their constituents are, in a real sense, meaningless. For instance, the typical function of an adjective is to restrict or modify in some way the meaning of the noun it modifies. But if the noun has no meaning, it is scarcely surprising that appending an adjective to it should be anomalous. The same applies to processes which normally function to highlight or focus on the meaning of a particular element, as in (iii) above. Finally, since *pull* in *to pull someone's leg* does not have any meaning, no sense can be attached to the notion of replacing it with a synonymous item (any more than there is sense in the idea of replacing the *m-* in *mat* with a synonymous item).

(vi) Some aspects of grammar (e.g. voice) may or may not be part of an idiom:

(18) His leg was being pulled continually by the other boys.

(The idiomatic meaning is not destroyed here, so 'active voice' is not part of the idiom proper.)

(19) *The bucket was kicked by him.

(Here the idiomatic meaning is destroyed when voice is changed, and therefore can be considered part of the idiom proper.)

4.3.1.3 Frozen metaphors

We have been looking at idioms which are non-compositional in the sense that their apparent constituents are not real semantic constituents, and the meanings which such constituents have in expressions where they are semantic constituents may not have any relevance at all to the meaning of the phrasal (or other) unit, or, if this is not the case, then do not allow the meaning of the complex expression to be inferred by any normal compositional process. There is, however, a class of idiom-like expressions, which come out as non-compositional by the recurrent contrast test, and may show some of the features of syntactic frozenness typical of idioms, such as resistance to modification, transformation, and so forth, but which differ from idioms in an important respect, namely, that the effect of synonym substitution is not a complete collapse of the non-literal reading. Compare the substitutions in (20) with those in (21):

(20) The ball's in your court now.
on your side of the net

A cat can look at a queen.
mouse archbishop

I can read her like a open book.
decipher

He has one foot in the grave.
both feet tomb
one leg coffin

(21) I gave him a piece of my mind.
part conceptual system

He drives me up the wall.
forces room partition

He has a bee in his bonnet about it.
hornet helmet

In the examples in (20) one can hardly say that the substitution has no effect, but the non-literal meaning is still recoverable, or at least approximately so, and the change in meaning is commensurate with the closeness of the synonymy relation. This seems to indicate that the connection between the meanings which results from normal compositional processes in these expressions and their non-compositional readings is not an arbitrary one. What seems to happen on synonym substitution is that the original metaphorical process is revived, yielding a reading not far from the conventionalized reading. In the examples in (21), there is always an element of the global meaning of the complex expression (sometimes all of it) which is arbitrary with respect to the 'free' meanings of the constituents.

It has been implied in the preceding discussion that the literal meanings of the constituents of idioms are not always completely inactive or irrelevant to the idiomatic reading. The degree of relatedness between literal and non-literal meanings of idioms varies continuously from none at all to such a high degree that the expression falls into a shadowy border area between idiomaticity and full compositionality. If we look for a change at noun compounds, *a red herring* represents one end of the scale, namely zero relatedness between literal and non-literal readings; *blackbird* is an intermediate case; *bread and butter* is in the borderline zone: what is not recoverable from a straightforward composition in this case is the fact that the bread is sliced and the butter spread on it (a loaf of bread and a pack of butter would qualify as *butter and bread*, but arguably not as *bread and butter*).

4.3.1.4 Collocations

We have so far been thinking of compositionality exclusively from the point of view of the hearer: given an expression consisting of more than one meaningful element, how do we work out what the global meaning of the expression is? There is, however, another side to compositionality, namely the point of view of the speaker: given that a speaker wishes to formulate a particular message, and no single element is available, how do they construct a complex expression to convey it? Corresponding to the speaker's viewpoint, there are idioms of encoding. Some of these are also idioms of decoding, but there are others which are not idioms of decoding. To these we shall give the name *collocations*. Like the more familiar kind of idioms, they have to be individually learned.

As examples of collocations take the intensifiers *great*, *heavy*, *high*, *utter*, *extreme*, and *severe*. The following table shows that they have definite preferences and dispreferences:

	great	heavy	high	utter	extreme	deep	severe
frost	–	+	–	–	?	–	+
rain	–	+	–	–	–	–	–
wind	?	–	+	–	–	–	–
surprise	+	–	–	+	+	–	–
distress	+	–	–	–	+	+	+
temperature	?	–	+	–	+	–	–
speed	+	–	+	–	?	–	–

4.3.1.5 Clichés

Some expressions which are apparently fully compositional should arguably be included in the class of phrasal units; these are the so-called **clichés**. Let us take as an example the politician's *I've made my position absolutely clear* (when he's been slithering and swerving for five minutes in the course of a probing interview). In so far as its propositional meaning is concerned, this expression would have to be categorized as fully compositional. However, it does have global properties, as a whole phrase, although of a more subtle kind. It seems highly likely that such phrases are stored as complete units in the brains of both speaker and hearer; as such, they are easy to retrieve while speaking and easy to decode for the hearer. They also tend to slip past without making much of an impact, their truth or falsehood not seriously examined. They function as default encodings of certain meanings. The effect of using a non-default encoding of the same meaning is to call attention to the utterance, it becomes 'marked'. Being less frequently encountered, it takes more processing effort on

the part of both encoder and decoder and, by the principle of relevance, the hearer looks for some modification of the message that would have been conveyed by the default form. In the case of an alternative formulation of the same propositional content like *I've given an unambiguous exposition of my views*, the message might be harder to dismiss, but also the speaker might be taken to be stepping outside his conventional role as politician, which might on certain occasions not be desirable.

The exact relation between minimal idioms like *bread and butter* and what we have called clichés is not clear. It may be that the latter should be considered to lie on the same scale as the former, but are even more minimally idiomatic, since no propositional difference is involved.

4.4 Limits to compositionality II: *Non-compositional aspects of compositional expressions*

4.4.1 Noun compounds

Many noun compounds can be considered to be idioms (see below) by our criteria. For instance, *tea-towel* is clearly of the same general type as *blackbird*. But there are other examples which show recurrent semantic properties, which enable the constituents to satisfy the criteria for semantic constituents, but which display semantic properties that are not predictable in any way except perhaps on the basis of pragmatic world knowledge. For instance, consider the different relations between the first and second elements in the following:

pocket knife ("knife that can be carried in the pocket")
(The same relationship appears in *pocket calculator* and *hand gun*.)

kitchen knife ("knife for use in the kitchen")
(The same relationship appears in *kitchen paper* and *garden knife*.)

meat knife ("knife for cutting meat")
(The same relationship appears in *meat tenderizer* and *bread knife*.)

The relations fall into clear types (to a large extent), but there is no obvious way of predicting that for instance, a *tablecloth* is used to cover a table, but a *dishcloth* is used to wipe dishes.

4.4.2 Active zones

Active zone is Langacker's term for the precise locus of interaction between two meanings in combination, typically an adjective and its head noun, or a verb and its complement. Some examples will make the notion clear. Take the case of a colour adjective and its head noun. Very often the colour does not apply globally to the object denoted by the head noun (although it may do), but only to a part:

a red hat	whole hat is red
a red book	outside covers are red
a red apple	a significant portion of outer skin is red
a yellow peach	inner flesh is yellow
a pink grapefruit	inner flesh is pink
a red traffic sign	symbols only are red
a red pencil (1)	red on outside
a red pencil (2)	writes red
red eyes	'white' of eyes is red
blue eyes	iris is blue

Is this idiom? Intuitively it is not, and the constituents of such expressions can easily be shown to pass the recurrent contrast test (it may of course be the case that the test is faulty, or insufficiently sensitive). These cases also seem to be different from the noun-compound cases: here, specification of the active zone in different ways does not radically change the mode of interaction: in all the above cases we know that the colour adjective indicates that the referent of the head noun is distinctive by virtue of its possession of an area with certain perceptual properties. But active zones need in some sense to be learned, and are not predictable by any sort of formal rule.

4.4.3 Complex categories

The point at issue in relation to complex categories is what happens when simple categories are merged to form a complex category. This is known in prototype theoretical circles as the **guppy effect**. Essentially, it is claimed that certain properties of a complex category cannot be predicted from the corresponding properties of the constituent categories. The example which gives its name to the 'effect' brings us back once again to noun compounds. When informants are asked to say what they consider to be the best or most representative example(s) of the category PET, they tend to go for cats and dogs; when asked to name the best examples of the category FISH, they choose trout, or salmon, or something of the sort. However, when asked for the best example of the category PET FISH, the answer is *guppy*, which is not regarded as central in either of the constituent categories. The effect is not confined to noun compounds: the same can be observed with an adjective-noun phrase such as *orange apple*. Items chosen by subjects as the best examples of the category ORANGE APPLE are different from those chosen as the best examples of the category APPLE, and their colour does not correspond to that chosen when asked which from a range of colours is the best example of the colour ORANGE. We shall return to the guppy effect and its significance in Chapter 7; for the moment we shall merely note its existence and the fact that it indicates a limitation on compositionality.

The guppy effect has given rise to much comment. Some have argued that the lack of compositionality reveals a weakness in prototype theory; simul-

taneously, prototype theorists have laboured to devise an algorithm which will enable the prototype of a complex category to be calculated from the individual prototypes of the component categories (with limited success).

My own feeling is that the characteristics of a complex category ARE calculable from those of its component categories; the problem is that current descriptions of categories are so impoverished. Suppose we take a thoroughgoing holistic view of categories, in which the entirety of encyclopaedic information about a category is a legitimate part of its characterization. So, for instance, the description of ORANGE would provide a complete range of hues falling under ORANGE, together with an index of centrality (or whatever); likewise, the description of APPLE would include, among other things, an indication of all the hues that apples can manifest. Given this information, the prototypical ORANGE APPLES are simply those APPLES whose hues approximate most closely to a prototypical ORANGE. There is obviously no requirement here for the resultant apples either to be prototypical apples, or for them to have a prototypical orange colour. Where is the mystery? The same argument applies to PET FISH: the prototypical pet fish are those fish which manifest the greatest proportion of the characteristics of prototypical pets: to work this out we need a detailed enough knowledge of the range of characteristics displayed by fish and by pets. (Notice that the grammar has some influence here: prototype pet fish are those fish nearest to prototype pets; this is not necessarily the same category as those pets which are nearest to prototype fish.)

4.5 Some reflections on compositionality

The debate about compositionality is by no means over. Let us conclude by distinguishing three positions *vis-à-vis* the principle of compositionality.

(i) The building-block model (alternatively, 'check-list theories'). This is intimately connected with strong componentialism: the meaning of an expression can be finitely described, and is totally accounted for by standard compositional processes acting on the equally determinate meanings of its component parts.

(ii) The scaffolding model (perhaps better, 'the semantic skeleton' model). According to this view, what compositionality provides is the bare bones of a semantic structure for a complex expression, which is fleshed out by less predictable pragmatic means, using encyclopaedic knowledge, context, and so on. This can be viewed as a weaker version of the principle of compositionality.

(iii) The holistic model. This, too, is a strong version of compositionality. It requires that the meaning of every item is an indefinitely large entity which consists of its relations with all other items in the language. In a

sense, all the effects of combination with other items are already present in the meaning: all that is needed is to extract the relevant portions. This radical view has its own problems, but it should be considered alongside the others.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. Identify the type of combination exhibited in the following phrases:

a forged passport	a dead cat	long eyelashes
a clever footballer	a high price	artificial cream
a former Miss World	a black hat	a brilliant pianist
a poor singer	a small planet	a striped dress

2. Each of the following sentences contains at least one conventionalized expression of some sort. Attempt a classification of these under the following headings (using the definitions given in the chapter):

(a) true idioms; (b) frozen metaphors; (c) collocations; (d) clichés (fixed, but more-or-less transparent expressions).

(i) You have to hand it to him — he's got guts.

(ii) The ball's in your court now.

(iii) You're completely up the creek on this one.

(iv) Why don't you just wait and see?

(v) She's got a bee in her bonnet about it.

(vi) The affair was blown up out of all proportion.

(vii) He took it in good part.

(viii) Use your loaf!

(ix) The situation went from bad to worse.

(x) He swallowed it lock, stock and barrel.

(xi) They beat the living daylights out of him.

(xii) Well, you live and learn, don't you?

3. Make a study of English words carrying the prefix *dis-*. In how many of these is the prefix an independent semantic constituent? (See Cruse 1986: ch. 2.) Where *dis-* is a semantic constituent, how many distinct sense relations does *X*: *dis-X* represent? Discuss any difficulties.

4. Consider what the active zones are in the following:

(i) The irate father **spanked his son**.

(ii) Mary **filled the car up with petrol** before driving on to the ferry.

(iii) Blue spectacles.

(iv) Tinted spectacles.

(v) A red knife.

(vi) A sharp knife.

(vii) A fast computer program.

(viii) A quick cup of coffee.

Suggestions for further reading

The principle of compositionality is a key feature of any formal approach to semantics. Chapter 1 of Cann (1993) provides a good introduction; a more advanced treatment can be found in Partee (1984) and Bartsch (forthcoming).

The account of idioms given here follows that of Cruse (1986: ch. 2). For a comprehensive survey of English idioms, see Makkai (1972). The syntactic behaviour of idioms is discussed in Fraser (1970), Katz (1973), Newmeyer (1974). An interesting discussion of idioms from a psycholinguistic point of view is Gibbs (1990). (Gibbs's position on idioms is not as incompatible with Cruse 1986 as he seems to think.)

For collocations (defined more inclusively than here) see Mackin (1978).

Langacker's notion of 'active zones' is expounded in Langacker (1991*b*: 189–201).

For different types of adjective-noun combination, see Dillon (1979).

Part 2
Words and their Meanings

To the layman, words are *par excellence* the bearers of meaning in language. While it is in danger of understating the importance of other linguistic structures and phenomena in the elaboration of meaning, this view is not entirely unjustified: words do have a central role to play in the coding of meaning, and are responsible for much of the richness and subtlety of messages conveyed linguistically. Hence it is no accident that this part of the book is the most substantial. Here, after the introductory Chapter 5, we discuss how word meanings vary with context (Chapter 6), the relations between word meanings and concepts (Chapter 7), paradigmatic sense relations (Chapters 8 and 9), larger vocabulary structures (Chapter 10), how new meanings grow out of old ones (Chapter 11), how words affect the meanings of their syntagmatic neighbours (Chapter 12), and finally, theories of lexical decomposition (Chapter 13).

CHAPTER 5

Introduction to lexical semantics

5.1 The nature of word meaning 87

5.2 The major problems of lexical semantics 95

5.3 Approaches to lexical semantics 96

Suggestions for further reading 102

CHAPTER 5

Introduction to lexical semantics

5.1 The nature of word meaning

In a descriptive introduction to meaning such as this, it is inevitable that the meanings of words should loom large, even though in more formally oriented accounts, word meanings are left largely unanalysed, or are reduced to mere skeletons of their true selves. There are, of course, more or less reputable justifications for such neglect. However, most (linguistically innocent) people have an intuition that meaning is intimately bound up with individual words; indeed, this, *par excellence*, is what words are for. While such an intuition seriously underestimates other aspects of meaning, it is not, in itself, wrong, and an adequate introduction to meaning should not shrink from the slipperiness and complexity of word meaning simply because it cannot be neatly corralled into a favoured formalization. Hence, the present and the following eight chapters will be devoted to various aspects of lexical semantics.

5.1.1 What is a word?

There has been a great deal of discussion of the nature of the word as a grammatical unit, too much even to summarize here. Most of it, anyway, is not relevant to our concerns. But it is as well to have some idea of what we are dealing with. The notion has notoriously resisted precise definition. Probably the best approach is a prototypic one: what is a prototypical word like? Well, for our purposes, the classical characterization as 'a minimal permutable element' will serve. This attributes two features to a prototypical word:

(i) It can be moved about in the sentence, or at least its position relative to other constituents can be altered by inserting new material.
(ii) It cannot be interrupted or its parts reordered.

In other words, in making changes to a sentence, we are by and large obliged to treat its words as structurally inviolable wholes. Let's see briefly how this works. Take a sentence like (1):

(1) The government is strongly opposed to denationalization.

Reordering appears in such examples as (2)–(4):

(2) The government is opposed to denationalization—strongly.
(3) What the government is strongly opposed to is denationalization.
(4) It is denationalization that the government is opposed to.

And the possibilities for the insertion of new material are as follows:

(5) The (present) government, (apparently), is (very) strongly (and implacably) opposed (not only) to (creeping) denationalization, but . . . etc.

Notice that the only possible insertion points are between words. Words, of course, are separated by spaces in writing, although not usually by silences in speech. They also have a characteristic internal structure, in that they prototypically have no more than one **lexical root**. (This notion will become clearer below, but, for instance, the lexical roots of the following words are shown in capitals:

GOVERNment reORDERing STRONGly deNATIONalization
OPPOSed TYPically CLEARer LEXical)

Some words, such as HEDGE-HOG, BUTTER-FLY, and BLACK-BOARD seem to have more than one lexical root. These, however, are atypical, and for many of them it is possible to argue that the apparent roots are not fully autonomous, semantically, but form a fused root. Other words have no lexical roots at all: these are the so-called **grammatical words** like *the*, *and*, and *of*. There will be more on the 'lexical'/'non-lexical' distinction below.

At this point it is necessary to be somewhat more precise about what we mean by a word. In one sense, *obey*, *obeys*, *obeying*, and *obeyed* are different words (e.g. for crossword purposes); in another sense, they are merely different forms of the same word (and one would not, generally speaking, expect them to have separate entries in a dictionary). On the other hand, *obey* and *disobey* are different words in both senses, whereas *bank* (river) and *bank* (money) are the same word for crossword purposes, but we would expect them to have separate dictionary entries and they are therefore different words in the second sense. Finer distinctions are possible, but for our purposes it will be sufficient to distinguish **word forms** and **lexemes**. Word forms, as the name suggests, are individuated by their form, whether phonological or graphic (most of our examples will be both); lexemes can be regarded as groupings of one or more word forms, which are individuated by their roots and/or derivational affixes. So, *run*, *runs*, *running*, and *ran* are word forms belonging to the same lexeme ***run***, while *walk*, *walks*, *walking*, and *walked* belong to a different lexeme, ***walk***, distinguished from the former by its root; likewise, *obey*, *obeys*, *obeying*, and *obeyed* belong to a single lexeme and *disobey*, *disobeys*, *disobeying*, and *disobeyed*, despite having the same root as the first set, belong to a different lexeme, dis-

tinguished this time by the possession of the derivational affix *dis-*. A simple test for derivational affixes (the matter is in reality, however, complex and controversial) is that they are never grammatically obligatory. For instance, in *John is disobeying me*, *disobey* can be substituted by *watch*, without giving an ungrammatical sentence, which shows that *dis-* is not essential to the grammatical structure of the sentence. This is true of all occurrences of *dis-*. On the other hand, any verb which will fit grammatically into the frame *John is — me* must bear the affix *-ing*, showing that it is not a **derivational**, but an **inflectional** affix: word forms that differ only in respect of inflectional affixes belong to the same lexeme. It is the word-as-lexeme which is the significant unit for lexical semantics.

5.1.2 Lexical and grammatical meaning

A distinction is often made between lexical and grammatical meaning (sometimes only the latter is allowed as being properly linguistic). There are dangers in all dichotomies; this one is harmless provided it is borne in mind that in reality there is a continuously varying scale, of what might be termed lexicality and grammaticality. A convenient way of presenting the distinction is in terms of the sorts of element which carry the meaning in question. We can divide grammatical units into **closed-set items** and **open-set items** (another dichotomy which disguises a graded scale). Central examples of closed-set items have the following characteristics:

(i) They belong to small substitution sets (perhaps as small as one).
(ii) Their principal function is to articulate the grammatical structure of sentences.
(iii) They change at a relatively slow rate through time, so that a single speaker is unlikely to see loss or gain of items in their lifetime. (No new tense markers or determiners have appeared in English for a long time.) In other words, the inventory of items in a particular closed-set grammatical category is effectively fixed (i.e. 'closed', hence the name).

These may be contrasted with open-set items, which have the following characteristics:

(i) They belong to relatively large substitution sets (especially if semantic plausibility is ignored).
(ii) There is a relatively rapid turnover in membership of substitution classes, and a single speaker is likely to encounter many losses and gains in a single lifetime. (Think of the proliferation of words relating to space travel, or computing, in recent years.)
(iii) Their principal function is to carry the meaning of a sentence.

Both closed- and open-set items carry meaning, but their different functions mean that there are differences in the characteristics of the meanings that they typically carry.

A closed-set item, in order to be able to function properly as a grammatical element, has to be able to combine without anomaly with a wide range of roots, and for this to be possible, it must have a meaning which is flexible, or broad enough, or sufficiently 'attenuated' not to generate clashes too easily, and it must signal contrasts which recur frequently. Hence, meanings such as "past", "present", and "future", which can co-occur with virtually any verbal notion, and "one" and "many", which can co-occur with vast numbers of nominal notions, are prototypical grammatical meanings.

In contrast, there is no limit to the particularity or richness of the meaning an open-set element may carry, as there are no requirements for recurrent meanings or wide co-occurrence possibilities. Hence, open-set items typically carry the burden of the semantic content of utterances. Because of the richness of their meanings and their unrestricted numbers, they participate in complex paradigmatic and syntagmatic structures.

What are called **content words** (basically nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs) prototypically have one open-set morpheme (usually called the **root** morpheme) and may also have one or more closed-set items in the form of affixes. Lexical semantics is by and large the study of the meanings of content words, and is oriented principally to the contribution that open-set items make to these. Grammatical semantics concentrates on the meanings of closed-set items. However, a strict separation between grammatical and lexical semantics is not possible because the meanings of the two kinds of element interact in complex ways.

5.1.3 Word meaning and sentence meaning

In general, word meanings are not the sort of semantic units that one can communicate with on an individual basis, unless other meaning components are implicit. A word, on its own, does not actually ***say*** anything, does not convey 'a whole thought': for that purpose, more complex semantic entities are necessary—built out of words, certainly—having at least the complexity of propositions (argument+predicate). Words (and at a more basic level, morphemes) form the building blocks for these more complex structures.

5.1.4 The notion "possible word meaning"

It is worth while to pose the question of whether there are any restrictions on possible meanings for words. We may approach this in two stages. We can first ask whether there are any universal restrictions; and we can then enquire as to the existence of language-specific restrictions.

Let us take the first question first. Is there anything conceivable that could never be the meaning of a word? It will be as well to restrict ourselves to notions that can be expressed by a combination of words, otherwise we shall be in really deep water. One line of thinking can, I think, be disposed of

relatively quickly. It may be thought that no language could possibly have a word meaning, for instance, "to face west on a sunny morning while doing something quickly". I confess that I would be astonished to find such a word. But the reason is not that it is theoretically impossible, but that it would be of such limited utility. Languages have words, at least partly, because in the cultures they serve, the meanings such words carry need to be communicated. (Of course, cultural evolution can leave words stranded, as it were, but this does not invalidate the basic point that words at some stage must be motivated in terms of possible use.) This means that if some culture had a use for the notion expressed, then it would not be surprising if there were a word for it. In the case in question, for instance, maybe the word could designate a specific sort of act of disrespect towards the Sun God, which carried specific penalties. If we take into account the possibility of outlandish (to us) religious beliefs, it is clear that the scope for improbable word meanings of this sort is (almost) unlimited.

Now let us look at a different sort of case. Take the sentence (6):

(6) The woman drank the wine slowly.

The notion "drank slowly" could easily be lexicalized (i.e. expressed by a single word): we have in English, after all, verbs such as *quaff*, and *sip*, which combine the meaning of "drink" with some adverbial manner component. Similarly, a verb meaning "drink wine" is not at all implausible, as one of the senses of *drink* in English is specifically "drink alcoholic beverage" (as in *Mary doesn't drink, she'll just have an orange juice*). In contrast to these more-or-less plausible word meanings, consider next the possibility of having a word meaning "The woman drank" (*blisk*), or "the wine slowly" (*blenk*). On this system, *Blisk wine* would mean "The woman drank wine", and *The woman drank blenk* would mean "The woman drank the wine slowly". It seems clear that here we are in the realms not of implausibility, but of impossibility. As a further example, consider the phrase *very sweet coffee*. It is perfectly within the bounds of possibility that there should be a single word meaning "sweet coffee", or "very sweet", even "very sweet coffee", but it is not conceivable that there should be a word meaning "very — coffee" (i.e. any adjective applied to *coffee* would be automatically intensified). What is the difference between the possible and the impossible cases? There seem to be two parts to the answer. First, a word meaning is not allowed to straddle the vital subject–predicate divide. Second, possible word meanings are constrained in a strange way by semantic dependencies. It is first necessary to distinguish **dependent** and **independent** components of a semantic combination. The independent component is the one which determines the semantic relations of the combination as a whole with external iems. So, for instance, in *very large*, it is *large* which governs the combinability of the phrase *very large* with other items. Thus the oddness of, say, *?a very large wind* is attributable to a semantic incompatibility between *large* and *wind*—there is no inherent clash between

very and *wind*, as the normality of *a very hot wind* demonstrates. By similar reasoning, the independent item in *warm milk* is *milk*, and in *drink warm milk* is *drink*. By following this line of reasoning, we can establish chains of semantic dependencies. For instance, the chain for *very young boy* is:

"very" → "young" → "boy"

and that for *drink warm milk* is:

"warm" → "milk" → "drink"

The constraint that we are looking at says that the elements that constitute the meaning of a word must form a continuous dependency chain. This means, first, that there must be a relation of dependency between elements. This rules out "wine slowly" as a possible word meaning, because there is no dependency between "wine" and "slowly" in "Drink wine slowly". Second, there must be no gaps in the chain which need to be filled by semantic elements from outside the word. This rules out cases like "very — milk", where the dependency chain would have to be completed by an external item such as "hot".

Another way of approaching the question under discussion is to take an extensional viewpoint and ask what are the characteristics of a 'possible nameable'. A full answer to this question would deal with possible nameable objects, events, states, and so on. The present discussion will deal only with the first of these, and will follow Pulman (1983). Nameables, in general, are distinguished linguistically by the ability to take proper names (obviously), but also by the ability to be referred to by means of singular, non-collective count nouns (at least in English). (The characterization of nameability in states, processes, events, and so on, would require reference to adjectives and verbs, as well as nouns.)

We shall illustrate the sort of argument involved in saying what is nameable by reference to a particular sort of nameable, namely, physical objects. The concept of physical object seems to involve at least the notions of perceivability, relative continuity in space and time, and potential detachability from surroundings. However, not all physical objects, by these criteria, are naturally nameable. A couple of quotations from Chomsky are relevant here:

(i) the most elementary notion we have, the notion 'physical object'. . .seems to be quite complex. . .One wing of an aeroplane is an object, but its left half, though equally continuous, is not. (1976: 203.)

(Since, in an obvious sense, the left half of an aeroplane wing is a physical thing, we may interpret Chomsky as talking about nameability.)

(ii) there are no logical grounds for the apparent non-existence of words such as *LIMB*, similar to *limb* except that it designates the single object consisting of a dog's four legs so that *its LIMB is brown*. . .would mean that the object consisting of its four legs is brown. Similarly, there is no a priori reason why a natural language could not contain a word *HERD*, like the collective *herd* except that it

> denotes a single scattered object with cows as parts, so that *a cow lost a leg* implies *the HERD lost a leg*, etc. (1965: 201.)

The existence of physical things which intuitively do not seem to be nameable implies the existence of principles of nameability, which may not be rigid, but which will at least render some 'things' more readily nameable than others. (The notion of 'prototypical', to be discussed in Chapter 7, is relevant here: what we are looking for are the prototypic features of nameability.) A fairly basic suggestion is that to be nameable, a physical thing must be bounded, that is, it must have boundaries set on the basis of either physical detachability, or characteristic function, appearance, or behaviour. This is, of course, pretty vague, and a full treatment would critically examine all these terms, but take, for instance, Chomsky's left half of an aeroplane wing. This is physical, but while the whole wing is bounded by distinctive function and appearance, the left half is not separated from the rest of the wing by any salient function or visual discontinuity, nor does it behave in a characteristic way. In this way, the left part of an aeroplane wing differs from an earlobe, which is visually separated from the rest of the ear, and the tip of the tongue, which has no visual separateness, but has its own characteristic functions and a special place in our experience of our bodies. (Notice that some nameables, by the definition given above, will count as whole things and others as parts of those wholes; that is a separate question.)

Chomsky's examples of *LIMB* and *HERD* are more difficult and controversial. First it must be recognized that some 'scattered' individuals are nameable, such as fences, constellations, villages, forests, and so on. To adapt Pulman slightly, we can say that nameable collections of otherwise independently nameable entities generally show one (or more) of the following features:

(i) The collection is relatively spatio-temporally contiguous (fence, forest, village).
(ii) It is the product of human agency (fence, village, artistic installation)
(iii) The members of the collection jointly fulfil a function not fulfilled by any of them separately (fence, bikini).

Notice that both Chomsky and Pulman insist on a distinction between singular scattered objects and collectives. But the criteria are not clear. Pulman refers to "things which are designated by singular count nouns or proper names but nevertheless regarded as plural: collective words like *herd*, *pile* and *flock*, and proper names like *the United States* or *the Commonwealth*". (Notice that the possession of one of the features mentioned above seems to be necessary for these collective words.) But what is meant by "are regarded as plural"? A word like *committee* can take plural concord with a verb: The *committee have decided*, but this is not the case with, for instance, *pile*: **The pile of stones are black*.

Chomsky is not much more explicit for *LIMB*, although he is for *HERD*. In the

case of *LIMB*, he gives as the sort of sentence which would prove that there was a genuine word *LIMB*, something like *The LIMB of the dog is brown*. Actually, such cases are not rare: *The foliage of this tree is light green* means simply that the leaves of the tree are light green. Chomsky's requirements for *HERD* are perhaps more strict. It seems that for *HERD* to be a bona fide example, a part of a cow must count as a part of a HERD (which it clearly does not for the 'normal' word *herd*). Notice that this criterion would rule out *foliage*: one would not say *The foliage of this tree has prominent veins*, but *The leaves of this tree have prominent veins*. (Similarly: **John's priceless library of first editions has lost several pages*.) But it is not clear that it holds for *fence*, either (and others discussed by Pulman as bona fide singular non-collectives). If the separate (and separated) posts which constituted a fence each had a hole in it, would one say *The fence has holes in it* or *The fence poles have holes in them*? I would be happier with the latter. On the other hand, I would be happy with *You can't wear this bikini because it has holes in it* (cf. also *This bikini has a reinforced gusset*).

I suspect that there is, in fact, no sharp distinction between the *HERD* type of example and the *herd* type. I am inclined to agree with Chomsky, however, to the extent that the *HERD* type are somewhat rare. (It may be that more relevant factors remain to be discovered.) Obviously a similar investigation needs to be carried out on states, actions, processes and events, and so on, to see what factors determine nameability by a single lexical item (notice that proper names are largely (?totally) confined to nouns).

Of a more controversial status are cases like the putative 'impossible' words *benter* and *succeive* (Jackendoff 1990:261). Let us consider *benter* first. This is proposed as a logically coherent converse of *enter* which cannot be lexically realized. Sentences such as (7) are fully normal:

(7) Mary entered the room.

The proposed converse of this would be (8):

(8) The room bentered Mary.

(On the pattern of: *Mary followed John* and its converse *John preceded Mary*.)

The other example sometimes cited is *succeive*, which is intended to denote the true converse of *receive*:

(9) John received the parcel.
(10) The parcel succeived John.

The explanation given for these constraints is expressed in terms of semantic roles such as agent, patient, etc. There is a certain plausibility about the claims. However, although there may be some resistance to words having such meanings, and in the cases cited there are no obvious candidates, the prohibition is perhaps not absolute, as the following observations suggest. First, the meaning of *benter* is not all that far removed from one reading of *receive*. We also have

words such as *envelop*, *incorporate*, which seem to have the right sort of meaning. In the case of *succeive*, the word *reach* appears to encode approximately the right sort of meaning:

(11) I sent John a parcel; he received it yesterday.
(12) I sent John a parcel; it reached him yesterday.

The constraints on word meaning discussed above would seem to be universal in nature. However, there also exist constraints of a more language-specific type. Some languages seem to proscribe the packaging together of certain sorts of meaning in a single word. A single example will suffice. Consider sentence (13):

(13) John ran up the stairs.

Here, the word *ran* encapsulates two notions, that of movement, and that of manner. This is a common pattern in English:

(14) John crawled across the road.
staggered into the room.
waltzed through the office.
etc.

However, this pattern is not possible in many languages, including French. In French, such sentences must be rendered as in (15):

(15) Jean monta l'escalier en courant.

Here, the notions of motion and direction are jointly packaged into *monta*, but manner has to be expressed separately. (Notice that the French pattern is not prohibited in English: *John mounted the stairs running*, but is markedly less natural.)

5.2 The major problems of lexical semantics

Linguists with different theoretical commitments will give different accounts of what the core tasks of lexical semantics are; the following is an attempt at a relatively theoretically neutral summary.

5.2.1 Description of content

Describing content is in a sense the most obvious task: how do we say what a word means? Unfortunately, even at this level of generality it is impossible to escape the tentacles of theory, because there are scholars who maintain that the notion 'the meaning of a word' is not a coherent one; and for those who believe there is such a thing, the nature of the description of it will hang crucially on what sort of thing it is believed to be. We shall look briefly below at some of the options.

5.2.2 Contextual variation

However one characterizes the notion of the meaning of a word, one is forced to confront the fact that the semantic import of a single word form can vary greatly from one context to another. There are various theory-dependent strategies for attacking this problem, but the facts will not go away: the variation must be accounted for. Variation is not random: part of a satisfactory account will identify and explain patterns of variation.

5.2.3 Sense relations and structures in the lexicon

Regular patterns appear not only in the nature and distribution of the meanings of a single word in different contexts, but also between different words in the same context. This results in structured groupings of words in the vocabulary on the basis of recurrent meaning relations.

5.2.4 Word meaning and syntactic properties

An important question is whether and to what extent the syntactic properties of words are independent of, or are controlled by, their meanings. There are still many different views on this topic.

5.3 Approaches to lexical semantics

5.3.1 One-level vs. two-level approaches

A major dividing line which separates semanticists is the question of whether a distinction can be made between semantics and encyclopaedic knowledge. Those who believe such a division can be made often draw an analogy with phonetics and phonology. Human beings can make and learn to recognize an almost infinite variety of speech sounds, but in any particular language, only a handful of these function distinctively to convey meanings, or enter into systematic relations of any complexity. These are the true linguistic elements on the 'sound' side of language (Saussure's *expression plane*). In a similar way, the variety of 'raw' meanings is virtually infinite, but only a limited number of these are truly linguistic and interact systematically with other aspects of the linguistic system. The vast detailed knowledge of the world, which speakers undoubtedly possess, is, according to the dual-level view, a property, not of language elements, but of concepts, which are strictly extralinguistic. Truly linguistic meaning elements are of a much 'leaner' sort, and are (typically) thought of as (more) amenable to formalization. One criterion suggested for recognizing 'linguistic' meaning is involvement with syntax, whether by virtue of being the meaning carried by some grammatical element, or because it

correlates with such factors as agreement patterns or sub-categorization of major syntactic categories.

Partisans of the single-level view claim that no non-arbitrary basis for assigning aspects of meaning (or knowledge) to the 'semantic' or 'encyclopaedic' side of a purported dichotomy has been put forward which survives even a cursory scrutiny. Most cognitive linguists would take the view that all meaning is conceptual, and that the 'extra' level of structure proposed by the two-level camp does not actually do any theoretical work. The distinction between grammatical and lexical/encyclopaedic meaning is not necessarily denied, but it is likely to be seen as a continuum, rather than a dichotomy, and entirely conceptual in nature.

5.3.2 Monosemic vs. polysemic approaches

The point at issue in relation to the distinction between the monosemic and the polysemic approach is how many meanings ought to be attributed to a word. There is no dispute about clear-cut cases of homonymy, like that of *bank*, where there is no conceivable way of deriving one meaning from the other. The dispute centres on clusters of related senses characteristic of polysemy. (For greater detail, see Chapter 6.) The monosemic view is that as few senses as possible should be given separate recognition in the (ideal) lexicon of a language, and as many as possible derived from these. The argument usually goes like this: if one reading of a word is in any way a motivated extension of another one, then only one should be recorded, and the other should be left to the operation of **lexical rules**, which in general apply to more than one instance and hence represent systematicity in the lexicon.

The polysemic approach rejects the assumption that a motivated extension of a word sense does not need to be recorded in the lexicon. The basic reason for this is that lexical rules only specify ***potential*** extensions of meaning, only some of which become conventionalized and incorporated in the lexicon: others are possible, and may appear as nonce forms, but there is none the less a clear distinction between these and those which are established (in principle, anyway: actually there is a continuous scale of establishment). Take the case of *drink*. In many contexts, it is clear what is being drunk, but obviously one would not wish to create a different lexical entry for *drink* corresponding to every possible drinkable liquid. To this extent, the monosemists and the polysemists would agree. However, it is possible for some particular drinkable items to be incorporated into a specific reading for *drink*. In principle, any class of beverage could be incorporated in this way, but in fact, in English, only "alcoholic beverages" can be encoded thus: *I'm afraid John has started drinking again*. Now in principle, this could have happened with fruit juice instead of alcohol, but it is a fact about the English lexicon that *drink* has one of these possibilities, but not the other. The majority view

nowadays is probably monosemic, but the position adopted in this book is polysemic.

5.3.3 The componential approach

One of the earliest and still most persistent and widespread ways of approaching word meaning is to think of the meaning of a word as being constructed out of smaller, more elementary, invariant units of meaning, somewhat on the analogy of the atomic structure of matter (although the immediate inspiration for the first proposals on these lines was not physics, but phonology). These 'semantic atoms' are variously known as **semes**, **semantic features**, **semantic components**, **semantic markers**, **semantic primes** (to cite a few of the terms). Here, the merest outline of the approach is presented; componential semantics is treated in greater detail in Chapter 13.

Probably the first statement of a componential programme for semantics within modern linguistics was due to Hjelmslev (1961). He believed as a matter of principle that the meaning side of the linguistic sign should show the same structuring principles as the sound side. For him the notion of **reduction** was of major importance. The phonological structure of hundreds of thousands of different signs in a language can be analysed as combinations of syllables drawn from a list of a few hundred, and these, in turn, can be shown to be built out of phonemes belonging to an inventory of fifty or so, thus arriving at the ultimate phonological building blocks, the distinctive features, whose number is of the order of a dozen. In the same way, the meaning side of signs should be reducible to combinations drawn from an inventory significantly less numerous than the stock of signs being analysed. Hjelmslev did not have any universalist pretensions, each language being unique and needing an analysis in its own terms, nor were his 'figurae' (his term for the basic elements) in any way abstract: they were the meanings of words in the language. What he seemed to have in mind, therefore, was the discovery of a set of basic words, out of whose meanings all other word meanings could be constructed. Hjelmslev was the first structural semanticist: the approach was developed considerably by European linguists, with a German variety and a French variety.

A componential approach developed in America, seemingly independently (and largely in ignorance) of the movement in Europe. It first appeared amongst anthropological linguists, and scored a significant success in reducing the apparent impenetrable complexity of kinship systems to combinations from a limited set of features. A new version, proposed by Katz and Fodor (1963), appeared in the context of early Chomskyan generative grammar. This was much more ambitious than anything which had appeared previously: first, it formed an integral part of a complete theory of language; second, it made claims of universality and psychological reality; and third, the features were not confined to the meanings of existing words, but were of an abstract nature.

This approach did not take hold in mainstream generative linguistics, and among current generativists a thoroughgoing componential approach is found only in the work of Jackendoff (1983, 1990, 1996).

An extreme version of componential semantics is found in the work of Wierzbicka (1996). This is a highly original approach, which is not an offshoot of any of the approaches described above, but takes its inspiration from much earlier philosophical work, notably by Leibniz (1903). Wierzbicka's view is that there exists a very restricted set of universal semantic atoms in terms of which all conceivable meanings can be expressed. Her inventory of primes is astonishingly small (she started out with eleven, but the list has now grown to fifty or so), and they are not abstract, and hence unverifiable by direct intuition, like those of Katz and Fodor, but are concrete, and any analysis should satisfy the intuitions of native speakers.

5.3.4 'Holist' approaches

It is a belief of all componentialists that the meaning of a word can, in some useful sense, be finitely specified, in isolation from the meanings of other words in the language. Among philosophers of language, this is known as the **localist** view. For a localist, contextual variation can be accounted for by rules of interaction with contexts. The contrary position is the **holistic** view, according to which the meaning of a word cannot be known without taking into account the meanings of all the other words in a language. There are various versions of holism: two will be outlined here.

5.3.4.1 Haas

I first learnt semantics from W. Haas (1962, 1964), whose highly idiosyncratic view of meaning derives from an aspect of Wittgenstein's work, namely, his 'use' theory of meaning, which is encapsulated in the dictum: "Don't look for the meaning—look for the use." In other words, the meaning of an expression is the use to which it is put. As it stands, this is not very helpful, merely suggestive. Haas gave it a personal twist, inspired by J. R. Firth's dictum: "Words shall be known by the company they keep." This interprets 'use' as the contexts, actual and potential, in which the expression occurs normally (i.e. without anomaly). Haas went further than this. He said that the meaning of a word was a **semantic field** (not the usual semantic field) which had two dimensions: a syntagmatic dimension, in which all possible (grammatically well-formed) contexts of the word were arranged in order of normality; and a paradigmatic dimension, in which for each context, the possible paradigmatic substitutes for the word were arranged in order of normality. Relative normality was for Haas a primitive. In principle, 'context' includes extralinguistic context; but Haas argued that since every relevant aspect of extralinguistic context can be coded linguistically, nothing is lost by restricting attention to linguistic contexts. The word's semantic field, as understood by Haas,

constitutes its meaning. Notice that every word therefore participates in the meaning of every other word (he was inspired here by Leibniz's monads); there is therefore no distinction between word meaning and encyclopaedic knowledge. Haas's view was that the semantic field of a word (as he defined it) actually constituted the meaning of the word; here, the view will be taken that the semantic field of a word reflects its meaning.

5.3.4.2 Lyons

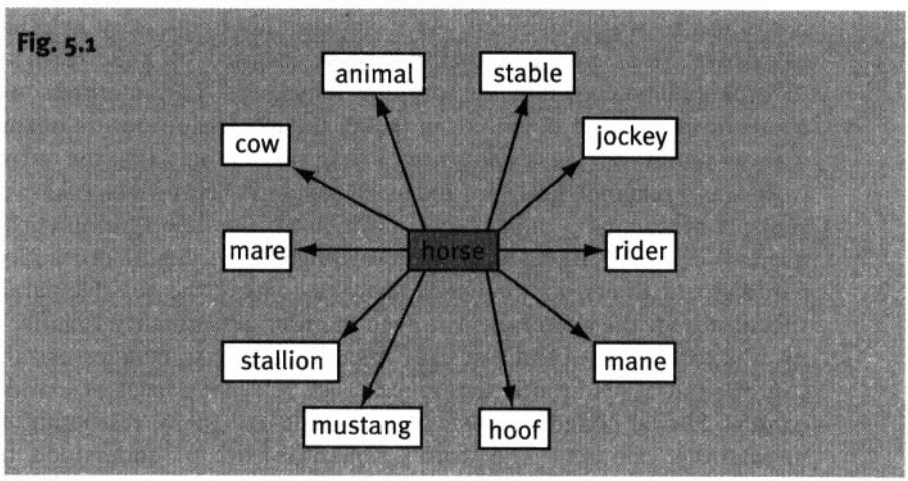
A second variety of holism is represented by Lyons (1977). The essence of this approach is the quintessentially Saussurean belief that meanings are not substantive, but relational, and are constituted by contrasts within the same system. Lyons states that the sense of a lexical item consists of the set of sense relations which the item contracts with other items which participate in the same field. Sense relations, he insists, are not relations between independently established senses; one should rather say that senses are constituted out of sense relations. So, for instance, the meaning of *horse* should be portrayed along the lines shown in Fig. 5.1.

In this system, the links are of specific sorts, such as "is a kind of" (e.g. *horse:animal*), "is not a kind of" (e.g. *horse:cow*), "is a part of" (e.g. *mane:horse*), "is characteristic noise produced by" (e.g. *neigh:horse*), "is a dwelling place for" (e.g. *stable:horse*), and so on. Since the words illustrated also enter into relations with other words than *horse*, the full meaning of *horse* is a complex network of relations potentially encompassing the whole lexicon.

5.3.5 Conceptual approaches

Conceptual approaches (at least as the term is used here) are single-level approaches and identify the meaning of a word (or at least a major part of it)

Fig. 5.1



with the concept or concepts it gives access to in the cognitive system. Among cognitive linguists, the prototype model of concept structure holds sway.

The origins of the prototype approach can be traced to Wittgenstein (1972) (who initiated more than one line of thinking that was to influence linguistics). He is usually credited with being the first to challenge the classical Aristotelian notion of natural categories as being definable in terms of necessary and sufficient criteria. He put forward the well-known example of GAME, challenging his readers to come up with the necessary and sufficient criteria for something being a game. None of the obvious suggestions is criterial:

involves physical activity
has winners and losers
is played for amusement
has rules, etc.

None of these is either exclusive to games or necessary for something to be a game. Wittgenstein proposed the notion of **family resemblance**: the members of a large family typically resemble one another in a variety of ways, but there are no features which they all have, and there may be members who share no features, but these will none the less be linked to the others by a chain of resemblance. Although important in breaking the stranglehold of the Aristotelian theory, this notion is not very helpful for semantic analysis. Wittgenstein did not say what family resemblance consisted of, in particular, how in-family resemblances differ from out-family resemblances. In other words, there was nothing other than arbitrary stipulation to stop everyone in the world from belonging to the same family. (However, a similar problem still bedevils modern descendants of Wittgenstein's family resemblance.)

The notion of non-Aristotelian categories was taken up and further refined by cognitive psychologists, especially Rosch (1973, 1978) and her co-workers, who established what is now known as **prototype theory** as an account of natural categories. On this account, members of a category are not equal—they vary in how good they are, or how representative, of the category. The very best are the **prototypical** members, and the category is essentially built round these: other examples are assimilated to the category or not, according to how closely they resemble the prototype. A fuller account of prototype theory will be found in Chapter 7.

Jackendoff (1983, 1990, 1996) is another linguist who locates word meaning in conceptual structure (his picture of conceptual structure bears strong resemblances to that of the cognitive linguists). Like the cognitive linguists, he sees no need for an intermediate 'linguistic semantics'. Unlike many cognitive linguists, however, he is strongly componentialist, and believes that intuitively perceived relationships should (must) be accounted for in terms of shared semantic building blocks. He also has a strong predilection for precisely formalized representations. Perhaps the most important characteristic separating Jackendoff from the cognitive linguists is his continued espousal of the

Chomskyan precepts of strong innateness, the insufficiency of general cognitive abilities to explain ***all*** linguistic behaviour, and the autonomy of syntax.

5.3.6 Formal approaches

Formal approaches to semantics attempt to express the facts of meaning through a strict formalism, preferably closely related to one of the standard logics. The hoped-for pay-off from adopting this sort of approach includes greater explicitness, testability of hypotheses, easier link-up with syntax, and machine implementability. Those who are less sympathetic to this kind of approach point to the existence of significant aspects of semantics which are continuously variable, and to the somewhat meagre descriptive results so far achieved. Formalist approaches will not be given any prominence in the present work, which aims rather at a certain descriptive richness.

Suggestions for further reading

This chapter mostly serves as an introduction to topics which are treated in greater detail in later chapters, so most of the relevant reading is given later. For the same reason, no discussion questions are included.

On *word* and *lexeme*, see Lyons (1977: ch. 13). Pulman (1983) has been cited in the furead as a major reference for nameability; see also Jackendoff (1990), for *benter* and *succeive*. For the different ways of 'packaging' meaning in lexical items, see Talmy (1985).

For Lyons's notion of sense, see Lyons (1977: ch. 7.3); for Haas's contextual approach, see Haas (1962, 1964).

CHAPTER 6

Contextual variability of word meaning

6.1 Preliminaries	105	**6.5 Between polysemy and monosemy**	114
6.2 Aspects of distinctness	106	**6.6 Sense modulation**	120
6.3 Senses	108	**Discussion questions and exercises**	123
6.4 Varieties of polysemy	110	**Suggestions for further reading**	124

CHAPTER 6

Contextual variability of word meaning

6.1 Preliminaries

Once we try to grapple with the notion 'the meaning of a word', we come up against a serious problem, namely, that the interpretation we give to a particular word form can vary so greatly from context to context. The observable variations range from very gross, with little or no perceptible connection between the readings, as in: *They moored the boat to the* ***bank*** and *He is the manager of a local* ***bank***, through clearly different but intuitively related readings, as in *My father's firm built this* ***school*** (*school* here refers to the building) and *John's* ***school*** *won the Football Charity Shield last year* (in this case *school* refers to (a subset of) the human population of the school), to relatively subtle variations, as in the case of *path* in *He was coming down the* ***path*** *to meet me even before I reached the garden gate* and *We followed a winding* ***path*** *through the woods* (a different mental image of a path is conjured up in the two cases), or *walk* in *Alice can* ***walk*** *already and she's only 11 months old* and *I usually* ***walk*** *to work*, where not only is the manner of walking different, but so also are the implicit contrasts (in the first case, talking and standing up unaided, and in the second case, driving or going by bus/train, etc.).

This type of variation, which is endemic in the vocabulary of any natural language, means that answers must be sought to questions like: Do words typically have multiple meanings? How do we decide what constitutes 'a meaning'? Is there a finite number of such meanings? How are the meanings related to one another? The present chapter attempts to address questions of this sort.

We shall begin by identifying two properties of variant readings of a word which are relevant to the problem of individuating and counting them. Suppose we find a perceptible difference in the readings of a word in two contexts. We can first of all ask whether (or to what extent) there is a sharp semantic boundary between the two readings (in our terms, how **discrete** are they?); a second question is whether they are mutually exclusive (in our terms, are they

antagonistic?). Both of these will be taken as aspects of the **distinctness** of two readings.

6.2 Aspects of distinctness

6.2.1 Discreteness

To begin with, only enough criteria will be given to establish the notion of discreteness; more subtle types of evidence, valid in particular contexts, will be brought into the discussion later. Four criteria will be considered here; three of them have often been regarded as **ambiguity tests** (and latterly dismissed as such). There are good reasons, however, for claiming that they are not tests for **ambiguity** (see later), but for **discreteness**.

6.2.1.1 The identity test

The first criterion goes under the name of the **identity test**. Consider the following sentence:

(1) Mary is wearing a light coat; so is Jane.

Intuitively, *light* means two different things: "light in colour", or "light in weight". Bearing in mind these two interpretations, there are four different situations with regard to the properties of Mary's and Jane's coats: (i) they are both lightweight, (ii) they are both light coloured, (iii) Mary's coat is lightweight and Jane's is light coloured, (iv) Jane's coat is lightweight and Mary's is light coloured. Notice, however, that sentence (1) is capable of designating only two of these situations, namely, (i) and (ii). In other words, once one has decided on a reading for *light* one must stick with it, at least through subsequent anaphoric back-references. This is known as the **identity constraint**. The constraint applies equally to speaker and hearer. A speaker can be held to account for the use of the above construction if they intended two different readings of *light*; in the case of the hearer, there is a processing constraint which makes it difficult to attach both readings simultaneously to one occurrence of the word. Notice that the pressure for identity of reading is much reduced (although perhaps not completely absent) if *light* is mentioned twice; (2) is not anomalous:

(2) Mary is wearing a light coat; Jane is wearing a light coat, too, as a matter of fact. However, whereas Mary's coat is light in colour but heavy, Jane's is dark in colour, but lightweight.

The identity constraint observed in (1) should be contrasted with its absence in (3):

(3) Mary has adopted a child; so has Jane.

The child must obviously be either a boy or a girl, but there are no constraints on the possible readings: the child adopted by Jane does not have to be of the same sex as Mary's, hence there is no support here for any suggestion that "boy" and "girl" correspond to distinct readings of *child*.

6.2.1.2 Independent truth conditions

The second criterion for the discreteness of two readings is that they have independent truth-conditional properties. A good test of this is whether a context can be imagined in which a Yes/No question containing the relevant word can be answered truthfully with both *Yes* and *No*. Consider the case where Mary is wearing a light-coloured, heavyweight coat. If someone asks *Were you wearing a light coat?*, Mary can truthfully answer either in the positive or the negative: *Yes, I was wearing my pale green winter coat*/*No, I was wearing my thick winter coat*. On the other hand, if one were to ask the Mary in (3) *Is it true that you have adopted a child?*, there are no conceivable circumstances in which she could truthfully answer both *Yes* and *No*.

6.2.1.3 Independent sense relations

The third indicator of discreteness is the possession by two readings of genuinely independent sets of sense relations (these are treated in detail in Chapters 8 and 9). Some care must be taken in the definition of *independent*; here, however, we shall confine ourselves to clear cases. For instance, the two readings of *light* have distinct opposites, namely, *dark* and *heavy*. The fact that these two are completely unrelated strengthens the case for discreteness. The two obvious readings of *bank* also have quite independent sense relations. The (river) *bank* is a meronym (i.e. designates a part) of *river*, and has *mouth*, *source*, and *bed* among its co-meronyms (i.e. sister part-names). The (money) *bank* is not a part of anything, but is a subtype of *financial institution*, and has, for instance, *building society* as one of its sisters.

6.2.1.4 Autonomy

The fourth indicator of discreteness is what we shall call **autonomy**. Basically this refers to the usability of the word form in one of the senses when the other is explicitly denied, or ruled out by reason of anomaly, or some such. Consider the two readings of the word *dog*, namely "canine species" and "male of canine species". In the sentence: *I prefer dogs to bitches*, the general sense is ruled out on the grounds of semantic anomaly (compare *?I prefer fruit to apples*), but the sentence is fully normal. This shows that the specific sense has autonomy. Compare this with the sex-specific interpretation of *child*, as in *This child seems to have lost his parents*. Although *I prefer boys to girls* is normal, *?I prefer children to girls* is not, showing that the sex-specific interpretation of *child* is not autonomous, and hence, in the absence of other indications, not discrete.

6.2.2 Antagonism

The readings of an indisputably ambiguous word such as *bank* display another property besides discreteness, which we shall regard as criterial for ambiguity. This is **antagonism**. Consider a sentence which admits both readings, such as *We finally reached the bank*. It is impossible to focus one's attention on both readings at once: they compete with one another, and the best one can do is to switch rapidly from one to the other. In any normal use of this sentence, the speaker will have one reading in mind, and the hearer will be expected to recover that reading on the basis of contextual clues: the choice cannot normally be left open. If the hearer finds it impossible to choose between the readings, the utterance will be judged unsatisfactory, and further clarification will be sought.

A sentence which calls for two discrete and antagonistic readings to be activated at the same time will give rise to the phenomenon of zeugma, or punning, as in *?John and his driving licence expired last Thursday* (*John* calls for the "die" reading of *expire*, while *his driving licence* calls for the "come to the end of a period of validity" reading); another example of punning is *When the Chair in the Philosophy Department became vacant, the Appointments Committee sat on it for six months* (this plays on multiple meanings of both *chair* and *sit on*).

It may be presumed that antagonistic readings are *ipso facto* also discrete, and therefore that antagonism represents the highest degree of distinctness.

6.3 Senses

We shall take antagonism between readings as a defining criterion for the **ambiguity** of a linguistic expression. Where the ambiguous expression is a word, like *bank* or *light*, we shall say that it has more than one **sense**. (Later on, degrees of distinctness that fall short of full sensehood will be introduced.)

6.3.1 Establishment

It is almost certainly the case that all words are potentially usable with meanings other than their default readings (i.e. the meanings which would come to mind in the absence of any contextual information). Examples such as the following can be multiplied indefinitely:

(4) (a) John ordered a pizza.
    (b) The pizza doesn't look too happy with what he's been given.
(5) (a) Some of the guests are wearing roses, some carnations.
    (b) The carnations are to sit on the left.
(6) (a) 'I'm off to lunch', said John.
    (b) 'This is my lunch', said John, waving a five-pound note.

However, although one has no trouble working out what is meant, no one would dream of registering the (b) readings above in a dictionary, nor is there any reason to suppose that they are permanently stored in the mental lexicon. In the following cases, however, it is fairly safe to assume that both readings are permanently laid down in some internal store:

(7) (a) John planted five roses.
    (b) John picked five roses.
(8) (a) That must be an uncomfortable position to sleep in.
    (b) What is your position on capital punishment?

These may be described as **established**, and the former set as **non-established**. For a word to be described as ambiguous, it must have at least two established senses.

6.3.2 Motivation: homonymy and polysemy

Given that a word is ambiguous, it may be the case that there is an intelligible connection of some sort between the readings, or it may be seemingly arbitrary. For instance, few people can intuit any relationship between *bank* (money) and *bank* (river), although a connection between *bank* (money) and, say, *blood bank* is not difficult to construe (both are used for the safe keeping of something valuable), or between *river bank* and *cloud bank*. In the case of *bank* (river) and *bank* (money), we say that *bank* displays **homonymy**, or is **homonymous**, and the two readings are **homonyms**. It is normal to say in such circumstances that there are two different words which happen to have the same formal properties (phonological and graphic). A lexicographer would normally give two main entries, *bank*[1] and *bank*[2]. Where there is a connection between the senses, as in *position* in (8a) and (8b), we say that the word is **polysemous**, or manifests **polysemy**. In this book the less common practice will be adopted of referring to the related readings of a polysemous word as **polysemes**.

Of course, the degree to which two readings can be related forms a continuous scale, and there is no sharp dividing line between relatedness and unrelatedness; furthermore, individual speakers differ in their judgements of relatedness. However, this does not render the distinction between polysemy and homonymy useless, because there are many clear cases. Notice that homonymy is possible only with established readings. It is probably wise to reserve the term *polysemy*, too, for established senses, like those of *position*, and to designate cases like *pizza* in (4a) and (4b) by the expression **coerced polysemy**.

6.3.3 Non-lexical sources of ambiguity

Ambiguity has been presented here as a lexical phenomenon; it is important to emphasize, however, that there are other sources of ambiguity. One of these,

of course, is syntax, as in *Mary saw the man with the telescope*. Many syntactic ambiguities arise from the possibility of alternative constituent structures, as here: *with the telescope* is either a manner adverbial modifying *saw*, or a prepositional phrase modifying *the man*. In neither case is there any other syntactic difference. An identity constraint operates here, too, in that co-ordinated items must have identical positions in the constituent structure. Hence, (9) has only one reading:

(9) Mary saw the man with the telescope and the bowler hat.

A syntactic ambiguity may involve functional alternation in one or more items, as in Hockett's classic telegram: *Ship sails today*, where *ship* and *sails* both change their syntactic categories in the two readings.

A word should be said about cases like *The man entered the room*. In any specific context of use, *the man* and *the room* will designate a particular man and a particular room, and in a different context, a different man and a different room. Is this ambiguity? It is not usually recognized as such, since there is no evidence that multiple entries will be necessary, either in the mental lexicon, or in any ideal language description. However, there seems no great harm in calling this phenomenon **pragmatic ambiguity** or **open ambiguity** (because the number of readings is potentially infinite).

6.4 Varieties of polysemy

There is, by definition, a motivated relationship between polysemous senses. There are various ways of classifying the sorts of relation that can hold between polysemous senses. We shall begin by distinguishing linear and non-linear relations.

6.4.1 Linear relations between polysemes

Senses have a **linear** relation if one is a specialization of (i.e. is a hyponym or meronym of—see Chapter 8, section 2.1) the other (which of course entails that the latter is a generalization of the former). We can distinguish specialization from generalization if we recognize one of the senses as more basic than the other: if A is more basic than B, and B is more specialized than A, then B is a specialization of A (*mutatis mutandis* for generalization).

6.4.1.1 Autohyponymy

Autohyponymy occurs when a word has a default general sense, and a contextually restricted sense which is more specific in that it denotes a subvariety of the general sense. An example of this is *dog*, which has two senses, a general sense, "member of canine race", as in *Dog and cat owners must register their pets*, and a more specific reading, as in *That's not a dog, it's a bitch*. Notice that

the specific reading demonstrates autonomy, since the second clause contradicts the general reading of *dog*: if the animal is a bitch, then it IS a dog. Another example is *drink*, whose general reading occurs in *You must not drink anything on the day of the operation*, and whose specific reading is exemplified in *John doesn't drink—he'll have an orange juice*, which also exhibits autonomy, because presumably John is going to drink (general reading) the orange juice.

6.4.1.2 Automeronymy

Automeronymy occurs in a parallel way to autohyponymy, except that the more specific reading denotes subpart rather than a subtype, although it is by no means always easy to determine whether we should be talking about automeronymy or autoholonymy, that is to say, it is not easy to see which is the more basic use. An example of this may be *door*, which can refer to either the whole set-up, with jambs, lintel, threshold, hinges, and the leaf panel itself, as in *Go through that door*, or just the leaf, as in *Take the door off its hinges.* Notice the zeugma in the following, which confirms the discreteness of the specific reading: *?We took the door off its hinges and walked through it.*

6.4.1.3 Autosuperordination

An example of autosuperordination is the use of *man* to refer to the human race (or indeed any use of masculine terms to embrace the feminine). There is no doubt that these are contextually restricted. (This fact may lend some force to the feminist argument that such uses should be suppressed; if the "male" reading is the default one, then the notion that the sentence applies mainly to males could arise by a kind of inertia.) Another example, but involving the generalization of a feminine term is the use of *cow* to refer to bovines of both sexes, especially when there is a mixed group (as in *a field full of cows*, which does not exclude the possibility of the odd bull); the normal reference of the term is the female animal.

6.4.1.4 Autoholonymy

As was mentioned above, discriminating automeronymy from autoholonymy is not easy, because there seem often to be different default readings in different contexts, that is to say, different contexts, which in themselves appear to exert no particular selective pressure, none the less induce different readings. Consider the case of *body*, as in *Jane loves to show off her body*. This surely denotes the whole body, not just the trunk (even though a lot of what Jane presumably enjoys displaying is actually part of the trunk!). But consider *She received some serious injuries/blows to the body*. Here, just the trunk is indicated. Another similar example is *arm*: *a scratch on the arm* is definitely on the non-hand part of the arm, but in *He lost an arm in the accident*, or *She was waving her arms about*, the whole arm is indicated. We shall tentatively consider these to be cases of autoholonymy, on the grounds that the inclusion of the hand in the latter cases is pragmatically entailed in those contexts, whereas

the exclusion of the hand in the former case is totally unmotivated (admittedly, the case of *body* is not quite so clear). There are clearer cases in other languages, for instance, the well-known *Have you eaten rice?* in, for instance, Malay, as a way of enquiring whether someone has had a meal (which would prototypically include rice as a part).

6.4.2 Non-linear polysemy

6.4.2.1 Metaphor

Many polysemous senses are clearly related metaphorically. A detailed consideration of metaphor will be postponed until Chapter 11: here we will simply characterize metaphor as figurative usage based on resemblance. A good example of a set of readings related metaphorically is provided by *position*:

That is an uncomfortable ***position*** to sleep in.
This is a good ***position*** to see the procession.
John has an excellent ***position*** in ICI.
What is your ***position*** on EU membership?
You've put me in an awkward ***position***.
You must ***position*** yourself so she can't miss you.

6.4.2.2 Metonymy

Another rich source of polysemous variation is metonymy, which is also dealt with in greater detail later, but may be characterized for the moment as figurative use based on association:

There are too many ***mouths*** to feed.
(Don't talk with your ***mouth*** full.)
That's a nice bit of ***skirt***.
(She wore a red ***skirt***.)
John has his own ***wheels***.
(One of the ***wheels*** fell off.)
Jane married a large ***bank account***.
(Jane has a ***bank account***.)
He is the ***voice*** of the people.
(He has a loud ***voice***.)

6.4.2.3 Miscellaneous

For some polysemous senses, although they are obviously related, it does not seem very illuminating to describe their relationship in terms of either metaphor or metonymy. An example is the calendric and non-calendric readings of words denoting periods of time, such as *week*, *month*, *year*. The clearest example is probably *month*, because the two readings do not even indicate the same length of time. A calendric month begins on the first day of the said

month, and ends on the day before the first of the following month; a non-calendric month starts on any day, and ends four weeks later.

6.4.3 Systematic polysemy

Some cases of polysemy are systematic in the sense that the relationship between the readings recurs over a range of lexical items that is at least partly predictable on semantic grounds. Probably the least systematic is metaphor. There seems to be little pressure for systematicity in metaphor. For instance, in metaphors derived from the human body, one cannot assume that if *foot* is used for the lowest part of something, then *head* will be used for the upper part (or vice versa):

foot of mountain	*head/top of mountain
foot of tree	*head/crown of tree
head of a pin	*foot/point of a pin

We do speak of the *head* and the *foot* of a bed, but this is arguably a case of metonymy, that is to say, it indicates which part of the body is normally in that position.

The most systematic metaphors are probably the most basic ones, many of which are so naturalized that they hardly feel like metaphors any more. I am referring to cases like UP IS MORE/DOWN IS LESS. That is to say, if one can refer to something as *rising* (prices, popularity, hopes, etc.), the chances are pretty good that they are also capable of *falling*.

Metonymy can be highly systematic. Some examples are the following:

"tree species"/"type of wood"	beech, walnut, oak
"fruit"/"tree species"	apple, pear, cherry
"flower"/"plant"	rose, daffodil, azalea
"animal"/"meat"	rabbit, chicken, armadillo
"composer"/"music by same"	Beethoven was deaf.
	Do you like Beethoven?
"food"/"person ordering same"	The omelette is overcooked
	The omelette complained.

There is some systematicity, too, in linear polysemy. Take the case of *dog*. The story is that in a situation where a category has a binary subdivision, and only one of the subdivisions has a name, then the superordinate term will develop a more specific reading to fill the gap. So, for instance, in the case of *dog*, of the subcategories of male and female animals, only the female has a distinct name, namely *bitch*, so the superordinate term moves down to fill the gap. In the case of *duck*, it is the female subcategory which is unnamed, so *duck* functions as partner for *drake* as well as denoting the kind of bird. In other cases one can argue that the development has proceeded in the other direction, in that the name of one of the sub-categories (typically the most significant and familiar

one, if there is a difference), moves up to function as a superordinate. This is perhaps what has happened in the case of *cow*, and presumably, too, in the case of *rice* mentioned earlier.

6.5 Between polysemy and monosemy

In most accounts of contextual variation in the meaning of a word, a sharp distinction is drawn between "one meaning" and "many meanings", between **monosemy** and polysemy. But this is too crude: there are many degrees of distinctness which fall short of full sensehood, but which are none the less to be distinguished from contextual modulation (see below).

6.5.1 Facets

We have taken antagonism as a criterion for ambiguity, and hence for full sensehood; however, by no means all discrete readings of a word are mutually antagonistic. A clear example of this is provided by the word *book*. Sentences (10) and (11) below exemplify two such readings:

(10) Please put this book back on the shelf.
(11) I find this book unreadable.

In the first case it is the physical object which is referred to, in the second case, the text which the physical object embodies. However, this is not ordinary ambiguity: the two readings co-ordinate quite happily, without producing a sense of punning:

(12) Put this book back on the shelf: it's quite unreadable.

Such readings are called **facets**, and we may refer, for convenience, to the [TEXT] facet and the [TOME] facet (hopefully the labels are self-explanatory). There is considerable evidence of the discreteness of facets:

6.5.1.1 Identity constraint

Consider the following sentence: *John thinks this is the most remarkable book of the century; so does Mary*. If it is known that John is speaking of the text, there is a strong presumption that that is what Mary admires, too; likewise if John is impressed by the physical presentation.

6.5.1.2 Independent truth conditions

Consider the following exchange:

(13) A: Do you like the book?
B: (i) No, it's terribly badly written.
(ii) Yes, it's beautifully produced.

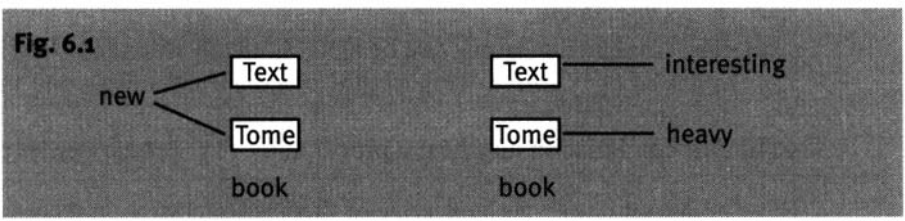
It is possible to conceive of a situation in which both of B's replies are true simultaneously. In reply (i), *book* is being interpreted as if only the [TEXT] facet was relevant, and in (ii), as if only the [TOME] facet was relevant. This independence of the facets is an indication of their distinctness.

6.5.1.3 Independent sense relations

The subvarieties of *book* [TEXT] are such things as *novel*, *biography*, *dictionary*, and so on. These do not correspond to subvarieties of *book* [TOME], the physical format of books, like *paperback*, *hardback*, and so on; that is to say, it is not the case that novels are typically hardbacks and biographies paperbacks, or whatever. Similarly, the parts of a text: *chapter*, *paragraph*, *sentence*, and so on, do not regularly correspond to the parts of a physical book, such as *cover*, *page*, or *spine*.

6.5.1.4 Ambiguity in containing constructions

The phrase *a new book* has two readings: "a new text" and "a new tome". This is genuine ambiguity: the two interpretations are fully antagonistic. But there is neither lexical nor syntactic ambiguity present. What happens is that the modifying adjective *new* is required to attach itself to one facet or another (this is the origin of the antagonism). However, two different adjectives, say *interesting* and *heavy*, may attach themselves to two different facets without tension, as in Fig. 6.1:



6.5.1.5 Independent metaphorical extension

In the phrase *a book of matches*, the metaphor relates only to the [TOME] facet; the [TEXT] facet is completely irrelevant.

6.5.1.6 Independent proper noun

David Copperfield can be loosely described as the name of a book; but strictly speaking it is the name of a [TEXT], not of a [TOME].

Facets are not merely discrete, they are also autonomous. Consider the following:

(14) I'm not interested in the cover design, layout, printing, and so on, I'm interested in the book itself.

(15) I'm not interested in the plot, characters, or the quality of the writing, I'm interested in the book itself.

In (14) there are no problems about interpreting *book* as [TEXT], and in (15), as [TOME]. This use of *the X itself* is a particularly strict test for autonomy. A further indication of autonomy is that *book* can refer to ***only*** a text, or ***only*** a tome, that is, a text that has been composed, but is not yet embodied, or a book which has as yet no text in it (*I've bought a book to write the minutes of the meeting in*).

Facets can be described as fully discrete but non-antagonistic readings of a word. Another important characteristic is that they are characteristically of distinct ontological types. However, in spite of their discreteness and ontological distinctness it would not be correct to say that they represented distinct concepts: they are somehow fused into a single conceptual unit. Amongst the evidence for this claim the following may be cited:

(i) Ordinary speakers are not normally aware of the dual nature of *book*: it has to be pointed out to them (however, once pointed out, it becomes obvious). The facets form a single, unified 'gestalt'. The default reading of *book* is the combined one.
(ii) As we have seen, predicates selecting different facets can co-ordinate without zeugma, and there is no normal requirement for speakers to intend, or hearers to identify, only one of the facets, as is the case with true ambiguity.
(iii) The combined reading functions as a basic level item.
(iv) Some predicates require both facets to be present: *publish a book*, *John is reading a book*.
(v) The combined meaning can be metaphorically extended: *John's mind is a closed book to me.* This cannot be construed unless one takes into account both facets.
(vi) The combination may bear a proper name (e.g. *Britain* (see below)).

These points, although perhaps none of them is conclusive on its own, add up to an impressive case for the conceptual unity of the meaning of *book*.

It is not at present clear quite how widespread in the vocabulary the facet phenomenon is. It is certainly not unique to *book*; in fact anything that can be thought of as having both concrete form and semantic (in the widest sense) content seems to display facets. So, for instance, *John's speech was inaudible* and *John's speech was very interesting* manifest different facets of *speech*. Likewise, *a beautiful CD* and *a flexible CD* (and the ambiguity of *a new CD*), point to the dual nature of the meaning of *CD*.

An example of another large group of faceted words is *bank*:

(16) The bank in the High Street was blown up last night.
(17) That used to be the friendliest bank in town.
(18) This bank was founded in 1575.

These sentences involve facets which can be designated, respectively, as [PREM-

ISES], [PERSONNEL], and [INSTITUTION]. These can co-ordinate together without zeugma:

(19) The friendly bank in the High Street that was founded in 1575 was blown up last night by terrorists.

A parallel set of facets will be found in *school*, and in *university*. A third group is represented by *Britain* in the following:

(20) Britain lies under one metre of snow.
(21) Britain mourns the death of the Queen Mother's corgi.
(22) Britain has declared war on San Marino.

In (20) *Britain* designates a concrete geographical entity, in (21), the population, a human entity, and in (22), an abstract political entity. According to my intuitions, although they are discrete, they all co-ordinate together fairly happily without zeugma, as in (23):

(23) Britain, despite the fact that it is lying under one metre of snow and is mourning the death of the Queen Mother's corgi, has declared war on San Marino.

6.5.2 Perspectives

There is another type of difference between readings which displays a certain level of discreteness without antagonism, but not as much as facets do, and without autonomy. These will be referred to as **perspectives**. A simple way of explaining these would be by analogy with looking at an everyday object from in front, from the sides, from behind, from on top, etc. All these different views are perceptually distinct, but the mind unifies them into a single conceptual unity. Something similar happens with meaning. As an example consider the case of *house*. A house can be thought of as an example of a particular architectural style, as a dwelling, as a piece of property, or as a piece of construction work. Each of these points of view causes a transformation in the accessibility profile of knowledge associated with the lexical item *house*. Some of these profiles may be sufficiently distinct to give rise to discontinuity phenomena, such as ambiguous phrases without ambiguous lexical items. An example might be *'a delightful house'*, which could be delightful from the point of view of its architectural qualities, or because of its qualities as a place to live in. (It could, of course, be both, but my intuition is that one would mean either one thing or the other.) Think also of *John began the book*. This is ambiguous, and two of its possible readings are that John began reading the book, and that he began writing it. Notice that in both cases it is the [TEXT] facet which is involved, so the ambiguity here cannot be explained by appeal to facets.

How many different perspectives are there? One might suppose there to be an indefinitely large number; but if we apply the constraint that different ways

of seeing must give some evidence of discreteness, such as the possibility of ambiguous phrases, there seem not to be so very many. On one account, there are only four, which we shall illustrate in connection with the word *horse*. (What follows is a reinterpretation of Pustejovsky's **qualia roles**, as expounded in Pustejovsky (1995).)

6.5.2.1 Seeing something as a whole consisting of parts

Consider the viewpoint of a veterinarian, acting in a professional capacity. Such a person is primarily concerned with the proper functioning of the horse's body and its parts. Their approach has parallels with that of a garage mechanic to a car. (This corresponds to Pustejovsky's **constitutive role**.)

6.5.2.2 Seeing something as a kind, in contrast with other kinds

For this perspective, think of the way a taxonomic zoologist would view a horse. This would involve the way horses differ from other species, such as deer, and zebras and so on, and also how the various subspecies and varieties of horse differ from one another. Ordinary speakers, too, have a 'mindset' for classification; most 'folk taxonomies' depend heavily on perceptual features such as size, shape, colour, and so on, so these will figure largely in this perspective. (Some of the classificatory features will inevitably involve parts, but the point of view is different.) (This corresponds to Pustejovsky's **formal role**.)

6.5.2.3 Seeing something as having a certain function

A characteristic way of looking at things is in terms of their function: think of the way a jockey, or a Kazakh tribesman, will view his horse. Some things, of course, have many different uses, and each use will cause a different highlighting and backgrounding of conceptual material. But it is implicit in the fourfold division we are adopting here that within-perspective differences will be markedly less distinct (by various measures) than between-perspective differences. This is an empirical matter which has not been properly explored. As an example of between-perspective distinctness, think of a veterinarian's and a jockey's/racehorse trainer's differing interpretations of *This horse is in excellent condition*: health and race fitness are not the same thing. (This corresponds to Pustejovsky's **telic role**.)

6.5.2.4 Seeing something from the point of view of its origins

Adopting this perspective means thinking of something in terms of how it came into being. For a living thing, like a horse, this would involve the life cycle, conception and birth, and so on. It would also include the poet's view of their poem, a builder's view of a house, a farmer's view of farm products, and so on. Mention has already been made of the ambiguity of *John began the book*, which is ambiguous even when *book* is interpreted exclusively as [TEXT]: the ambiguity can be explained by saying that on the interpretation "John began reading the book", a functional perspective is being taken, since the

purpose of a book is to be read, whereas on the interpretation "John began writing a book", a 'life cycle' perspective (in the broadest sense) is being taken. (There is a third possible interpretation, namely, that John began binding, or putting together a book physically. This, too, would be to take a 'life cycle' perspective. (This corresponds to Pustejovsky's **agentive role**.))

6.5.3 Subsenses

Antagonism should probably be regarded as a scalar property, which the truly ambiguous items (i.e. fully fledged independent senses) presented above display to a high degree. However, there are also readings with a lower level of both discreteness and antagonism than full senses, and we shall call these subsenses. A good example of this is afforded by the word *knife*. Although there is a superordinate sense of *knife*, according to which a *penknife*, a *table knife*, and a *pruning knife* are all *knives*, in certain contexts, the default reading of *knife* is a specific one appropriate to the context. Consider a mealtime context. Johnny is tearing pieces of meat with his fingers. He has a penknife in his pocket, but not a knife of the appropriate kind:

Mother: Johnny, use your knife.
Johnny: I haven't got one.

Johnny's response is perfectly appropriate: he does not need to be more specific. In this context, *knife* means "knife of the sort used at table". The independence of this reading is further confirmed by the fact that it forms part of a lexical hierarchy, with *cutlery* as an inclusive term, and *fork* and *spoon* as sister cutlery items. The inclusive reading is backgrounded in the above example, and probably only ever appears under contextual pressure; it is also relatively vague, whereas the specific readings are relatively rich and clearly defined. Other readings of *knife* have different sense relations. For instance, a pruning knife is a *tool*, a commando's knife is a *weapon*, and a surgeon's knife is a *surgical instrument*. There is reason to believe that the mental representation of a word like *knife* is a collection of specific readings loosely held together under a sketchy superordinate umbrella, rather than as a schematic specification which is enriched in various ways in particular contexts. That is to say, the specific readings of *knife* are selected from an established set, and are not the result of contextual enrichment of the inclusive reading (i.e. they are not the result of contextual modulation (see below)).

6.5.4 Sense spectra

Subsenses function like senses within their home domain, but they are less accessible from other domains. Another similar phenomenon is that of the **local sense**. These, too, are domain specific; they differ from subsenses, however, in that (i) they are points on a semantic continuum (called in Cruse 1986 a **sense spectrum**); (ii) the degree of antagonism between readings depends on

how far apart they are on the spectrum (in other words, superordination is also local); (iii) literal and figurative readings can be intuited; and (iv) there is no inclusive reading. The example of a sense spectrum given in Cruse (1986) was that of *mouth*. We may presume that the core (literal) meaning of *mouth* is the mouth of an animal or human, and that the other readings are metaphorical extensions of this. One of the most 'distant' extensions (in the sense of being farthest away from the literal meaning) is *mouth of river*. If we try to co-ordinate this with the literal reading, zeugma results: *?The poisoned chocolate slipped into the Contessa's mouth just as her yacht entered that of the river.* However, co-ordination of readings closer together on the spectrum produces no zeugma: *The mouth of the cave resembles that of a bottle.*

Points on the spectrum that are close together in the sense that they co-ordinate without zeugma, are none the less fairly insulated from one another in actual use, as they typically belong to different domains. Within their home domains they are quite like normal senses, with their own sense relations and so on. Thus *mouth* in the river domain is a meronym (designates a part) of *river*, with *source*, *bank*, and *bed* as sister parts; *mouth* in the bottle domain also designates a part, and has *neck* and *base* among its sister parts. Notice that there is no overall category of mouths which covers all the metaphorical extensions. Semantic spectra seem to be characteristic of situations where a core sense has a variety of relatively minor metaphorical extensions, and seem particularly prevalent when the basis of the metaphor is physical shape (as with *tongue*, *foot*, *head*, *arm*, *pin*, etc.).

6.6 Sense modulation

The effects of context on the meaning of a word can be summarized under the three headings **selection**, **coercion**, and **modulation**. All the examples of contextual variation in word meaning that we have examined so far have involved, as it were, ready-made bundles of meaning, selectively activated by contexts. This selection operates largely through the suppression of readings which give rise to some sort of semantic clash with the context (see Chapter 12 for more detailed discussion of this). If all the readings are suppressed except one, then this one will be 'selected', and generally in such a situation the alternatives do not even enter the consciousness of either speaker or hearer. It sometimes happens that none of the established readings of a word is compatible with the context. Because of a tacit assumption that speakers are usually trying to convey an intelligible message, this typically triggers off a search through possible meaning extensions, such as metaphor or metonymy, for a reading which is compatible with the context. If one is found, this will be taken to be the intended reading, and we can say that context has **coerced** a new reading. However, selection and coercion do not exhaust the possibilities of contextual

variation: a lot of variation arises as a result of contextual effects which do not go beyond the bounds of a single sense. This is called here *contextual modulation*. There are two main varieties, **enrichment** and **impoverishment**, according to whether the effect is to add or remove meaning.

6.6.1 Enrichment

The most obvious effect of context is to add semantic content, that is, to enrich a meaning or make it more specific. The enrichments arise as a result of processes of inference which are in principle no different from those operating more generally in language understanding (for instance, those which generate conversational implicatures (see chapter 17)). There are two main ways of being more specific: by narrowing down to a subclass (i.e. hyponymic specialization), and by narrowing down to a subpart (i.e. meronymic specialization). Both may, of course, operate at the same time.

6.6.1.1 Hyponymic enrichment

The context may simply add features of meaning to a word which are not made explicit by the lexical item itself. For instance, gender may be determined:

(24) Our maths ***teacher*** is on maternity leave.

or height:

(25) My ***brother*** always bumps his head when he goes through the door.

or temperature:

(26) The ***coffee*** burnt my tongue.

or legality:

(27) Our house was burgled while we were away. They only ***took*** the video, though.

Contextual determination may be to a specific kind of the class normally denoted by the lexical item employed, rather than adding a feature:

(28) I wish that ***animal*** would stop barking/miaowing.
(29) John is ***going*** well in the 1500-metres freestyle.

In some cases, the specialization is to a prototypical example:

(30) I wish I could fly like a bird.

Notice that prototypical and non-prototypical interpretations co-ordinate without zeugma:

(31) An ostrich is a bird, but it can't fly like one.

The first occurrence of *bird* designates the whole class, but the second (via anaphora) must receive a prototypical interpretation. The normality of (31) shows that we are not dealing with separate senses.

6.6.1.2 Meronymic enrichment

Specification may also be to part of what the lexical item used normally refers to. This may be a definite identifiable part:

(32) The car has a puncture.

The only part of a car that this can refer to is one of the tyres. The specification may, on the other hand, be less definite:

(33) The car was damaged when John drove it into a tree.

Here the damage can be located at the front end of the car rather than the rear end, but there is still a range of possibilities, and the damaged area may not constitute a definite part. This kind of narrowing down to a part is widespread in language use and not usually noticed. For instance, *a red book* has red covers, not red letters, whereas *a red warning sign* most likely has red letters; *a red apple* is red on the outside, but the colour terms in *a yellow peach* and *a pink grapefruit* refer to the flesh; *Mary's eyes are red* and *Mary's eyes are blue* are not necessarily contradictory, because *red* and *blue* select different parts of the eye. Such cases can be multiplied *ad infinitum*.

6.6.2 Impoverishment

The effect of context is not always to enrich: it may also impoverish, if it makes clear that a lexical item is being used in a vague sense. Compare the following:

(34) The draughtsman carefully drew a circle.
(35) The children formed a circle round the teacher.

It is clear that the use of *circle* in (34) is in some sense the core one: the occurrence in (35) represents a kind of relaxation of the central, prototypical meaning, in that no one would expect the children to form a geometrically exact circle, and the description is vague in the sense (a) that it covers a range of possible dispositions of the children, and (b) that it is not clear what arrangements are excluded. The vague use of words is widespread and normal.

It may be useful to distinguish cases like (35), where context demands a vague use, but there is no explicit signal of vagueness, from cases like (36), where it is arguable that the word *turban* is not being used vaguely:

(36) He was wearing a sort of turban.

Here, of course, the phrase *a sort of turban* is vague. It is also worth pointing

out that although all words in principle are to some extent susceptible to vague use, some words are more susceptible than others. Just to give one example, although strictly speaking *twelve* and *a dozen* are synonymous, the latter lends itself more readily to approximate use.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. How would you characterize the differences between the (a), (b), and (c) readings of the underlined items in the following?

   (i) (a) A *volume* of verse.
   (b) A *volume* of 20 litres.

   (ii) (a) Mary ordered an *omelette*.
   (b) The *omelette* wants his coffee now.

   (iii) (a) John is a complete *soldier*.
   (b) Have you got a complete *soldier*? (No, the right leg is missing.)

   (iv) (a) The *school* in George Street is going to be closed down.
   (b) The whole *school* joined the protest march.
   (c) That *school* is always being vandalized.

   (v) (a) The drawer contained a collection of *knives* of various sorts.
   (b) When you set the table, make sure that the *knives* are clean.

   (vi) (a) They *led* the prisoner away.
   (b) They *led* him to believe that he would be freed.

   (vii) (a) She was told not to eat or *drink* after 8 a.m.
   (b) It was after her husband left her that she began to *drink*.

   (viii) (a) My *cousin* married an actress.
   (b) My *cousin* married a policeman.

   (ix) (a) Put that *encyclopaedia* down!
   (b) I can't understand this *encyclopaedia*.

   (x) (a) He has a *light* workload this semester.
   (b) There will be some *light* rain in the evening.

2. Consider how many distinct meanings of **collect** are represented in the following. How would you organize them in a dictionary entry? Compare your results with the treatment given in one or more standard dictionaries.

   (a) The books **collected** dust.
   (b) He **collects** stamps.
   (c) The postman **collects** the mail every day.

(d) She **collected** her things and left.
(e) She sat down to **collect** her thoughts.
(f) She **collects** the children from school at 4 o'clock.
(g) Dust **collects** on the books.
(h) The students **collected** in front of the notice board.
(i) They are **collecting** for Oxfam.
(j) He **collects** his pension on Thursdays.
(k) The dustmen **collect** the garbage on Wednesdays.
(l) She **collected** two gold medals in Tokyo.
(m) They **collected** rainwater in a bucket.
(n) They **collect** the rent once a fortnight.
(o) He will **collect** quite a lot on his accident insurance.

Suggestions for further reading

For a useful discussion of a range of approaches to polysemy see Geeraerts (1993). Chapter 3 of Cruse (1986) deals with context variants, but the present account differs from this in certain important respects, and is closer to Cruse (1995).

Most linguists take a more monosemic view than the one presented here. For an extreme monosemic position, see Ruhl (1989) (Cruse (1992*b*) is a critical review of this). Among those accepting a high degree of polysemy is Langacker—see, for instance, Chapter 10 of Langacker (1991*b*); the elaboration of Langacker's account in Tuggy (1993) is of particular interest. For a discussion of vagueness in language, see Channell (1994).

CHAPTER 7

Word meanings and concepts

7.1 Introduction	127	**Discussion questions and exercises**	141
7.2 The nature of concepts	130	**Suggestions for further reading**	142
7.3 Domains	140		

CHAPTER 7

Word meanings and concepts

7.1 Introduction

As has already been stated, the view taken in this book is that the approach to meaning which promises to be most fruitful is to regard it as conceptual in nature. This is not to deny that there are (presumably important) relations between linguistic forms and extralinguistic reality. Our approach is, however, based on the assumption that the most direct connections of linguistic forms (phonological and syntactic) are with conceptual structures, and until these are sorted out, there is little hope of making progress with the more indirect links with the outside world. The consequences of this view for lexical semantics are spelled out in more detail in this chapter.

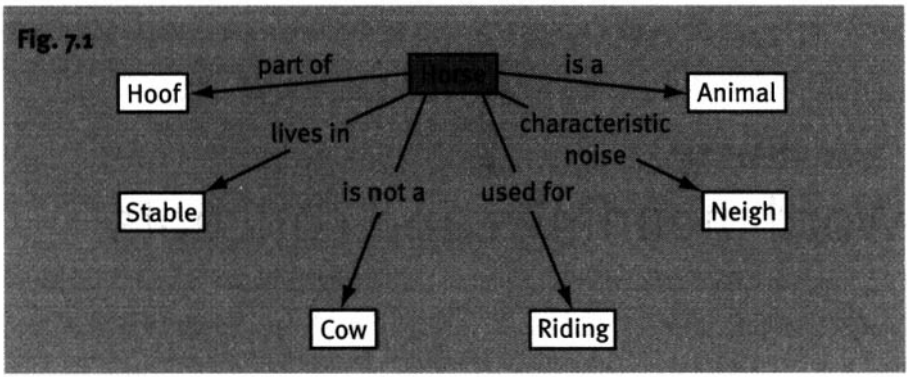
7.1.1 The importance of concepts

Concepts are absolutely vital to the efficient functioning of complex organisms like human beings. They are organized bundles of stored knowledge representing an articulation of events, entities, situations, and so on in our experience. If we were not able to assign aspects of our experience to stable categories, it would remain disorganized chaos. We would not be able to learn from it because each experience would be unique, and would not happen to us again. It is only because we can put elements of experience into categories, that we can recognize them as having happened before, and we can remember our previous reactions to their occurrence, and whether they were successful or not. Furthermore, shared categories are a prerequisite to communication.

7.1.2 Word-concept mapping

We shall assume a fairly simplistic model both of conceptual structure and of the relations between linguistic forms and concepts. In this model, concepts are linked together in a complex multi-dimensional network (see Fig. 7.1).

The links are of specific types (e.g. *is a kind of*, *is a part of*, *is used for*, etc.) and are of variable strength. These links correspond to concepts of a more



schematic kind than the concepts which they serve to connect, which are typically richer and more complex.

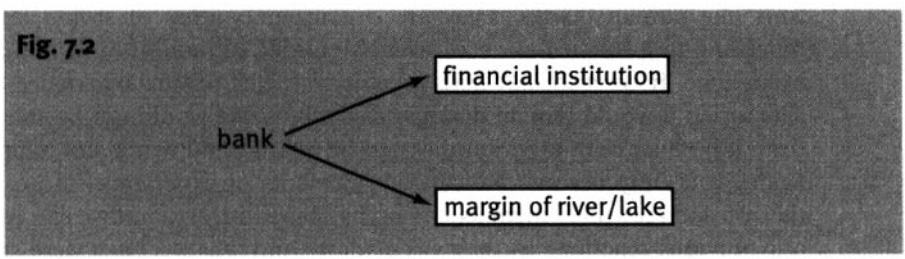
Linguistic forms map on to conceptual structures of comparable complexity. Here we shall confine our attention to individual words. Each full lexical item directly activates a concept and indirectly activates linked concepts according to the strength of the link. There is no direct link between, for instance, the word *horse* and the concept ANIMAL: the word *horse* has a direct link only with the concept HORSE.

The mapping between words and concepts may be any of the following:

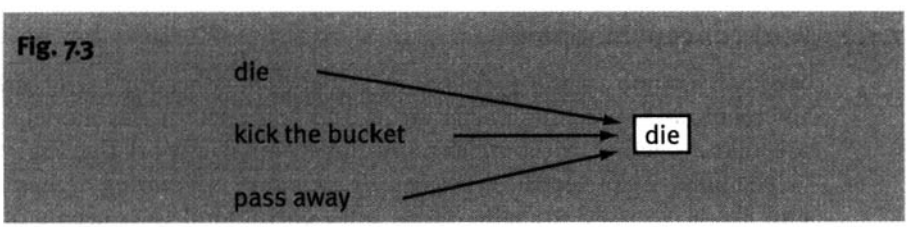
(i) one-to-one: in this arrangement, a word gives access to a single concept; an example might be:

syzygy ——————— SYZYGY

(ii) one to many:



(iii) many-to-one:



(It is assumed here that words which make the same contribution to the truth conditions of sentences map on to the same concept.)

(iv) a many-to-many mapping is also possible, but it arises from a combination of (ii) and (iii) above.

The three words/expressions which map on to DIE in (iii) above are not identical in meaning, therefore since they all map on to the same concept, the differences between them must be a property of the words themselves, not of the concepts; these may be termed **word-specific properties**. Among words mapping on to a single concept, we can distinguish words like *die*, *horse*, and *cry*, which activate their associated concepts (DIE, HORSE, and CRY) in a neutral way, from those like *kick the bucket*, *pass away*, *nag*, *steed*, *blubber*, which **modulate** the concept by adding emotive or other features. From this it follows that the meaning of a word consists of word-specific properties plus the properties of the associated concept.

7.1.3 Conceptual structure

Before we go on to a detailed look at the nature of concepts, it will be useful to stand back and take a look at conceptual structure in a wider perspective. The view outlined here is quite close to what Jackendoff has developed over the last decade or so.

It is usually taken for granted that the expressive possibilities of language are infinite: not only is there an infinite number of possible grammatical constructions in a language, there is no area of semantic space that cannot be designated linguistically, and semantic space is considered also to be in principle infinite. Since the brain is a finite physical object, it cannot store an infinite number of linguistic forms mapped on to an infinite number of concepts. Hence, just as the formal side of language solves the problem of infinity by providing a set of units with recursive rules for combination, in a similar way there must be primitives and formation rules, which specify well-formed complex conceptual structures.

Three independent levels of structure are proposed by Jackendoff: phonological, syntactic, and conceptual, the latter constituting the level of meaning. A complete description of a language must incorporate a specification of primitives and formation rules for each level, together with correspondence rules, which indicate the relationships between structures on the three levels.

It is a general requirement of any account of conceptual structure that it be rich enough to account for every last nuance expressible in language. Conceptual structure could in principle be richer than expressible linguistic meanings, but it cannot be less rich. Jackendoff calls this the **expressive constraint**. (He also has a **grammatical constraint**, which amounts to a bias in favour of conceptual structures that can be put into transparent correspondence with

surface syntactic structures, and against 'deep structures' of a radically different form to the corresponding surface forms.)

In many linguistic theories, a level of semantic structure is postulated, in addition to conceptual structure. Only the former is 'truly linguistic', the latter being part of general cognition. The arguments on this topic are complex and controversial. However, the view taken in this book is that there is only one level; that is to say, syntactic structures map directly on to conceptual structures. The basis for this view is that there is no work for a distinct semantic level to do: everything needed to motivate grammatical structure is present in conceptual structure. The simplest arrangement should be adopted until there is overwhelming evidence that only a more complex system can handle the facts: such evidence, in our view, is at present lacking.

7.2 The nature of concepts

Concepts have the status of categories: they classify experience and give access to knowledge concerning entities which fall into them. In this section we shall consider how conceptual categories can best be characterized.

7.2.1 The classical approach

The classical approach to categorization, which goes back at least to Aristotle, but is still often taken for granted, defines a category in terms of a set of **necessary and sufficient criteria** (or conditions, or features) for membership. So, for instance, the criteria for some X to qualify for inclusion in the category GIRL are:

X is human
X is female
X is young

If any of these criteria are not satisfied, then X is not a girl (i.e. the criteria are **individually necessary**); if all the criteria are satisfied, then X is a girl (i.e. the criteria are **jointly sufficient**). (The above set of criteria can be taken as a definition of the meaning of *girl*.)

7.2.2 Some problems of the classical approach

There is a certain undeniable obviousness about this way of defining categories. However, it has a number of shortcomings.

7.2.2.1 Lack of plausible analyses

The superficial plausibility of the Aristotelian analysis of *girl* (and similar words) is misleading. The words like *girl*, which apparently can be satisfactor-

ily defined by means of a set of necessary and sufficient features constitute a relatively small proportion of the vocabulary at large, and are confined to certain semantic areas, such as kinship, and specialized terms for animals specifying age and sex, and so on. There are many everyday words whose meanings cannot be captured by means of a set of necessary and sufficient features. Wittgenstein's famous example is *game*. He argued that it was impossible to draw up a list of features possessed by all games which jointly distinguish games from non-games. One might suggest the following as possible criteria:

(i) involves winning and losing: there are many games which do not involve winning and losing: party games, such as charades, Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John, kissing games; children's games such as leapfrog, hallalevo, and hopscotch, etc.

(ii) involves more than one person: solitaire is a game for one person.

(iii) has arbitrary rules: again, children's games, such as dressing-up games, and ducks and drakes, have no statable rules.

(iv) done purely for enjoyment: many games are played professionally.

In spite of the lack of compliance with these criteria, we communicate using the word *game* perfectly successfully, and without any sense of linguistic imperfection. Such examples can be multiplied almost indefinitely: *apple*, *dog*, *table*, *water*, *house*, *flower*, *dance*, *violin*, etc., etc.

7.2.2.2 Fuzzy boundaries

An Aristotelian definition of a category implies a sharp, fixed boundary. However, much empirical research on category structure has shown that the boundaries of natural categories are fuzzy and contextually flexible. For instance, Berlin and Kay (1969), who studied colour categories, found that while judgements of central examples of colours were relatively constant across subjects and reliable within subjects on different occasions, judgements of borderline instances, for instance between red and orange, or between blue and purple, showed neither agreement amongst subjects nor reliability with a single subject on different occasions. Labov (1973) studied subjects' naming of line drawings illustrating cups, mugs, vases, bowls, and the like which systematically varied parameters such as ratio of height to width, curved or straight sides, presence or absence of a handle. Again, the finding was that certain items received reliable assignation to a particular category, while others were uncertain. He also found that contextual conditions could alter subjects' responses, so that, for instance, an instruction to imagine all the items as containing rice extended the boundaries of the BOWL category, while a similar instruction to imagine coffee as contents extended the CUP category. Such results receive no natural explanation within the classical (Aristotelian) picture.

7.2.2.3 Internal structure of categories

As far as the classical conception of categories goes, everything that satisfies the criteria has the same status, that is to say, something is either in the category, or not in it, and that is all there is to say about the matter. However, language users have clear intuitions about differences of status of items within a category: some members are felt to be 'better' examples of the category than others. For instance, an apple is a better example of a fruit than is a date, or an olive. In other words, categories have internal structure: there are central members, less central members, and borderline cases. No account of these facts can be given using the classical approach.

7.2.3 The standard prototype approach

We shall first of all describe what might be called the 'standard' approach to prototype theory, deriving from the work of Eleanor Rosch (1973, 1978) and her co-workers (Rosch and Mervis 1975). The main thrust of Rosch's work has been to argue that natural conceptual categories are structured around the 'best' examples, or **prototypes** of the categories, and that other items are assimilated to a category according to whether they sufficiently resemble the prototype or not.

7.2.3.1 GOE and family resemblance

Rosch's most basic experimental technique is the elicitation of subjects' **Goodness-of-Exemplar (GOE) ratings**. Subjects are asked to give a numerical value to their estimate of how good an example something is of a given category. The rating scale typically goes something like this:

1: very good example
2: good example
3: fairly good example
4: moderately good example
5: fairly poor example
6: bad example
7: very bad example/not an example at all

So, for instance, if the category was VEGETABLE, the ratings of various items might be as follows:

POTATO, CARROT	1
TURNIP, CABBAGE	2
CELERY, BEETROOT	3
AUBERGINE, COURGETTE	4
PARSLEY, BASIL	5
RHUBARB	6
LEMON	7

Significantly, subjects do not find this to be a totally meaningless task. While there is of course a great deal of variation between subjects, statistically, the results within a culturally and linguistically homogeneous population cluster strongly round particular values. The prototypes of categories are determined by selecting the item with the lowest average numerical score.

Ratings of GOE may be strongly culture dependent. (Familiarity is undoubtedly a factor influencing GOE scores, but the scores cannot be reduced to familiarity.) For instance, in a British context (say, a typical class of undergraduates), DATE typically receives a GOE score of 3–5 relative to the category of FRUIT, but an audience of Jordanians accorded it an almost unanimous 1.

Wittgenstein described the instances of the category GAME as manifesting a relationship of **family resemblance**: the members of a human family typically resemble one another, but there may well not be any set of features that they all possess, and it may be possible to find two members who have no features in common. However, they will be linked by a chain of intermediate members with whom they do share features. So, for example, A may have no features in common with C, but has the same nose as B, who in turn has the same eyes as C. Prototype theory embraces Wittgenstein's notion that family resemblance unites the members of a category, but adds to it the vital idea of central and peripheral members.

7.2.3.2 Prototype effects

Taken in isolation, the existence of stable GOE scores might be thought to be of minor cognitive significance. However, there is abundant evidence that prototypicality, as measured by GOE scores, correlates strongly with important aspects of cognitive behaviour. Such correlations are usually referred to as **prototype effects**. The principal prototype effects are as follows:

Order of mention

When subjects are asked to list the members of a category, and especially if they are put under time pressure, the order of listing correlates with GOE ratings, with the prototypical member showing a strong tendency to appear early in the list.

Overall frequency

The overall frequency of mention in such lists also correlates with GOE score.

Order of acquisition

Prototypical members of categories tend to be acquired first, and order of acquisition correlates with GOE rating.

Vocabulary learning

Children at later stages of language acquisition, when vocabulary enlargement

can be greatly influenced by explicit teaching, learn new words more readily if they are provided with definitions that focus on prototypical instantiations than if they are given an abstract definition that more accurately reflects the total range of the word's meaning.

Speed of verification

In psycholinguistic experiments in which subjects are required to respond as quickly as they can to a categorization task, subjects produce faster responses if the tasks involve a prototypical member. In a typical set-up, subjects see a pair of words, say FRUIT:BANANA, flashed up on a screen, and they are to respond as quickly as possible by pressing one of two buttons, the one labelled *Yes* if the second named item belongs to the category indicated by the first item and *No* otherwise. Results show that responses to, for instance, FRUIT:APPLE, where the second item is a prototypical member of the class denoted by the first, are faster than, say, FRUIT:DATE (for average British subjects).

Priming

Another psycholinguistic technique involves the phenomenon of priming. In a typical set-up, subjects see strings of letters flashed on to a screen and their task is to respond *Yes* (by pressing the appropriate button) if the string of letters makes a word of (say) English, and *No* if it does not. Responses are timed electronically. It is a well-established experimental fact that if a word is preceded by a semantically related word, response to it will be speeded up. So, for instance, a *Yes* response to DOCTOR will be faster if NURSE has been just previously presented. It is found that the presentation of a category name has the greatest speeding-up effect on the prototype of a category, and the effect is proportionately less as we move away from the centre of the category to the periphery (as measured by GOE scores).

7.2.3.3 Intuitive unity, definitional polyvalence

Most of the work on prototypes has been carried out by psychologists, and the nature of the experiments reflects this. A purely linguistic characterization of categories with a prototypic organization (it is not necessary to assume that ALL categories have this sort of structure) is that they show intuitive unity, but are definitionally polyvalent. That is to say, they cannot be captured by means of a single definition, but require a set of definitions. For instance, the semantic field covered by the term *game* can be quite well described by means of a restricted set of definitions, but no satisfactory unitary definition exists.

7.2.3.4 Fuzzy boundaries

A common position is to maintain that only the prototype has 100 per cent membership of a category, the degree of membership of other items being dependent on their degree of resemblance to the prototype, this, in turn, being reflected by their GOE score. (It has sometimes been claimed—wrongly, in my

opinion—that when subjects give GOE ratings, they are actually judging degree of membership.) From this one would have to conclude that a natural category has no real boundaries, and indeed this has been explicitly claimed by, for instance, Langacker:

> There is no fixed limit on how far something can depart from the prototype and still be assimilated to the class, if the categorizer is perceptive or clever enough to find some point of resemblance to typical instances. (Langacker 1991*b*: 266.)

Not all scholars belonging to the cognitive linguistics fraternity agree that GOE and DOM (degree of membership) should be equated. However, there is general agreement that category boundaries are typically fuzzy. (Arguments against the GOE=DOM claim will be detailed below.)

7.2.3.5 The mental representation of categories

The earliest hypotheses regarding the mental representation of categories suggested that there was some sort of portrait of the prototypical member, against which the similarity of other items could be computed and their status in the category determined. This idea fell out of favour when it was realized that many 'portraits' would have to be three-dimensional and would have to incorporate characteristic behaviour (although Jackendoff still envisages all these possibilities for his 3-D representation of conceptual categories). Many prototype theorists (e.g. Lakoff) speak only of 'prototype effects', and remain uncommitted on the subject of the form of mental representations.

More recently, feature-based treatments of prototype structure have appeared. With these, categories with a prototype structure are represented by a set of features. However, unlike the classical features, these do not constitute a set of necessary and sufficient criteria, except perhaps for the prototype itself. Rather, the features are such that the more of them that are manifested in some particular instantiation, the higher the GOE score the item in question will obtain (note that in GOE terms, a score of 1 is high and 7 low). In such systems, features may be differentially weighted, that is to say, some features will have a greater effect on determining centrality in the category than others (there is nothing in principle to prevent some features being necessary). The general idea can be illustrated using the category VEHICLE. The features listed in (1) would seem to be plausible (note that these have not been subjected to empirical testing, they are based on my intuitions: the list is illustrative, not necessarily exhaustive):

(1) (a) Designed to go on roads.
(b) Has its own propulsive power.
(c) Can go faster than an unaided human.
(d) Can carry persons/goods in addition to driver.
(e) Has four wheels.
(f) Metallic construction.

(g) Persons/goods enclosed.
(h) Manœuvrable.

Clearly a central example of the category of vehicle, such as CAR, will have all these features. If they are correct, it ought to be possible, for items judged not to be central, to pinpoint features they do not possess. For instance, a typical class of students will mark the following items as non-prototypical in the class of VEHICLE. For each of them, there are features from the above list which are missing:

TRAIN:	Not designed to go on roads.
	Not manœuvrable.
TRACTOR:	Not designed to go on roads.
	Driver not always covered.
BICYCLE	Doesn't have own propulsive power.
	Does not carry persons/goods in addition to driver.

(The category VEHICLE, like GAME, is one for which it is not possible to draw up an adequate set of necessary and sufficient features; notice, however, that there may be features—[CONCRETE] is a possible example—which are necessary.)

7.2.3.6 Basic-level categories

Categories occur at different levels of inclusiveness, as shown in (2):

(2) (a) vehicle—**car**—hatchback.
(b) fruit—**apple**—Granny Smith.
(c) living thing—creature—animal—**cat**—Manx cat.
(d) object—implement—cutlery—**spoon**—teaspoon.

One level of specificity in each set has a special status (shown in bold in (2)), called **basic** or **generic** level of specificity. Characteristics of basic-level items are as follows.

(i) The most inclusive level at which there are characteristic patterns of behavioural interaction: imagine being asked to mime how one would behave with an animal. This is rather difficult without knowing whether the animal in question is a crocodile or a hamster. Likewise with, say, an item of furniture. However, the assignment is relatively easy if it involves a cat, horse, mouse, or chair.

(ii) The most inclusive level for which a clear visual image can be formed: this is similar in principle to the previous characteristic: try to visualize an item of cutlery or a vehicle, without its being any specific type. A fork or a lorry, however, are easy to visualize.

(iii) Used for neutral, everyday reference. Often felt by speakers to be the 'real' name of the referent: suppose A and B are sitting at home; A hears a noise outside and says *What's that?* B looks out of the window

and sees an alsatian in the garden. How does B reply? Out of the following choices, normally (b) will be chosen:

(3) (a) It's an animal.
(b) It's a dog.
(c) It's an alsatian.

The other two responses would require special contextual conditions.

(iv) The basic level is the level at which the best categories can be created. Good categories are those which maximize the following characteristics:

(a) distinctness from neighbouring categories;
(b) internal homogeneity;
(c) differential informativeness.

Generally speaking, categories which are more inclusive than the basic level (e.g. ANIMAL) have less internal homogeneity, while narrower categories (e.g. ALSATIAN) show less distinctness from neighbouring categories. The above characteristics are to be understood encyclopaedically. For instance, a division of animals into male and female would yield two clear categories which might have utility in certain circumstances. But they would not be good categories by the above criteria because (a) distinctness from neighbouring categories is restricted to one feature, (b) internal homogeneity is likewise restricted: as a result, a female mouse resembles a male mouse far more than it resembles a female elephant (and the same is true for all animals), even though it falls into a different category.

(v) Names of basic level categories tend to be morphologically simple, and 'original', in the sense of not being metaphorical extensions from other categories: take the case of *spoon*, which is a basic-level term; all the more specific categories have more complex names: *teaspoon*, *tablespoon*, *soup spoon*, *coffee spoon*, etc.

7.2.4 Problematic aspects of prototype model

While the standard prototype-theoretical approach undoubtedly sheds light on the nature of natural conceptual categories, it is not without its problematic aspects.

7.2.4.1 The bases of GOE ratings

The first point is that although subjects readily enough make GOE judgements on the basis of two words (category name and item name), this is surely rather unnatural: it would presumably be more revealing to produce GOE ratings for actual objects or events, etc. Furthermore, this would be likely to highlight the fact that the GOE scale is a conflation of several more basic scales. One of these is undoubtedly familiarity, although it can be shown that

GOE ratings cannot be reduced to familiarity ratings. Another is well-formedness: APPLE may well receive a high rating in the category FRUIT if only the words are presented, but what if an actual apple were presented, and it happened to be rotten? Well-formedness does not necessarily correlate with familiarity. Most mushrooms are at least slightly deformed in one way or another. Yet there seems little doubt that a perfectly formed specimen would receive the highest GOE rating (other things being equal). Another factor is important, which in Cruse (1990) is called 'quality'. Think of an emerald. Most emeralds are pale in colour and have faults in the form of tiny cracks, etc. The best emeralds are deep in colour, but these are rare, and are even more susceptible to faults. An emerald with a deep glowing green colour would be voted the prototype on the basis of its 'quality', which is distinct from frequency and well-formedness. Here, then, we have at least three independent strands potentially making up a GOE score, and there may be more.

7.2.4.2 Category boundaries and boundary effects

One of the most serious shortcomings of the 'standard' prototype view is that no category boundary is recognized (see the quotation from Langacker at section 7.2.3.4). The few scholars who do admit that a boundary exists, evince little interest in it (e.g. Lakoff). Yet a category without a boundary is virtually useless: a primary function of a category is to discriminate between things which are in it and things which are not in it. The classical view of categories, with necessary and sufficient features, set a boundary (albeit an unnaturally sharp one) but allowed no internal structure. In throwing this out, prototype theory has thrown out one of the baby twins with the proverbial bath water. The view taken here is that a fully satisfactory description of a category must specify both internal structure and location of boundary area. It is accepted that category boundaries are to a greater or lesser extent fuzzy (so classical definitions are not adequate); but even fuzzy boundaries have locations, which are in principle specifiable. Both category centres and category boundaries have both linguistic and behavioural correlates, and should be given equal status in accounts of category structure.

7.2.4.3 Degrees of membership

As we have seen, the standard prototype view is that only the prototype of a category has 100 per cent membership of the category, other items having a degree of membership dependent on their resemblance to the prototype. Such a view is possible only if categories are not assigned boundaries. Once boundaries are assigned, then an item must be a full member of the category, not a member at all, or a borderline example. Even a non-central member of a category, like OSTRICH in the category of BIRD, is a full member. On this view, the notion of degree of membership of a category applies only to borderline cases. For instance, most people would probably judge BICYCLE and SKATEBOARD to be borderline instances of the category VEHICLE. Here, the notion of

degree of membership becomes operational, and I myself, for instance, would judge BICYCLE to have a higher degree of membership than SKATEBOARD.

7.2.4.4 Compound categories

The categories which result from the combination of two (or more) basic categories are often regarded as presenting particular problems for prototype theory. The most famous example is PET FISH, which was discussed in Chapter 4.4.3. To recapitulate briefly, the item emerges as prototypical in studies of this category (at least in an American setting) is GUPPY. This is held to be a problem because a guppy is not judged, in separate tests, either to be a prototypical fish (e.g. TROUT is rated more highly), or a prototypical pet (e.g. CAT and DOG are rated more highly). As we argued earlier, it is probably unreasonable to expect that the prototype of a compound category XxY should be prototypical in X and Y separately. However, it might be reasonably demanded of a prototype approach that the prototype of a compound category should be predictable from the representations of the component categories. Some attempts have been made to do this, but they are inconclusive (for a worthy try, see Hampton (1992)).

7.2.4.5 Context sensitivity

From our point of view, the GUPPY problem is one aspect of a much wider problem in prototype theory, namely, the contextual sensitivity of 'centrality'. Typically, GOE ratings are assigned to putative members of named categories out of context. But it is intuitively obvious that judgements of the 'best' examples of, say, the category [CAR] are going to depend on whether one has in mind a racing context, a context of town use, or long-distance travel. It seems likely that if none of these is made explicit, then the word *car* evokes some sort of 'default' context; it is unlikely that we make our judgements in a genuine zero context. How to achieve a way of specifying categories so that contextual effects can be predicted is a difficult problem, but it must be envisaged as a long-term aim, because human users of natural conceptual categories have no difficulty in adjusting to context.

7.2.5 Types of conceptual category

It is worth while considering briefly the characteristics of the category NATURAL CONCEPTUAL CATEGORY. In particular, we might speculate on what the features of a good example of such a category might be. First, it seems clear that a good category will distinguish clearly between things that are in it and things that are not in it; in other words, it will have a relatively well-defined boundary. Second, bearing in mind that a major function of conceptual categories is to provide headings under which information/knowledge can be economically stored, it is reasonable to expect a good category to be richly informative, in the sense that knowing that some entity belongs to a particular

category gives access to a substantial body of knowledge about the entity. This, in turn, would seem to correlate with a well-developed and richly articulated internal structure.

It is almost certainly a mistake to imagine that all categories are built to the same pattern. There is, for instance, variation in the relative importance of the internal structure and the boundary. An extreme case would be a category with boundaries but no internal structure at all. This would be the case for a category defined purely by means of a list of members (it is not clear that any natural categories are so constituted, or at least not any of the more permanent type that get associated with lexical items: nonce categories can be like this, e.g. dividing people into groups on the basis of the alphabetical position of their names). The balance of salience between boundary and internal structure can vary. For instance, GAME has very fuzzy boundaries, but a rich internal structure, whereas ODD NUMBER has clear boundaries, but a relatively weak internal structure (people do make differential GOE judgements on odd numbers: 3, 5, and 7 are judged to be the 'best', and such numbers as 319,947 come low down on the list, but the basis for such judgements seems to be relatively 'thin').

7.3 Domains

An important aspect of conceptual structure is emphasized by Langacker and his followers, and that is that concepts only make sense when viewed against the background of certain **domains**, which are usually themselves concepts of a more general or inclusive nature. To take an obvious example, an autonomous, free-standing specification of the concept FINGER is well-nigh unthinkable; it is an essential feature of this notion that it is a spotlighted portion of a HAND. Separated from a hand, a finger is a sausage-shaped piece of bone and flesh. Notice that HAND and FINGER are dependent on one another: HAND cannot be properly characterized without making any reference to FINGER. As another example, consider the wheel of a bicycle. In isolation from a bicycle (or other wheeled device), a wheel is just a circular structure; but the concept WHEEL is more than this, and can only be characterized by reference to a more inclusive domain of some kind such as BICYCLE, or WHEELBARROW, etc. Langacker refers to the region or aspect of a domain highlighted by a concept as the **profile**, and the domain part of which is rendered salient in this way is called the **base**; thus, WHEEL profiles a region of the base BICYCLE. According to Langacker, the profile cannot be apprehended on its own.

It is important to note that *profile* and *base* are relational terms, not absolute ones. Take the case of WHEEL. This profiles a region of its base BICYCLE. But it in turn functions as the base domain for more specific profilings, such as HUB and RIM and SPOKE. And FINGER functions as a base for more specific profilings such as (FINGER)NAIL and KNUCKLE. In other words, the base–profile

relation forms chains of elements (the term *domain* is usually reserved for concepts which function as a base for at least one profile). However, the chains are not endless: in the direction of specificity, NAIL, for instance, is probably the end of the chain involving HAND for most of us. There is also a limit to the degree of inclusiveness, in that there are some domains which are not profiles of anything more inclusive; these are called **basic domains** and include such elementary notions as SPACE, TIME, MATTER, QUANTITY, CHANGE, and so forth (these bear some resemblance to Jackendoff's basic ontological categories, but they are not identical).

To complete this elementary sketch of the relation between concepts and domains, one further elaboration is necessary. This is that a concept is typically profiled, not against a single base domain, but against several, the whole complex going under the name of **domain matrix**. As a relatively simple example, take the notion of TENNIS BALL. This is obviously profiled against BALL, along with sister categories such as CRICKET BALL, FOOTBALL, etc. BALL in turn is profiled against SPHERE (then SHAPE and ultimately SPACE, as well as (at least) THING, SIZE, WEIGHT, and ELASTICITY). At some stage, TENNIS BALL presupposes TENNIS, but the relationship is perhaps not immediate: we perhaps have TENNIS EQUIPMENT as an intermediate domain, which will also include RACKET, COURT, and NET, and TENNIS ACTIONS (for want of a better name) such as SERVICE, RETURN, LOB, and so on which will be immediate base domains for BALL, and probably also TENNIS JUDGEMENTS such as IN, OUT, FAULT, LET, and SCORING, all of which crucially involve BALL, and must be considered additional base domains. A lot of this is speculative and arguable, but it is clear that from the cognitive linguistic perspective, a full comprehension of the meaning of *tennis ball* is going to involve all these things.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. Which of the following are 'plain' words (i.e. words which map onto a concept without 'modulating' it)?

guffaw money inebriated tickle slim funny uxorious crestfallen surprised stroll pedagogue doctor vandal infant fiddle (n.)

2. Suggest a set of prototype features for one or more of the following conceptual categories (or select your own example(s)):

CLOTHES FRUIT MUSICAL INSTRUMENT HOBBY BUILDING HOUSEHOLD APPLIANCE

For each category, draw up a list of possible members, including some marginal cases, and ask another person to assign GOE ratings. Consider to what extent the ratings can be accounted for in terms of your suggested features.

3. Which of the following would you consider to be basic-level categories?

BIRO TEASPOON SANDAL UNDERWEAR SEAGULL DAISY GRASS BULLDOZER BUS MOUNTAIN BIKE SELF-RAISING FLOUR WALNUT SUGAR ARMCHAIR DELICATESSEN SUPERMARKET PETROL STATION TOWN HALL PARK MOTORWAY ROAD CANAL POLICE STATION BUILDING GROCERIES WINE CHAMPAGNE BEVERAGE MILK

Suggestions for further reading

That meaning is essentially conceptual in nature is one of the central tenets of **cognitive linguistics**. The best introduction to cognitive linguistics currently available is Ungerer and Schmid (1996). Ultimately, a reader interested in this approach will eventually want to tackle the foundational text. The 'bible' of the cognitive approach is Langacker's two-volume *Foundations of Cognitive Grammar* (1987 and 1991*a*). However, this is not an easy read; fortunately, many of the basic topics are expounded in a much more accessible form in Langacker (1991*b*). The interested reader will also find articles on a wide range of cognitive linguistic topics in the journal *Cognitive Linguistics*.

An alternative 'conceptual' approach to meaning can be found in the works of Jackendoff; Jackendoff (1983) provides a good introduction. An interesting comparison between Jackendoff's approach and the cognitive linguistic approach (including a contribution from Jackendoff himself) can be found in Volume 7 (1) of *Cognitive Linguistics*, which also gives a fairly full bibliography of Jackendoff's later work.

Cruse (1990) provides an introduction to prototype theory as applied to lexical semantics. (The volume which includes this article also contains many other articles on the topic.) A fuller account is to be found in Taylor (1989); Cruse (1992*c*) is a critical review of this. Ungerer and Schmid (1996) has an interesting chapter on categorization. For a more psychological view of the prototype approach to meaning, see the articles in Schwanenflugel (1991), especially those by Hampton and Murphy. Cruse (1995) attempts to apply prototype theory to lexical relations.

CHAPTER 8

Paradigmatic sense relations of inclusion and identity

8.1 The nature of sense relations 145

8.2 Paradigmatic relations of identity and inclusion 150

Discussion questions and exercises 160

Suggestions for further reading 161

CHAPTER 8

Paradigmatic sense relations of inclusion and identity

8.1 The nature of sense relations

This chapter is mainly about a particular type of **sense relation**, that is, a semantic relation between units of meaning. But before discussing this in detail, we must look at the idea of a sense relation from a broader perspective.

8.1.1 What makes a significant sense relation?

Taking the most general view, there is a unique sense relation of some sort holding between any two words chosen at random, say, *dog* and *banana*. We could even give this one a name, say, *dogbananonymy*. However, it would not be a very interesting or significant relation. We need, therefore, to consider what makes a sense relation significant.

8.1.1.1 Recurrence

Probably the first point to make is that one of the main ways that sense relations can be significant is in structuring the vocabulary of a language. Natural vocabularies are not random assemblages of points in semantic space: there are quite strong regularizing and structuring tendencies, and one type of these manifests itself through sense relations. Now it is obvious that a sense relation which holds between only two vocabulary items cannot play much of a role in structuring a vocabulary. So sense relations which recur frequently across the vocabulary are at a premium. For instance, the relation between *dog* and *animal* and between *banana* and *fruit* is much more 'interesting', from this point of view, than that between *dog* and *banana*.

8.1.1.2 Discrimination

Conversely, a relation which holds between ***all*** pairs in the language, or even the majority, is for that reason less interesting as a relation. In other words, to

be interesting, a sense relation must not only include a significant number of lexical pairs, but also exclude a significant number. An example of a non-discriminating relation is "can occur in the same English sentence as . . . ". The relation between *dog* and *animal* is discriminating in this sense, because it does not hold between, for instance, *dog* and *banana*, or between *dog* and *fruit*.

8.1.1.3 Lexicalizability

The significance of a relation is enhanced if it corresponds to an easily intuited concept, especially if the concept has been lexicalized or is readily expressible in verbal form. (This betrays the cognitive bias of the author, and no apology is offered.) A sense relation which ordinary speakers find hard to grasp is probably not worth recognizing (or, at least, it will have to earn its status in some other way). On this basis, too, the relation between *dog* and *animal* comes out as significant, since it is easily verbalizable as *A dog is a kind of animal*; likewise, the relation between *long* and *short* is captured by the ordinary everyday word *opposite*.

8.1.1.4 Abstract vs. concrete relations

Sense relations may be relatively abstract or relatively concrete. This distinction can best be explained by example. Suppose we are told that lexical items X and Y manifest the same relation as *dog:animal* and *apple:fruit*. What can we say about the semantic area to which X and Y belong, or about the nature of the meaning which differentiates X from Y? The answer is: nothing at all. All we know is that X is more specific than Y, and that, prototypically, all the features of Y are contained in the meaning of X. Suppose, now, that we are told that the lexical items A and B are related in the same way that *mare* and *stallion*, and *ewe* and *ram* are related. In this case, we can say much more about the meanings of A and B, and what differentiates them. We know, for example, that A and B refer to members of one species of animal, and that what differentiates A from B is that A refers to the female of the species and B to the male. The (relevant) relation between X and Y is, by our terminology, an abstract one, whereas that between A and B is (semantically) concrete. Lexical semanticists have mostly been concerned with abstract relations, and it is with these that we shall begin. This does not mean, however, that more concrete relations are without interest; examples will crop up in later discussions.

8.1.1.5 Multiple simultaneous relations

It is perfectly possible for a number of relations to hold simultaneously between a pair of lexical items, even without taking account of polysemy. This is because relations, like word meanings, come in varying degrees of specificity. For instance, taking the pair *true* and *false* as an illustration, the following relations hold between them:

(i) *True* has a different meaning from *false*.
(ii) *True* and *false* cannot both be true when applied to the same proposition.
(iii) *True* and *false* are opposites.
(iv) *True* and *false* cannot both be false when applied to the same proposition.

These relations are progressively more specific, and later relations presuppose relations occurring earlier in the list. Thus, relation (i) holds between *father*: *architect*, *red*:*green*, *long*:*short*, as well as *true*:*false*. Relation (ii) presupposes relation (i) but is more specific, as it holds between *red*:*blue*, *long*:*short*, and *true*:*false*, but not *father*:*architect*; relation (iii) presupposes relation (ii), and holds between *long*:*short* and *true*:*false*, but not *red*:*blue*; relation (iv) presupposes relation (iii) and holds between *true*:*false* but not *long*:*short*. All of these relations are abstract, and each of them has some significance in lexical semantics, as we shall see.

8.1.2 What sort of entities do sense relations relate?

Sense relations are uncontroversially relations OF sense, but what are they relations ***between***? The obvious answer is that they are relations between units of sense. In a way, this, too, is uncontroversial. But as we have seen, there are units of sense with different levels of discreteness, ranging from homonyms, through polysemes, to facets, ways of seeing and subsenses. In fact, we used the possession of distinct sense relations as one of the diagnostic features for a unit of sense. What this means is that, since units of sense are contextually sensitive, so are sense relations. *Knife* has the same, or a closely similar, relation to *cutlery* as *dog* has to *animal* only in appropriate contexts. However, I would like to distinguish this notion of the contextual dependence of sense relations from Lyons's notion (at least as it appears in Lyons 1968). Lyons suggests that, for instance, *horse* and *mare* are synonyms in *This — has just given birth to a foal*, but not in *I have just bought a —*. His reasoning, which I do not wish to dispute, is that substitution of *horse* for *mare* in the first sentential frame makes no difference to the truth conditions of the resulting sentence, whereas it does in the second. However, according to the position adopted here, there is no synonymy between *mare* and *horse* in either of these frames: the first frame does not select a particular discrete reading of *horse*, but rather adds the feature [FEMALE] to the general reading. This difference, between the selection of a unit of sense and the modulation of a unit of sense, is discussed more fully in Chapter 6.

8.1.3 Varieties of sense relation

Sense relations situate themselves on one of three major axes: paradigmatic, syntagmatic, or derivational. The significance of each of these three types of relation is different.

8.1.3.1 Paradigmatic relations

Paradigmatic relations reflect the semantic choices available at a particular structure point in a sentence. For instance:

I'll have a glass of — .
beer
wine
water
lemonade
etc.

Typically, paradigmatic relations involve words belonging to the same syntactic category, although not infrequently there are minor differences:

We bought some — .
knives
forks
spoons
cutlery

Here, *cutlery* is a mass noun, whereas all the others in the list are count nouns. In principle, paradigmatic relations may hold between members of any of the major syntactic categories. The following are examples involving verbs and adjectives respectively:

John — across the field.
ran
walked
crawled

I'd like a glass of — sherry.
dry
sweet

Notice that the pairs *knives/forks*, *knives/cutlery*, and *dry/sweet* exemplify different paradigmatic sense relations. These will be dealt with in greater detail below.

8.1.3.2 Syntagmatic relations

Syntagmatic relations hold between items which occur in the same sentence, particularly those which stand in an intimate syntactic relationship. For instance, it is by virtue of syntagmatic sense relations, in this case between adjective and head noun, that *I'd like a glass of dry sherry* is normal, whereas *I'd like a glass of striped sherry* is odd. For similar reasons,

(1) The girl ran across the field.

is normal, but

(2) The girl sat across the field.

and

(3) The smell ran across the field.

are odd. Notice that in (2) it is the combination of verb and prepositional phrase (i.e. *sat* and *across the field*) which causes the oddness, whereas in (3), it is the combination of subject and verb (i.e. *the smell* and *ran*).

Any well-formed sentence of a natural language can be thought of as a string of elements, each one chosen from a set of possibilities provided by the language (at least, each one which is not uniquely determined by the syntax, like the *to* of *I want to leave now*). In each case, the set of possibilities from which the choice was made is not completely free, but is constrained by the other elements in the sentence, in the sense that a choice from outside a certain range will result in semantic incoherence. Thus, if we do not choose something from the realm of liquids for the completion of *John drank a glass of* —, the result will not be coherent. Syntagmatic sense relations, therefore, are an expression of coherence constraints. Paradigmatic sense relations, on the other hand, operate within the sets of choices. Each such set represents the way the language articulates, or divides up, some conceptual area, and each displays a greater or lesser degree of systematic structuring. Paradigmatic relations are an expression of such structuring. For instance, in the conceptual area of drinkable things, English provides a cover term, *liquid*, and a range of more specific terms such as *milk*, *beer*, *lemonade*, *brandy*, and so on; the more specific terms all stand in a particular semantic relation with the cover term, and in a different relation with each other, and some of them, for example *wine*, function as cover terms for yet more specific ones, thus extending the structuring of the field. (Relations such as these are discussed in some detail below.) It can be seen, therefore, that paradigmatic and syntagmatic relations function in tandem, syntagmatic relations delimiting the space within which paradigmatic relations operate.

8.1.3.3 Derivational sense relations

Derivational sense relations are only accidentally found between words forming part of a set of paradigmatic choices, and only accidentally contribute to cohesion. They do, however, participate in one type of structuring of the vocabulary of a language, since they manifest themselves between items in what are called **word families** (i.e. words derived from a single root). Consider the following set of words:

(i)	*cook* (*v.tr.*)	*Mary is cooking supper tonight.*
(ii)	*cook* (*v.intr.*)	*Can John cook?*
(iii)	*cook* (*v.intr.*)	*The chicken is cooking.*
(iv)	*cook* (*n.*)	*Lesley is a good cook.*

(v)	*Lesley is a cook.*
(vi) *cooker*	*We've bought a new cooker.*
(vii) *cooking (n.)*	*John's in love with Mary's cooking.*
(viii)*cookery*	*John is taking cookery lessons.*

The semantic relations between these words are partly systematic, partly idiosyncratic. Take the relation between *cook* (iii) and *cooker*. There is an obvious sense in which the *-er* of *cooker* has an instrumental meaning: a cooker is something that is used for cooking. But if John cooks the chicken over a fire, the fire does not thereby become a cooker. There is therefore some specialization of sense in the derivation of *cooker* from *cook* (iii) (if indeed that is the true source). However, it does not appear that there is any specialization in the meaning of the morpheme COOK, nor, indeed, in the meaning of the instrumental affix. The specialization seems to operate at the level of the whole word *cooker*. It is not sufficient to say, either, that a cooker must be an apparatus designed to be used for cooking (this is not true of fires generally), since a barbecue is not a cooker, nor is a microwave oven. Consider, now, the relationship between *cook* (iii) and *cook* (i) and (ii) (which are closely related). *Cook* (iii) refers only to the fact that the chicken is undergoing heat treatment so as to render it more acceptable as food. Sentence (ii), however, is not simply asking whether John is able to cause foodstuffs to undergo heat treatment (anyone can drop a chicken into a fire): it enquires whether John has certain complex and valuable skills. In this case, *cook* (ii) seems to carry a greater semantic load than *cook* (iii).

8.2 Paradigmatic relations of identity and inclusion

For convenience of exposition, we shall divide paradigmatic sense relations into two broad classes, first those which express identity and inclusion between word meanings, and second, those expressing opposition and exclusion. We shall begin with the former.

8.2.1 Hyponymy

One of the most important structuring relations in the vocabulary of a language is **hyponymy**. This is the relation between *apple* and *fruit*, *car* and *vehicle*, *slap* and *hit*, and so on. We say that *apple* is a **hyponym** of *fruit*, and conversely, that *fruit* is a **superordinate** (occasionally **hyperonym**) of *apple*. This relation is often portrayed as one of inclusion. However, what includes what depends on whether we look at meanings extensionally or intensionally. From the extensional point of view, the class denoted by the superordinate term includes the class denoted by the hyponym as a subclass; thus, the class of fruit includes the class of apples as one of its subclasses. If we are dealing with verbs, we have to

say that, for instance, the class of acts of hitting includes as a subclass the class of acts of slapping. Looking at the meanings intensionally, we may say that the meaning (sense) of *apple* is richer than that of *fruit* and includes, or contains within it, the meaning of *fruit*. This can be seen more clearly in the case of words which have obvious definitions. For instance, from the definition of *stallion* as "male horse" we can see that the meaning of *stallion* includes within it the meaning of *horse* plus something else. Similarly, if we define *murder* as "kill with intent and illegally", we can see that *murder* both has more meaning than *kill* and includes the meaning of *kill*.

Hyponymy is often defined in terms of entailment between sentences which differ only in respect of the lexical items being tested: *It's an apple* entails but is not entailed by *It's a fruit*, *Mary slapped John* entails but is not entailed by *Mary hit John*. There are two sorts of difficulty with defining hyponymy in this way. One is that a sentence containing a hyponym does not invariably entail the corresponding sentence with the superordinate. For instance, although *It's a tulip* entails *It's a flower*, *It's not a tulip* does not entail *It's not a flower*, nor does *The fact that it was a tulip surprised Mary* entail *The fact that it was a flower surprised Mary*. Ideally, it ought to be possible to specify the sorts of sentence within which entailment holds; however, this turns out to be no easy task (see Cruse 1986: ch. 4.4 for some discussion).

The second difficulty is that such definitions are too restrictive (and perhaps fail to match native speaker intuitions in other ways, too). For instance, many informants judge *dog:pet* and *knife:cutlery* to be at least as good examples of hyponymy as *stallion:horse*, even though there is no entailment in the first two cases (at least on my interpretation of *cutlery*, according to which only eating implements qualify). The problem is that entailment needs to be context independent, whereas judgements of hyponymy are context sensitive. While it is true that not all dogs are pets, for most people, in the default context of everyday urban life, dogs ***are*** pets and perhaps the default context evoked by the lexical item *knife* out of context is the mealtime context.

Although hyponymy is a paradigmatic relation, it has syntagmatic consequences. There are expressions which prototypically require items related hyponymously:

apples and other fruit
?fruit and other apples
?apples and other pears
Apples are my favourite fruit.
?Apples are my favourite pears.
?Fruit are my favourite apples.

Rather than trying to define it in terms of necessary and sufficient criteria, perhaps the most illuminating way of approaching hyponymy (and a parallel treatment is possible for other sense relations) is to say that it is a relational concept with a prototype structure, that is, one which has good and less good

examples, but no clear definition or boundaries (see Chapter 7 for a more detailed exposition of prototype theory). The concept of hyponymy can be expressed in ordinary language as *X is a type/kind/sort of Y*. It is interesting that some pairs of words that satisfy the logical definition of hyponymy collocate more acceptably in this frame than others:

A horse is a type of animal.
?A kitten is a sort of cat. (A kitten is a young cat.)
?A stallion is a type of horse. (A stallion is a male horse.)
?A queen is a kind of woman. (A queen is a woman.)

In Cruse (1986) the relation exemplified by *horse:animal* but not *stallion:horse* was labelled **taxonymy**, because of its relevance to classificatory systems. Taxonyms typically resist (genuine) analysis in componential terms and do not have obvious definitions:

A stallion is a male horse.
A horse is a — animal.

Notice that *A horse is an equine animal* is a pseudo-definition, since any attempt at characterizing the meaning of *equine* will necessarily be along the lines of "horse-like" or "pertaining to horses". (See further discussion of this issue in Chapter 13.) There would seem to be two alternatives here: either we regard taxonymy as the prototypical form of hyponymy, with non-taxonyms like *stallion:horse* being less central (the approach adopted in Cruse (1994*b*)), or we recognize two separate relations, hyponymy and taxonymy, each with its own prototype structure, with good and less good examples, but no definition and no clear boundaries.

Understood as a purely logical notion, hyponymy is a transitive relation: if A is a hyponym of B, and B a hyponym of C, then A is necessarily a hyponym of C (consider A = *spaniel*, B = *dog*, C = *animal*). However, several cases where transitivity seems to break down have been pointed out:

A hang-glider is a type of glider.
A glider is a type of aeroplane.
*A hang-glider is a type of aeroplane.

A car-seat is a type of seat.
A seat is a type of furniture.
*A car-seat is a type of furniture.

A possible resolution of this apparent anomaly is to say that informants are not making their judgements in terms of hyponymy, but in terms of taxonymy, which is not defined logically, and is not transitive. What the informants are agreeing to in the case of the first two sentences in each set above is something like:

A prototypical hang-glider is a type of glider.

A prototypical glider is a type of aeroplane.
*A prototypical hang-glider is a type of aeroplane.

Transitivity breaks down here because a hang-glider is not a prototypical glider.

8.2.2 Meronymy

Another relation of inclusion is meronymy, which is the lexical reflex of the part-whole relation. Examples of meronymy are: *hand:finger*, *teapot:spout*, *wheel:spoke*, *car:engine*, *telescope:lens*, *tree:branch*, and so on. In the case of *finger:hand*, *finger* is said to be the **meronym** (the term **partonym** is also sometimes found) and *hand* the **holonym**. Meronymy shows interesting parallels with hyponymy. (They must not, of course, be confused: a dog is not a part of an animal, and a finger is not a kind of hand.) In both cases there is inclusion in different directions according to whether one takes an extensional or an intensional view. A hand physically includes the fingers (notice that we are not dealing with classes here, but individuals); but the meaning of *finger* somehow incorporates the sense of *hand*. (Langacker says that the concept "finger" is 'profiled' against the domain "hand".)

There is no simple logical definition of meronymy in terms of entailment between sentences, as there is with hyponymy. But the relation does none the less have logical properties, which are particularly manifest in connection with locative predicates. For instance, if X is a meronym of Y, then for an entity A, *A is in X* entails but is not entailed by *A is in Y*. For instance, a *cockpit* is part of an *aeroplane* (this is an oversimplification, but it will do for the moment), hence *John is in the cockpit* entails *John is in the aeroplane*. For similar reasons, *John has a boil on his elbow* unilaterally entails *John has a boil on his arm*. However, there are too many exceptions for it to be possible to frame a straightforward definition on this basis: for instance, *The wasp is on the steering-wheel* does not entail *The wasp is on the car*, but rather, *The wasp is* IN *the car*.

Meronymy can also be characterized in terms of normality in diagnostic frames, such as *An X is a part of a Y*, *A Y has an X/Xes*, and so on:

A finger is a part of a hand.
A hand has fingers.
?A hand is part of a finger.
?A finger has palms/wheels.

It soon becomes apparent, however, that such definitions do not yield clear-cut membership decisions for candidate pairs. Meronymy, even more strikingly than hyponymy, displays a prototypic character, and it seems more profitable to enquire into the features which contribute to centrality in the concept. The principal ones would seem to be the following:

8.2.2.1 Necessity

Some parts are necessary to their wholes, whereas others are optional. For instance, although a beard is part of a face, beards are not necessary to faces. On the other hand, fingers are necessary to hands. (We are not talking here of ***logical*** necessity, of course. This is what in Cruse (1986) was called **canonical necessity**: that is, a **well-formed** hand must have fingers.) Necessity also operates in the reverse direction, that is, some parts are non-canonical if they are not parts of appropriate wholes (e.g. finger), whereas some parts are capable of constituting satisfactory wholes on their own, and are only optionally parts of something else. Consider the case of a concert hall as part of a leisure centre. Presumably, other things being equal, necessity points towards centrality.

8.2.2.2 Integrality

Some parts are more integral to their wholes than others. One way of diagnosing integrality is by judging how easy it is to describe the part as being attached to its whole. For instance, both *The handle is a part of the door* and *The handle is attached to the door* are normal, as are *The hand is a part of the arm* and *The hand is attached to the arm*. On the other hand, *The fingers are attached to the hand* and *The handle is attached to the spoon* are both odd, and the difference seems to lie in the degree of integration of part into whole. Here again there seems to be a positive correlation between integrality and the centrality of a pair as manifestations of meronymy.

8.2.2.3 Discreteness

Some parts are more clearly divided from their sister parts than others (within a properly assembled whole). Obviously if they can be detached without harm, the division is clear. Likewise, if the part moves independently of the whole, like an arm with respect to the body, the division is clear. But some parts, such as the tip of the tongue, or the lobe of the ear, are less clearly separated. Other things being equal, we may presume that the more discrete a part is, the more prototypical the relation is.

8.2.2.4 Motivation

Generally speaking, 'good' parts have an identifiable function of some sort with respect to their wholes. For example, the handle of a door is for grasping and opening and shutting the door; the wheels of a car enable it to move smoothly over the ground; the blade of a knife is what enables the knife to fulfil its characteristic function of cutting, and so on. Functional motivation is especially important for a part which is not physically distinct, or is so only vaguely, like the tip of the tongue.

8.2.2.5 Congruence

The features of congruence are range, phase, and type.

(i) Range: in many (if not in most) cases, the range of generality of the meronym is not the same as that of the holonym. The most frequent non-congruent cases are first, when the meronym is more general than the holonym but completely includes it, in which case we may speak of a **supermeronym**, and second, when the two ranges overlap, in which case the term **semi-meronym** may be used. Examples of the former are: *handle:knife/umbrella*, *spout:teapot/watering can*, *wheel:car/train*, *leg:chair/table*, *switch:iron/lamp*, and *lens:glasses/microscope*, all of which may form part of different wholes, as illustrated. As an example of a semi-meronym, consider *handle:door*: there are doors without handles, and handles not attached to doors, so neither range includes the other.

(ii) Phase: parts and wholes are phase congruent when, as in prototypical cases, they exist at the same time. But take the case of *grape-juice:wine* or *flour:bread*. It does not seem wholly wrong to say that grape-juice is part of wine, or that flour is part of bread, but it does not seem right, either. It is more correct, in these cases, to speak of **ingredients**, which go toward the making of something, but may not exist as such in the final product.

(iii) Type: prototypical parts and wholes are of the same ontological type. I will not try to define this, but merely illustrate it. For instance, ideally, if a part is designated as a mass noun, then the whole should be likewise (*?A grain is a part of sand*, *?Wood is part of a table*). Think, too, of *vein:hand* and *nerve:leg* (as opposed to *palm:hand* and *calf:leg*, on the one hand, and *vein:vascular system* and *nerve:nervous system*, on the other). The consistent type pairs are somehow 'better'. (Cruse (1986) refers in such cases to **segmental parts** (leg, arm, finger) and **systemic parts** (nerve, vein, bone, etc.).)

It is interesting to compare 'parts' and 'pieces', with respect to the above criteria.

(a) Necessity: this criterion is difficult to apply, but there is no reason why, say, a vase should break in such a way that a particular piece was formed, so it seems that individual pieces are not necessary.

(b) Integrality: in the unshattered whole vase, there are no pieces, so this criterion is not applicable.

(c) Discreteness: pieces are discrete once they have been formed, but in the unbroken state of the relevant whole, they are not distinguishable, so it is probably fair to say that they are not discrete.

(d) Motivation: pieces are in principle arbitrary, and have no distinct function with respect to their wholes.

(e) Congruence:
  (i) range: pieces have a one-to-one relationship with their wholes and are therefore fully congruent with respect to range: a piece of one Ming vase that one has accidentally dropped cannot simultaneously be a piece of another;
  (ii) phase: in a sense there is a phase discrepancy between pieces and wholes: during the period when the canonical whole exists there are no pieces, and the canonical whole ceases to be, the moment the pieces are formed;
  (iii) type: pieces are always of the same ontological type as their wholes.

It should perhaps be added that pieces do not fall into stable categories that can be designated by common nouns; also pieces are exclusively concrete, whereas parts may not be: one can have, say, a **part** of a concert, but hardly a **piece** of a concert.

As with hyponymy, we would expect a logical conception of meronymy to be transitive: if A is wholly located within the confines of B, and B is wholly located within the confines of C, then A is necessarily wholly located within the confines of C. (Notice that the "piece of" relation is transitive in this way.) However, speakers' judgements of meronymy do not always point to transitivity:

Fingers are parts of the hand.
The hand is a part of the arm.
?Fingers are parts of the arm.

Cruse (1986) suggests that this failure of transitivity is connected with the distinction between **attachments** (i.e. parts of which it can normally be said that they are attached to their immediate wholes) and **integral parts** (i.e. parts that cannot be described in the above way). It seems that transitivity does not hold across the boundary of an attachment. However, it must be said that this correlation, even if valid, does not constitute an explanation.

8.2.3 Synonymy

If we interpret synonymy simply as sameness of meaning, then it would appear to be a rather uninteresting relation; if, however, we say that synonyms are words whose semantic similarities are more salient than their differences, then a potential area of interest opens up. What sorts of differences do not destroy an intuition of sameness? Why are such synonyms so frequent? (Absolute sameness of meaning would seem to be functionally unmotivated.) Do they proliferate in particular areas of the vocabulary? Some of these questions are insufficiently researched, and will not be answered here.

Let us first distinguish three degrees of synonymy: absolute synonymy, propositional synonymy, and near-synonymy.

8.2.3.1 Absolute synonymy

Absolute synonymy refers to complete identity of meaning, and so for the notion to have any content we must specify what is to count as meaning. Here a contextual approach will be adopted, according to which meaning is anything which affects the contextual normality of lexical items in grammatically well-formed sentential contexts. Against this background, absolute synonyms can be defined as items which are equinormal in all contexts: that is to say, for two lexical items X and Y, if they are to be recognized as absolute synonyms, in any context in which X is fully normal, Y is, too; in any context in which X is slightly odd, Y is also slightly odd, and in any context in which X is totally anomalous, the same is true of Y. This is a very severe requirement, and few pairs, if any, qualify. The following will illustrate the difficulty of finding uncontroversial pairs of absolute synonyms ('+' indicates "relatively more normal" and '–' indicates "relatively less normal"):

(i) *brave*:*courageous*

Little Billy was so brave at the dentist's this morning. (+)
Little Billy was so courageous at the dentist's this morning. (–)

(ii) *calm*:*placid*

She was quite calm just a few minutes ago. (+)
She was quite placid just a few minutes ago. (–)

(iii) *big*:*large*

He's a big baby, isn't he? (+)
He's a large baby, isn't he? (–)

(iv) *almost*:*nearly*

She looks almost Chinese. (+)
She looks nearly Chinese. (–)

(v) *die*:*kick the bucket*

Apparently he died in considerable pain. (+)
Apparently he kicked the bucket in considerable pain. (–)

Among the items sometimes suggested as candidates for absolute synonymy, and for which differentiating contexts are hard to find, are *sofa*:*settee*, and *pullover*: *sweater*. However, even for these items, in a typical class of students, a sizeable minority will find contexts which for them are discriminatory. One thing is clear, and that is that under this description absolute synonyms are vanishingly rare, and do not form a significant feature of natural vocabularies. The usefulness of the notion lies uniquely in its status as a reference point on a putative scale of synonymity.

Notice that by the definition given above, only one differentiating context is

needed to disqualify a pair of words as absolute synonyms. However, only one such context would be a suspicious circumstance: unless there was at least one class of such contexts, one might legitimately doubt whether the effect was a genuine semantic one. Notice, too, that there is a problem, not taken up here, of ensuring that the same unit of meaning is involved in all the contexts used in the argument.

8.2.3.2 Propositional synonymy

Propositional synonymy can be defined, as its name suggests, in terms of entailment. If two lexical items are propositional synonyms, they can be substituted in any expression with truth-conditional properties without effect on those properties. Put in another way, two sentences which differ only in that one has one member of a pair of propositional synonyms where the other has the other member of the pair are mutually entailing: *John bought a violin* entails and is entailed by *John bought a fiddle*; *I heard him tuning his fiddle* entails and is entailed by *I heard him tuning his violin*; *She is going to play a violin concerto* entails and is entailed by *She is going to play a fiddle concerto*. Notice that *fiddle* is less normal in the last example, while leaving truth conditions intact, which shows that *fiddle* and *violin* are not absolute synonyms.

Differences in the meanings of propositional synonyms, by definition, necessarily involve one or more aspects of non-propositional meaning, the most important being (i) differences in expressive meaning, (ii) differences of stylistic level (on the colloquial–formal dimension), and (iii) differences of presupposed field of discourse. Most usually, more than one of these comes into play at any one time. Take the case of *violin:fiddle*. Here the difference depends on certain characteristics of the speaker. If the speaker is an 'outsider' to violinistic culture, *fiddle* is more colloquial, and possibly also jocular compared with *violin*. However, if the speaker is a professional violinist talking to another professional violinist, *fiddle* is the neutral term, with no jocularity, disrespect, or colloquiality, whereas *violin* is used mainly to outsiders. In the case of *shin:fibula*, the difference is almost purely one of field of discourse: *shin* is the everyday term, with no special expressive or stylistic loading, whereas *fibula* is used by medical specialists acting in that role (again neutrally). As a final set of examples consider:

This was the first time they had had intercourse.
This was the first time they had made love.
This was the first time they had fucked.

The first version would be more likely than the others in a court of law, the second is probably the most neutral, while the third would be more likely in a typical novel found in an airport bookstall.

Propositional synonyms seem to be commonest in areas of special emotive significance, especially taboo areas, where a finely graded set of terms is often available occupying different points on the euphemism–dysphemism scale.

They also seem to be prevalent in connection with concepts which are applicable in distinct contexts, with differing significance and implications in those contexts.

8.2.3.3 Near-synonymy

The borderline between propositional synonymy and near-synonymy is at least in principle clear, even if decisions may be difficult in particular cases. The borderline between near-synonymy and non-synonymy, however, is much less straightforward and it is not obvious what principle underlies the distinction. Two points should be made at the outset. The first is that language users do have intuitions as to which pairs of words are synonyms and which are not. No one is puzzled by the contents of a dictionary of synonyms, or by what lexicographers in standard dictionaries offer by way of synonyms, even though the great majority of these qualify neither as absolute nor as propositional synonyms. The second point is that it is not adequate to say simply that there is a scale of semantic distance, and that synonyms are words whose meanings are relatively close. (This would explain the somewhat uncertain lower boundary of near-synonymy: people are typically vague as to what constitutes, say, an old woman, or a tall man.) The reason this is not adequate is that there is no simple correlation between semantic closeness and degree of synonymy. The items in the following are semantically closer as we go down the list, but they do not become more synonymous:

entity	process
living thing	object
animal	plant
animal	bird
dog	cat
spaniel	poodle
etc.	

In principle this list could continue indefinitely without ever producing synonyms. The point is that these words function primarily to contrast with other words at the same hierarchical level (see Chapter 10). In other words, a major function of *dog* is to indicate "not cat/mouse/camel/(etc.)", that is, to signal a contrast. Synonyms, on the other hand, do not function primarily to contrast with one another (this is what was meant by saying earlier that in the case of synonyms, their common features were more salient than their differences). In certain contexts, of course, they may contrast, and this is especially true of near-synonyms: *He was killed, but I can assure you he was* NOT *murdered, madam.*

Characterizing the sorts of difference which do not destroy synonymy is no easy matter. As a rough and ready, but not very explicit, generalization it may be said that permissible differences between near-synonyms must be either minor, or backgrounded, or both. Among 'minor' differences may be counted the following:

(i) adjacent position on scale of 'degree': *fog:mist*, *laugh:chuckle*, *hot:scorching*, *big:huge*, *disaster:catastrophe*, *pull:heave*, *weep:sob*, etc.;
(ii) certain adverbial specializations of verbs: *amble:stroll*, *chuckle:giggle*, *drink:quaff*;
(iii) aspectual distinctions: *calm:placid* (state vs. disposition);
(iv) difference of prototype centre: *brave* (prototypically physical):*courageous* (prototypically involves intellectual and moral factors).

An example of a backgrounded major distinction would be *pretty* ("female" presupposed) vs. *handsome* ("male" presupposed), the propositional meaning of both of which may be glossed as "good-looking". When the gender distinction is foregrounded, as in *man:woman*, the resulting terms are not synonymous. Saying why we get near-synonyms in a particular instance, rather than fully contrastive terms, is also difficult. A possibility is that contrastive terms appear when the conceptual differences have concrete behavioural consequences, as in technical and 'expert' fields. Much research remains to be done in the field of synonymy.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. Which of the following hyponym-superordinate pairs represent taxonymy?

sow:pig poodle:dog sheepdog:dog mother:woman cottage:house hailstone: precipitation ice:water teenager:person boot:footwear icing sugar:sugar

2. Classify the following pairs of words using the following categories:

(a) Central/prototypical examples of meronymy.
(b) Examples of meronymy, but non-central.
(c) Borderline cases.
(d) Not examples of meronymy.

Attempt to explain the degrees of centrality that you find in terms of a set of prototypical features:

belt:buckle	*shoe:lace*
jacket:lapel	*building:façade*
hand:vein	*bottle:cap*
beard:hair	*bread:crumb*
hot-water bottle:water	*omelette:egg*
colander:hole	*fork:prong*
finger:tip	*bed:sheet*
cassette-player:cassette	*candle:wick*
potato:peelings	*door:hinge*

3. Consider the following set of words:

brave courageous gallant valiant intrepid heroic plucky bold daring

(a) What types of synonymy are represented?
(b) Look the words up in a typical learner's dictionary, such as the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, or the *Collins Cobuild Dictionary*, and consider how adequately they are differentiated.

Suggestions for further reading

The pioneering work on sense relations is Lyons (1963) and (1968).

The topics of this chapter are discussed in greater detail in Cruse (1986), especially chapters 4 – 8. Cruse (1994*b*) proposes a prototype-theoretical treatment of sense relations; an initial attempt at a formal semantic approach can be found in Cann (1993), and a more developed treatment in Cann (forthcoming). For a psychologist's view of sense relations, see Chaffin (1992).

For a cross-linguistic (anthropological) treatment of meronymy, see Anderson (1978) and Brown (1976) and (forthcoming[b]).

CHAPTER 9

Paradigmatic relations of exclusion and opposition

9.1 Incompatibility and co-taxonymy	165	**Discussion questions and exercises**	175
9.2 Opposites	167	**Suggestions for further reading**	176

CHAPTER 9

Paradigmatic relations of exclusion and opposition

9.1 Incompatibility and co-taxonymy

9.1.1 Incompatibility

Very often a superordinate has more than one immediate hyponym (i.e. there are no intermediate terms), and among these, there is typically a set of terms each of which is related to all the others by the relation of incompatibility. An example of this is the set of terms denoting kinds of animal (under the superordinate *animal*):

superordinate *animal*
hyponyms *dog, cat, mouse, lion, sheep*, etc.

superordinate *horse*
hyponyms *stallion, mare, foal*

The relation between these hyponyms is an important and rather special one. It is not simple difference of meaning. Just as hyponymy can be thought of as a relation of inclusion, incompatibility is a relation of exclusion. This is easiest to grasp in its extensional manifestation: incompatibles are terms which denote classes which share no members. Hence, if something is a mouse, then it is not a dog, horse, or elephant: nothing in the world can belong simultaneously to the class of mice and the class of dogs. From the intensional point of view this is harder to picture, but easier in the case of obviously composite terms than for taxonyms. Take the case of *horse*, *stallion*, and *mare*:

horse = [ANIMAL] [EQUINE]
stallion = [ANIMAL] [EQUINE] [MALE]
mare = [ANIMAL] [EQUINE] [FEMALE]

In such cases we need to say that incompatibles are distinguished from their common superordinate by semantic features which cannot be simultaneously

present. This characterization is less satisfactory for co-taxonyms, where no distinct semantic features are identifiable.

It is important to understand that co-hyponyms are not necessarily incompatible in the above sense. For instance, *queen* and *mother* are both hyponyms of *woman*, but there is nothing to prevent someone who is a queen from at the same time being a mother. (In some cases, the compatibility of co-hyponyms is only apparent. For instance, *novel* and *paperback* at first sight seem to be compatible co-hyponyms of *book*. However, a closer study reveals that they are hyponyms of different sense units within the meaning of *book* (i.e. they are facets—see Chapter 6).) The co-hyponyms of each of the subunits are incompatibles in the orthodox way:

superordinate	*book* (TOME)
hyponyms	*paperback*, *hardback*
superordinate	*book* (TEXT)
hyponyms	*novel*, *biography*, *textbook*

9.1.2 Co-taxonymy

Hyponymy, the logical relation defined by entailment, was distinguished from taxonymy, the conceptual relation corresponding to *X is a kind/type of Y*. In the same way, incompatibility may be given a logical interpretation, defined by: *F(X)* unilaterally entails *not-F(Y)* (e.g. *It's a dog* entails but is not entailed by *It's not a cat*). The corresponding conceptual relation may then be called **co-taxonymy**. This is designated in ordinary language by *X is a different kind of Y from Z*. Co-taxonyms are not necessarily strict incompatibles; it is enough that prototypical cases should be mutually exclusive. Consider, for instance: *Members of our Women's Group come from all walks of life ... doctors, teachers, solicitors, housewives, students, prostitutes*. There is no ***logical*** reason why someone who is a housewife cannot at the same time be a solicitor or a student, but prototypically this is not the case, hence the intuitive well-formedness of the above co-ordinated list. Taxonymy in combination with co-taxonymy corresponds to a fundamental and vital mode of categorization of experience: successive subdivision into (prototypically) mutually exclusive subcategories.

9.1.3 Co-meronymy

A relation of exclusion parallel to that which holds between co-taxonyms holds also between co-meronyms. If X and Z are sister meronyms of Y, then if the relation is a strictly logical one, no meronym of X is simultaneously a meronym of Z. Speaking extensionally, if X′ and Z′ are parts of some individual Y′, then *A′ is a part of X′* unilaterally entails *A′ is not a part of Z′*. Put in another way, sister parts do not overlap. This strict logical relation holds between sister pieces, and pieces of pieces. However, if we think of meronyms

as designating concepts, these concepts are by no means as clear-cut as this picture indicates. In particular, the boundaries of parts often display a degree of vagueness which destroys the strict logical relationship. Consider the upper arm and the lower arm. Imagine that you are asked to indicate the extent of the upper arm, by, for instance, pointing; now indicate the extent of the lower arm. Did you not include the elbow in both demonstrations? This indeterminacy is a characteristic of joints.

We have seen a number of parallelisms between, on the one hand, taxonyms and co-taxonyms, and on the other hand, meronyms and co-meronyms. Further such parallels will be explored in Chapter 10.

9.2 Opposites

Everyone, even quite young children can answer questions like *What's the opposite of big/long/heavy/up/out/etc.?* Oppositeness is perhaps the only sense relation to receive direct lexical recognition in everyday language. It is presumably, therefore, in some way cognitively primitive. However, it is quite hard to pin down exactly what oppositeness consists of. The following points seem to be relevant (a full account will not be attempted here; see Cruse 1986 for a fuller treatment):

(i) Binarity: opposites are, of course, incompatibles by the definition given above: *X is long* entails *X is not short*. But they are not ***just*** incompatibles. There is nothing in the notion of incompatibility itself which limits the number of terms in a set of incompatibles; but there can only be two members of a 'set' of opposites. Hence, binarity is a prerequisite.

(ii) Inherentness: we must, however, distinguish between accidental and inherent binarity. There are, for instance, only two classes of buses on the '-decker' dimension, namely single-deckers and double-deckers. There may well be reasons, to do with stability and the height of bridges and so forth, for the absence of triple-deckers, but there is no ***logical*** reason. Likewise, there are only two sources of heat for cooking in the average suburban kitchen, namely gas and electricity; and only two sorts of hot drink served after lunch in the Senior Common Room at Manchester University, tea and coffee. But there is no more than the feeblest hint of oppositeness about *single-decker:double-decker*, *gas:electricity*, or *tea:coffee*. That is because the binarity is accidental and pragmatic, rather than inherent. By contrast, the possibilities of movement along a linear axis are logically limited to two: the binarity of the pair *up:down* is thus ineluctable, and they form a satisfactory pair of opposites. Inherent binarity can thus be considered a prototypical feature for oppositeness.

(iii) Patency: inherent binarity is necessary for a prototypical pair of opposites, but is not sufficient. Take the case of *Monday*:*Wednesday*. The time dimension is linear, and *Monday* and *Wednesday* are situated in opposite directions from *Tuesday*. Yet they do not feel at all like opposites. What is the difference between these and *yesterday* and *tomorrow*, which display a much more marked opposite character? It seems that in the case of *Monday* and *Wednesday*, their location in opposite directions along the time axis relative to Tuesday (and hence the binarity of their relationship) is not encoded in their meanings, but has to be inferred, whereas the directionality of *yesterday* and *tomorrow* relative to *today* is a salient part of their meaning. In Cruse (1986) this difference was referred to as **latent** as opposed to **patent** binarity. The patency of the binary relation can thus be added to the list of prototypical features of opposites.

Lexical opposites fall into a number of different fairly clearly distinguishable types, of which the four principal ones will be described here.

9.2.1 Complementaries

The following pairs represent typical complementaries: *dead*:*alive*, *true*:*false*, *obey*: *disobey*, *inside*:*outside*, *continue (V.ing)*:*stop (V.ing)*, *possible*:*impossible*, *stationary*: *moving*, *male*:*female*. Complementaries constitute a very basic form of oppositeness and display inherent binarity in perhaps its purest form. Some definite conceptual area is partitioned by the terms of the opposition into two mutually exclusive compartments, with no possibility of 'sitting on the fence'. Hence, if anything (within the appropriate area) falls into one of the compartments, it cannot fall into the other, and if something does not fall into one of the compartments, it must fall into the other (this last criterion distinguishes complementaries from mere incompatibles). Thus if we consider the conceptual domain of possible responses to a felicitous command (i.e. one where the issuer has authority over the recipient, the action required is both possible and not already carried out, the recipient can hear and understand the command and so on), it is clear that responses must fall into either the category of obedience, or that of disobedience. Likewise, an entity belonging to the realm of living things must either be alive or dead, and a concrete object must be either stationary or moving.

Complementarity can be given a strict logical definition:

F(X) entails and is entailed by not-F(Y)

From this it follows that *Y or X* is logically equivalent to *Y or not-Y*, which is a tautology; and *neither Y nor X* is equivalent to *neither Y nor not-Y*, which is a contradiction. Thus, *This proposition is either true or false* is a tautology, and *This proposition is neither true nor false* is a contradiction.

As we have observed with other sense relations, the logical definition of complementarity is probably too strict. Some pairs may satisfy the strong

definition (e.g. *continue V.ing:stop V.ing*, but in most cases we need to add a hedge of some sort, such as 'in normal circumstances', or perhaps 'prototypically', although this is not so straightforward. For instance, *neither male nor female* is not logically anomalous, even for an individual belonging to a normally gendered species, given the possibility of various developmental or genetic abnormalities and so forth. The same is true of *neither dead nor alive*. (It is also true that the point of transition from life to death is vague. But this is a different point. Here, one might argue that the linguistic division is sharp, although the mapping on to external reality is uncertain. What I am referring to is the possibility of exceptional states, such as zombification (the UNDEAD!), or the vampiric state, which are neither death nor life.) It should also be emphasized that virtually all complementaries display their characteristic properties only within certain specific domains.

9.2.2 Antonymy

The most extensively studied opposites are undoubtedly antonyms. (Note that **antonymy** is frequently used as a synonym for **opposite**; it is here used in the narrower sense introduced by Lyons 1963.) Antonyms, too, fall into several relatively well-defined groups. One of these has a fair claim to be the central variety, so this group will be described in some detail, and the others will be sketched in more briefly.

9.2.2.1 Polar antonyms

The following are examples of polar antonyms:

long:short	heavy:light	thick:thin
fast:slow	strong:weak	high:low
wide:narrow	large:small	deep:shallow

The main diagnostic features of polar antonyms are as follows:

(i) Both terms are fully gradable, that is to say, they occur normally with a wide range of degree modifiers: *very/slightly/rather/quite/a bit/too/long.* (Complementaries characteristically show some reluctance to be graded: *?very/slightly/a bit/too dead.*)

(ii) They occur normally in the comparative and superlative degrees: *long, longer, longest*; *light, lighter, lightest*. But even when used in the positive degree, they typically need to be interpreted comparatively in relation to some reference value. This is often contextually determined, but in the default case is usually some kind of average value for the class of entities denoted by the head noun. So, for instance, *a long poem* would, out of context, be taken to refer to a poem that was longer than the average poem. *My goodness! Isn't Tom tall?* would in all probability need a reference point drawn from the context, for example, "tall for his age", "tall since the last time I saw him", etc.

(iii) They indicate degrees of some objective, unidimensional physical property, prototypically one which can be measured in conventional units such as centimetres, kilograms, miles per hour, etc. One of the terms, when intensified, denotes a progressively higher value of the property (*very long* indicates more units of length than *long*), while the other term when intensified denotes a lower value of the property (*very short* denotes fewer units of length than *short*).

(iv) They are incompatibles, but not complementaries. Hence, *It's neither long nor short* is not a contradiction (it might be of average length), nor is *It's either long or short* a tautology.

(v) Comparative forms stand in a converse relationship (see below for further information on this relation): specifically, if X and Y are (polar) antonyms, and A and B are nouns, then *A is X-er than B* entails and is entailed by *B is Y-er than A*. (*A is heavier than B* entails and is entailed by *B is lighter than A*.)

(vi) The comparative forms of both terms are **impartial**, that is to say, use in the comparative does not presuppose that the term in the positive degree is applicable. Thus, *X is longer than Y* does not presuppose that X is long, similarly with *shorter*.

(vii) One of the terms yields an impartial question in the frame *How X is it?* and an impartial nominalization. Compare *How long is it?*, which merely enquires about length without any presuppositions, and *How short is it?* Similarly *Its length worries me* tells us nothing about whether 'it' is long or short, but *Its shortness worries me* indicates that 'it' is short. Notice that it is the term that indicates *more of* the relevant property that yields the impartial question: *How long/strong/big/thick/wide/fast is it?*

9.2.2.2 Equipollent antonyms

The two other main types of antonym can most easily be diagnosed by the impartiality or otherwise of their comparatives. In the case of **equipollent antonyms**, neither term is impartial (i.e. both are **committed**), hence, for instance, *hotter* presupposes "hot", and *colder* presupposes "cold". For this reason, both the following are odd:

?This coffee is cold, but it's hotter than that one.
?This coffee is hot, but it's colder than that one.

(It would be more normal to say *warmer* and *cooler*, respectively, in these situations.) Neither term yields a neutral *how*-question. Equipollent antonym pairs typically denote sensations (*hot:cold, bitter:sweet, painful:pleasurable*), or emotions (*happy:sad, proud of:ashamed of*).

9.2.2.3 Overlapping antonyms

With overlapping antonyms, for instance *good:bad*, one member yields an impartial comparative, and the other a committed comparative:

?John is an excellent tennis player, but he's worse than Tom.
John's a pretty useless tennis player, but he's better thanTom.

In this case, *good* yields a neutral *how*-question (*How good was the film?*), whereas *bad* gives a committed question (*How bad were the exam results?*). All overlapping antonym pairs have an evaluative polarity as part of their meaning:

good:bad kind:cruel clever:dull pretty:plain polite:rude

It is invariably the positively evaluative term which is associated with impartial use.

A property of overlapping antonyms that is worth pointing out is that of **inherentness**. Take the case of *bad:good*. If two bad things differ in degree of badness, one may, without oddness, describe one as *worse* than the other: *The weather last year was bad, but this year it was worse; This year's drought is worse than last year's*. However, of two bad things, it is not always possible to describe one as *better* than the other: *The weather is bad this year, but it was better last year* is fine, but *?This year's famine was better than last year's.* is odd. The general principle is that only things that are not inherently bad (i.e. where good examples are possible) can be described using *better*: inherently bad things can only be described as *worse*, and, furthermore, cannot be questioned using *How good . . . ?* (**How good is Mary's toothache?*).

9.2.3 Reversives

Reversives belong to a broader category of **directional opposites** which include straightforward directions such as *up:down*, *forwards:backwards*, *into:out of*, *north: south*, and so on, and extremes along some axis, *top:bottom* (called **antipodals** in Cruse (1986)). Reversives have the peculiarity of denoting movement (or more generally, change) in opposite directions, between two terminal states. They are all verbs. The most elementary exemplars denote literal movement, or relative movement, in opposite directions: *rise:fall*, *advance:retreat*, *enter:leave*. (Notice, however, that even in these cases it is the overall effective direction of movement from origin to goal which counts, not the details of the path traversed in between). The reversivity of more abstract examples resides in a change (transitive or intransitive) in opposite directions between two states: *tie:untie, dress:undress*, *roll:unroll*, *mount:dismount*.

Interestingly, the manner of the process or action seems to have little significance; at least it does not have to be the same for the two processes or actions. For instance, the action of tying a bow in a ribbon is likely to be rather different from the action of untying the same bow. What counts here is the fact

that in one case the ribbon starts out untied and ends up tied (for *tie*) and that in the other case it starts out tied and ends up untied (for *untie*).

9.2.4 Converses

Converses are also often considered to be a subtype of directional opposite. They are also, paradoxically, sometimes considered to be a type of synonym. There are valid reasons for both views. Take the pair *above*:*below*, and three objects oriented as follows:

A
B
C

We can express the relation between A and B in two ways: we can say either *A is above B*, or *B is below A*. The logical equivalence between these two expressions is what defines *above* and *below* as converses. But since both are capable of describing the same arrangement, a unique situation among opposites, there is some point in thinking of them as synonyms conditioned by the order of their arguments. Consider now, however, A and C in relation to B: clearly A is above B and C is below B, hence *above* and *below* denote orientations in opposite directions, and are therefore directional opposites.

Other converse pairs with a salient directional character are: *precede*:*follow*, *in front of*:*behind*, *lend*:*borrow* (the thing borrowed/lent moves away from or towards the person denoted by the subject of the verb), *bequeath*:*inherit*, *buy*:*sell* (a double movement, here, of money and merchandise). The directional nature of some converse pairs, however, is pretty hard to discern (*husband*:*wife*, *parent*:*offspring*, *predator*:*prey*), although it is perhaps not completely absent.

Converses may be described as **two-place** if the relational predicate they denote has two arguments (e.g. *above*:*below*) and **three-place** if it has three (e.g. *lend*: *borrow*: *A borrowed B from C*/*C lent B to A*); *buy*:*sell* are arguable four-place converses: *John sold the car to Bill for £5,000*/*Bill bought the car from John for £5,000*.

The members of a converse pair may not be congruent in respect of range. This is the case, for instance, with *doctor*:*patient*, since dentists, physiotherapists, and suchlike also have patients, and this destroys the strict logical relation, although it does not disqualify such pairs from being converses. (Here again, the logical definition is too strict.) A similar lack of congruence can be observed in *lecturer*:*student* and *rapist*:*victim*.

9.2.5 Markedness

The notion of **markedness** is often applied to pairs of opposites: one term is designated as the **marked** term and the other as the **unmarked** term of the opposition. Unfortunately, this concept is used in a variety of different ways

by different linguists, so it is necessary to be more specific. Lyons (1977) distinguishes three major conceptions of markedness, which may or may not coincide in a particular instance or type of instances. The first is **morphological markedness**, where one member of the opposition carries a morphological 'mark' that the other lacks. This mark is most frequently a negative prefix:

possible:impossible	happy:unhappy
kind:unkind	true:untrue

The second notion of markedness is distributional markedness: the unmarked term according to this conception is the one which occurs in the widest variety of contexts or context-types. By this criterion it could be argued that *long* is unmarked with respect to *short* because it occurs in a variety of expressions from which *short* is excluded:

This one is ten metres long.
What is its length?
How long is it? (neutral question)

The third notion of markedness is the most interesting in the present connection. Lyons gives it the name **semantic markedness**. According to this conception, the unmarked term is the one which is used in contexts where the normal opposition between the terms is neutralized, or non-operational. In such contexts, the meaning of the term is what is common to the two terms of the opposition. Take the case of *lion:lioness*. In *The lion and the lioness were lying together*, there is a sex contrast between the terms. But in *We saw a group of lions in the distance*, the sex contrast is neutralized, and the group may well contain both males and females. This notion can be applied to, for instance, antonyms, too. Thus, in the neutral question *How long is it?*, we can say that the normal contrast between *long* and *short* has been neutralized, and *long* refers to what is common to *long* and *short*, namely, the scale of length. (Notice that in some oppositions—those known as 'equipollent'—both terms are marked.)

The notion of markedness is sometimes applied to the terms of the opposition, and sometimes to uses of those terms. Hence, while *How **long** is it?* (with the intonation nucleus on *long*) represents an unmarked use of the unmarked term *long*, ***How** long is it?*, (with the intonation nucleus on *How*), represents a marked use of the same term, as it presupposes that the referent is long rather than short. Notice that our use of **impartial** cannot always be translated as **unmarked**. For instance, in the case of a comparative such as *shorter*, although it is impartial, because it does not presuppose the applicability of the default sense of *short*, it is not unmarked, because the contrast between *shorter* and *longer* is not neutralized.

9.2.6 Polarity

Another notion that is often applied to opposites is **polarity**, whereby terms are designated as **positive** and **negative**. This notion is used in an even greater variety of ways than markedness. The following are the main ones:

(i) **Morphological polarity**: one term bears a negative affix, the other does not.

(ii) **Logical polarity**: the determination of logical polarity depends on the fact that one negative cancels out another: if John is not not tall, then John is tall. The prototypical example of this is *true:false*. Is *true* to be analysed as equivalent to *not false*, or is *false* to be glossed "not true"? Which is the negative term and which the positive? The criteria for logical polarity give an immediate answer:

It's true that it's true. = It's true.
It's false that it's false. = It's true.

False suffers the reversal when applied to itself, and is thus the negative term. The following are further examples of the same phenomenon:

She succeeded in succeeding.
She failed to fail. (reversal)

A large measure of largeness.
A small measure of smallness. (reversal)

This is a good example of a good book.
This is a bad example of a bad book. (reversal)

In each of these cases, the item which produces reversal is the negative member of the pair.

(iii) **Privative polarity**: one term is associated with the presence of something salient, and the other with its absence. On this criterion, *alive* is positive and *dead* negative, because something that is alive possesses salient properties such as movement, responsiveness, consciousness, etc. which a dead thing lacks; *married* is positive and *single* negative, because a married person has a spouse, and a single person does not (notice that we have *unmarried*, but not **unsingle*); *dress* is positive and *undress* negative, because the end result of dressing involves the presence of clothes, whereas the end result of undressing involves the absence of clothes. This notion can be generalized to include "relative abundance" and "relative lack" (of some salient property). This move allows us to categorize *long*, *heavy*, *thick*, *wide*, *strong*, *fast*, and so on, as positive in this sense, because they denote a relative abundance of salient properties such as extension, weight, speed, and so on, compared with their partners *short*, *light*, *narrow*, etc.

(iv) **Evaluative polarity**: one term is evaluatively positive, or commendatory, and the other is negative. The obvious key example of this is *good:bad*. Other examples are: *kind:cruel*, *pretty:plain*, *clean:dirty*, *safe:dangerous*, *brave: cowardly*.

There is a relation between polarity and partiality: in the most general terms, positive members of a pair of opposites have the greater potential for impartial use. However, there are relations of dominance among the different types of polarity. For instance, evaluative polarity generally dominates privative polarity. Take the case of *clean:dirty*. The most natural analysis in terms of privativeness is that *clean* is the 'absence' term (*Cleanness is the absence of dirt*) and *dirty* the 'presence' term (*?Dirtiness is the absence of cleanness*). Yet it is *clean* that yields, for instance, a neutral question: *How clean is it?* This, however, is in accordance with the fact that *clean* is evaluatively positive. Similarly, privative polarity dominates logical polarity. Consider *far:near*; it seems that *far* is logically negative:

A is far from everything far from B.= A is near to B.
A is near to everything near to B. = A is near to B.

But *far* is privatively positive as it denotes the greater amount of the most salient property, namely distance. The neutral question *How far is it?* thus complies with privative rather than logical polarity. The exact details of these relationships remain to be worked out.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. Identify the types of opposition/exclusion relation exemplified by the following pairs:

   (i) *moving:stationary*
   (ii) *aunt:uncle*
   (iii) *engine:chassis (of car)*
   (iv) *possible:impossible*
   (v) *fall ill:recover*
   (vi) *black:white*
   (vii) *probable:improbable*
   (viii) *bequeath:inherit*
   (ix) *cricket:football*
   (x) *approve:disapprove*

2. Classify the following antonym pairs (as polar, equipollent, overlapping, privative, or implicit superlatives):

   far:near *happy:unhappy*
   beneficial:harmful *satisfied:unsatisfied*

happy:sad	*comfortable:uncomfortable*
brilliant:stupid	*polite:rude*
deep:shallow	*easy:difficult*
advantageous:disadvantageous	*thick:thin*
fat:thin	*rough:calm* (of sea)

Suggestions for further reading

Incompatibility is discussed in Cruse (1986: ch. 4.1); see also Cruse (1994*b*), and (forthcoming *a*) for a prototype account.

All aspects of oppositeness are discussed in Cruse (1986: chs. 9–11); see also Lehrer (1985). For later developments within this approach, particularly on antonymy, see Cruse (1992a) and Cruse and Togia (1995); for reversives, see Cruse (forthcoming *b*).

Alternative approaches to antonymy can be found in Lehrer and Lehrer (1982) (a formal account), and Mettinger (1994) (a structuralist approach).

CHAPTER 10

Word fields

10.1 Introduction

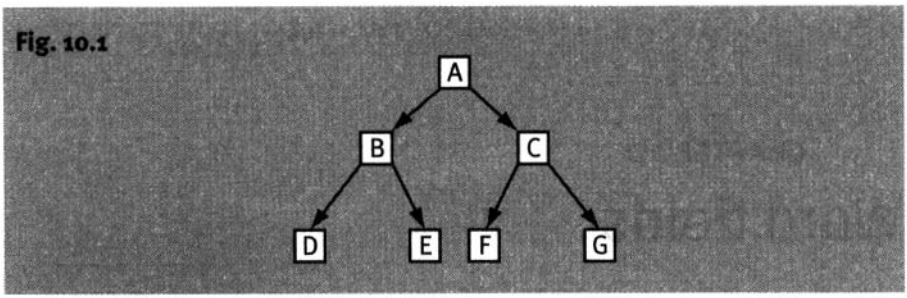
The vocabulary of a language is not just a collection of words scattered at random throughout the mental landscape. It is at least partly structured, and at various levels. In this chapter we look at some of those structures. There are various modes of structuring. It is useful, at the outset, to distinguish two major types of structure, the linguistic and the psycholinguistic. No one with a cognitive linguistic bias would be willing to concede that these might be independent; however, the connection might well be indirect. Linguistic structures in the lexicon are defined linguistically—those which we shall be concerned with here are defined semantically, in terms of meaning relations; psycholinguistic structures are defined in terms of such properties as associative links, priming characteristics, and patterns of speech error. Obviously a semantic structure will be reflected in some way in patterns of language use, and in that sense is necessarily 'psychologically real'. But the specific and characteristic psycholinguistic techniques of investigation may not reveal it as a coherent structure. The position taken here is that the two approaches are complementary; the rest of this chapter will concentrate on aspects of linguistic structuring in the lexicon.

Linguistic structures in the lexicon may have a phonological, grammatical, or semantic basis. Obvious examples of grammatical structuring are word classes (grouping of words according to their syntactic properties) and word families (sets of words derived from a common root). Here we shall be concerned with semantically defined structures, particularly those generated by sense relations, or sets of sense relations. We begin with those based on paradigmatic sense relations.

10.2 Hierarchies

One of the most important types of paradigmatic structure in the lexicon is the **branching hierarchy**, which prototypically has the form shown in Fig. 10.1.

Fig. 10.1



A given type of hierarchy can be characterized in terms of two relations, a **relation of dominance** and a **relation of differentiation**. The relation of dominance is the one which holds between A and B, A and C, B and D, B and E, C and F, and C and G in Fig. 10.1, and is symbolized by the lines joining the **nodes** (branching points). The relation of difference is the one which holds between B and C, D and E, and F and G. In a well-formed hierarchy, the relations of dominance and differentiation are constant throughout the structure.

A further characteristic of a well-formed hierarchy is that the branches never come together again as one descends the hierarchy; to put it in another way (the so-called unique mother constraint), for any element in the hierarchy except the highest (A in Fig. 10.1, sometimes called the **beginner**), there is one and only one element which immediately dominates it. Only certain types of relation guarantee this state of affairs.

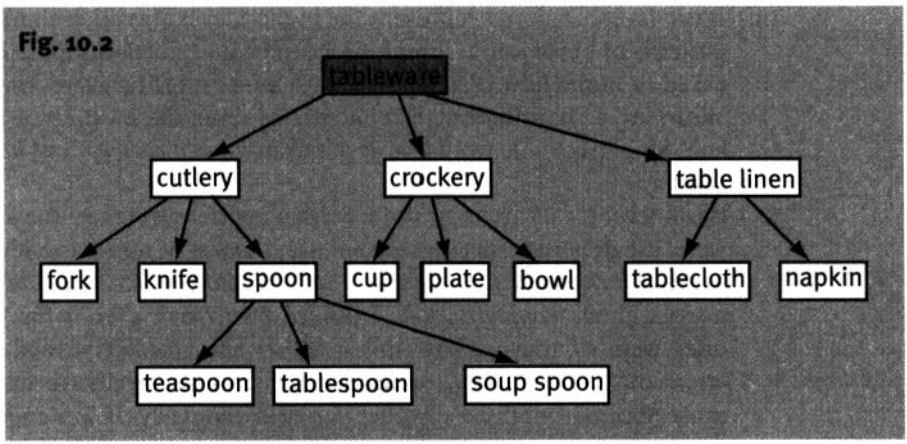
In a lexical hierarchy, which is the sort that concerns us here, A, B, . . . G correspond to lexical items (or more accurately, units of sense). There are two main sorts of lexical hierarchy, (i) taxonomic (or classificatory) hierarchies, in which the relation of dominance is taxonymy (or, more accurately, its converse, for which there is no special name) and the relation of differentiation is co-taxonymy, and (ii) meronomic (or part–whole) hierarchies, in which the relation of dominance is meronymy (or more accurately, holonymy) and the relation of differentiation is co-meronymy. We shall consider each of these in turn.

10.2.1 Taxonomic hierarchies

Taxonomic hierarchies are essentially classificatory systems, and they reflect the way speakers of a language categorize the world of experience. A well-formed taxonomy offers an orderly and efficient set of categories at different levels of specificity. An example of (part of) a taxonymy is given in Fig. 10.2.

10.2.1.1 Levels

A characteristic of taxonomic hierarchies is that they have well-developed levels. These can be clearly seen in Fig. 10.2. As illustrated, *tableware* is at level



1, *cutlery*, etc. at level 2, *fork* . . . *tablecloth* at level 3, and so on. Only four levels have been shown, but it is arguable that this is only a fragment of a larger hierarchy of something like *household goods*, in which the sister nodes to *tableware* would be occupied by such items as *appliances*, *furniture*, *soft furnishings*, and so on. Levels can be established in two ways, which in a prototypical hierarchy give the same answer, but in real-life hierarchies sometimes diverge. To determine the level of an element by the first method one simply counts the nodes to the top of the hierarchy (the unique item which dominates all the others in the hierarchy, the **beginner**) including the element in question. By this method, one can easily determine that *tablespoon* is at level 4. Levels established by counting nodes are called **technical levels** in Cruse (1986). The other approach to levels consists in looking for distinctive characteristics of the items at different levels. This approach yields **substantive levels**. The substantive level displaying the richest set of characteristic properties is undoubtedly what psychologists call the **basic level**, and anthropological linguists, the **generic level**. The basic level in the hierarchy illustrated in Fig. 10.2 is level 3.

10.2.1.2 The basic level

The main characteristics of the basic level and the items which occur there are as follows:

(i) Basic-level categories maximize two properties of 'good' categories: resemblance between members, and distinctiveness of members from those in sister categories. In categories at higher levels, internal resemblance diminishes; at lower levels, external distinctiveness diminishes. Basic-level categories are thus the most efficient in the whole hierarchy.

(ii) Basic-level categories represent the highest level for which a clear visual image can be formed. It is easy to visualize a spoon, but less easy to visualize an item of cutlery (without selecting one representative example). Likewise, a dog is easy to visualize, but an animal is not.

(iii) Basic-level categories represent the highest level for which characteristic patterns of behavioural interaction can be described. Suppose one were asked to mime how one behaved with an item of furniture. Impossible. With, say, a chair (a basic-level item), however, there would be no problem. Similarly, *knife* would be easier than *item of cutlery*, and *horse* than *animal*.

(iv) Basic-level terms are used for everyday neutral reference; they are, as it were, the default terms for normal use: the use of non-basic-level terms needs to be specially motivated. Thus, *Would you like an apple?* is more normal than *Would you like a Golden Delicious?*, even if the fruits on offer were of that variety, unless either the speaker wished to draw attention to the variety, or needed to be more specific to distinguish those apples from those of other varieties. Similarly, *Who's going to feed the dog today?* is generally more appropriate as a neutral question than *Who's going to feed the animal today?*, even in a situation where the less specific designation would be referentially successful, unless, of course, the additional emotive overtones observable with the more general term are intended.

(v) Anthropological linguists point out that basic-level items tend to be morphologically simple (this applies to all the items in our example except *tablecloth*) and not borrowed by metaphorical extension from other areas of the vocabulary.

10.2.1.3 Other levels

Vocabulary items at levels below the basic level are more likely to be compound words than those at the basic level (think of *teaspoon*, *tablespoon*, *soup spoon*, *coffee spoon*, *butter-knife*, *steak knife*, *cake fork*, etc.). In hierarchies where the basic-level items are count nouns, the items at higher levels are frequently mass nouns. This is particularly the case for artefacts (or more generally, words in whose meaning functional rather than perceptual features are dominant), that is, not for biological species: *cutlery*, *crockery*, *furniture*, *stationery*, *underwear*, *hosiery*, *poultry*.

10.2.1.4 Number of levels

Research by anthropological linguists has shown that taxonomic hierarchies which appear in everyday language rarely have more than five or six levels, and even this number is uncommon: they mostly occur in small fragments. Our example has four levels, five if we include *household goods*. The number limitation does not apply to expert, technical vocabularies.

10.2.1.5 Gaps and autotaxonymy

Lexical gaps are not infrequent in taxonomic hierarchies, especially in levels above the basic level. We speak of a lexical gap when there is intuitive or other

evidence of the existence of a well-established concept corresponding to the point in the structure where the gap occurs. For instance, there is no superordinate (in English) for the set of verbs of "going under one's own steam on land" (for an animal or human), whose hyponyms would be *crawl*, *walk*, *run*, *hop*, etc. Nor is there a word for the general notion of "going under one's own steam", whose hyponyms would include the (missing) word just mentioned, together with *swim* and *fly*, and so on. There is no everyday term for devices for telling the time (*timepiece* belongs to a different register from *clock* and *watch*). There is no everyday term in English for members of the animal kingdom (equivalent to *bête* in French, or *beastie* in Scottish): *creature* is from a more formal register, and *animal* in this sense (as in *the animal kingdom*) only occurs in technical registers.

Sometimes (what would otherwise be) a gap in a hierarchy is filled by an extended sense of an item immediately above or below it, thus creating an example of autotaxonymy: one reading of a lexical item functioning as a taxonym/superordinate of another (it is not always easy to tell which is the original sense and which the extended sense). The following are examples of this:

(**1a**) A: Haven't you got any trousers[1] to wear?
B: Yes, I've got my new jeans.

(**1b**) A: Are you going to wear your jeans?
B: No, I think I'll wear my trousers[2]

(**2a**) Potatoes[1] are one of the most nutritious of all vegetables.
(**2b**) Do you want any vegetables, or just potatoes[2]?

(**3a**) A: I hear they've bought a house[1]?
B: Yes, a lovely cottage near Netherfield.

(**3b**) A: Do they live in a cottage?
B: No, in a house[2].

In all the above, the readings marked with a superscript 1 are superordinates of those marked 2.

10.2.1.6 Real-life taxonomies

We have so far been discussing what in some ways are ideal taxonomies. However, real-life taxonomies are often not so straightforward: branches seem to converge and the position in the hierarchy of common lexical items may seem obscure. One of the complicating factors is the existence of terms with a restricted perspective alongside the purely or predominantly speciating ('kind-forming', i.e. taxonymic) terms. The field of clothing will be used to illustrate these points. We shall take *clothing* as the beginner of the clothing taxonomy (notice that there is arguably a more inclusive taxonomy of "things you can wear", which would include, for instance, watches and perfume). The first true

taxonyms we encounter as we go down the hierarchy are those at the basic level: *trousers*, *jacket*, *dress*, *skirt*, *shoe*, *bra*, *knickers*. There seems to be no intermediate level corresponding to *cutlery* and *crockery* in the tableware hierarchy. However, the picture is complicated by the existence of various sorts of restricted perspective-terms, which look at first as though they were the counterparts of *cutlery* and so on. Some of the perspectives are:

where worn relative to body:	*underwear*, *footwear*
when worn:	*evening wear*, *nightwear*
who wears it + only visible to intimates:	*lingerie*
worn while doing what:	*sportswear*, *slumberwear*

There is no term for everyday, publicly observable, not-for-special-purpose clothing; this type functions as a kind of unnamed default category, only deviations from which are lexically distinguished. Notice the following points. A further specification of 'lingerie' would need to mention *vest*, *knickers*, *nightie*, *pyjamas*. But the first two are underwear, and the latter are night/slumberwear. However, men's vests and men's pyjamas are not lingerie. If we call the default clothing *neutralwear*, then a reading of *dress*, let's call it *dress*[1], will appear amongst its taxonyms/hyponyms. But this is a hyponym of a more general reading of *dress*, *dress*[2], which includes both *dress*[1] and *evening dress*. *Tennis shoe* is a hyponym of *sportswear*, but *shoe* is also hyponymic to *evening wear* and *footwear*. All this makes it virtually impossible to construct a well-formed hierarchy from clothing terms. The appearance of chaos can be mitigated if we bear in mind the following points:

(i) Neat hierarchies appear only if the perspective is kept constant; if this is not the case, cross-classification can occur.
(ii) Each perspective potentially yields a separate hierarchy.
(iii) Different hierarchies can intersect in various ways
(iv) With the possible exception of hierarchies with unmarked perspective, the elements in taxonomic hierarchies are not full lexical senses, but contextually circumscribed subsenses.

We might thus expect to be able to establish well-formed, but partial, hierarchies under specific perspectives. An example might be the WHERE WORN perspective, whose beginner would not be lexicalized, but which would have as hyponyms:

underwear, *footwear*, *headwear*

These all seem to be mutually exclusive, with no common descendants/ convergent branches. Another perspective might be OCCASION/FUNCTION, again with a non-lexicalized beginner, whose hyponyms would include:

evening wear, *sportswear*, *leisurewear*, *slumberwear*, *outdoor wear*

These are less obviously distinct, in that some items could arguably fall under

more than one heading (e.g. *anorak*). But if we say that the nodes of the hierarchy are occupied by subsenses (that is to say, for example, that a leisure-wear anorak is different from a sportswear anorak), then the well-formedness of the hierarchy can be preserved.

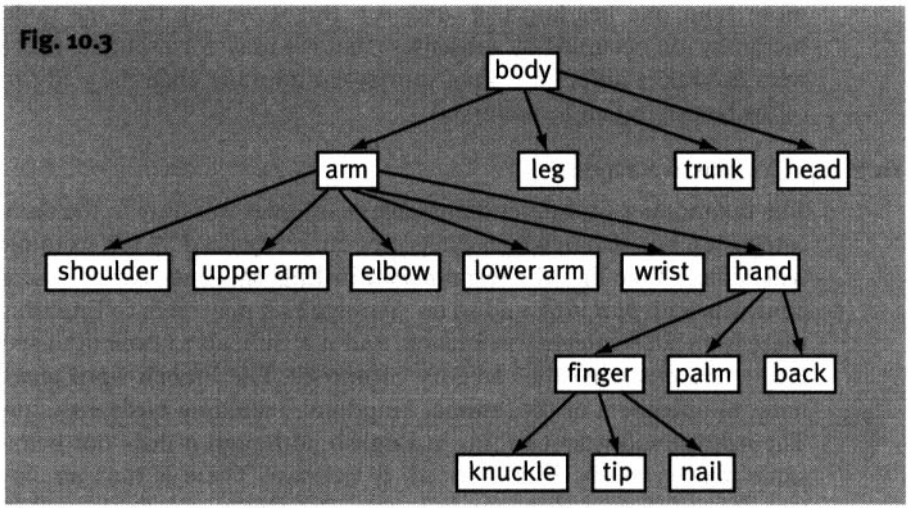
10.2.1.7 Contrastive aspects

The taxonomies of different languages can differ not only in the names of the categories, but also in which categories are recognized. A few examples of this will suffice. Take first the term *animal* in English, in its everyday sense which contrasts with *bird*, *fish*, and so on. Strange as it may seem to English speakers, there is no such category in French, and it is difficult to explain to speakers of French exactly what the category comprises. The French word *animal* designates all members of the 'animal kingdom', including birds, fish, insects, etc. The nearest equivalent to this in English, although it does not belong to the same register as the French word, is *creature*. There is thus no single word translation of *animal* in, for instance, *The Observer's Book of British Wild Animals*; it has to be rendered as something like *Les Mammifères, Reptiles et Amphibiens Sauvages de la Grande Bretagne*. Another similar case is *nut* in English, which again has no equivalent in French (nor in German). For English speakers, *walnuts*, *hazelnuts*, and *almonds* belong to a single category, namely that of *nuts*; there is no such category for a French speaker (or thinker!). (There is a ***botanical*** category of 'dry fruit', but most French speakers do not know it.) Other examples: in French, *une tarte aux pommes* is a kind of *gâteau*, but an *apple tart* is not a kind of *cake*; in French, *la marmelade* belongs firmly in the category of *confiture*, but *marmalade* is felt by English speakers not to be a kind of *jam*; in German, an *Obstgarten* is a kind of *Garten*, but an *orchard* is not a kind of *garden* for an English speaker. These sorts of examples could be multiplied indefinitely.

10.2.2 Meronymic hierarchies

The second major type of lexical hierarchy is the meronomy, in which the relation of dominance is (the converse of) meronymy, and the relation of differentiation is co-meronymy. Probably the most familiar of the extensive meronomies is the segmental version of the human body as seen from the outside, as shown in Fig. 10.3.

Some of the details of this hierarchy are disputable; for instance, whether shoulders are parts of arms, as shown, or parts of the trunk. Commonly encountered machines also have well-developed meronomies associated with them, but few people who are not experts could give a full account of the parts of a car, washing machine, or computer. Most of our knowledge is in the form of fragments of meronomies.



10.2.2.1 Levels

The major formal difference between a taxonomy and a meronomy is the lack of clear generalized levels in the latter. In a sense the body meronomy illustrated is uncharacteristic because of the homologies between the arm and the leg: *knee* corresponds to *elbow*, *sole of foot* to *palm of hand*, *toes* to *fingers*, etc. But this does not extend to other parts of the body. Speakers have no intuitions as to whether, for instance, the *fingernail* is or is not at the same level as the *anus*, or, in a different domain, the *hub-cap* to the *seat cushions* or the *carburettor jets*. For this reason, there seems to be no equivalent to the basic level of a taxonomy, no unmarked level of specificity independent of context. Of course there are unmarked levels of specificity in particular contexts, but these appear to be governed by something like Gricean principles (see Chapter 17). For instance, one would be more likely to say *Mary felt someone touching her arm* than *Mary felt someone touching her upper arm*: the latter would require special contextual conditions. (Even though the arm is part of the body, *Mary felt someone touching her body* would be interpreted differently.) On the other hand, *Ahmad came into view, the falcon chained to his wrist* would be more likely than *Ahmad came into view, the falcon chained to his arm* (it is not immediately clear why this is so).

10.2.2.2 Lexical gaps

In a taxonomic hierarchy, the beginner is frequently not lexicalized. This is never the case in a meronomy. Gaps do occur, however, and most often in a characteristic position: not infrequently, the main functional part has no name, and speakers are embarrassed if they are asked to supply it. For instance, what do we call the part of a *teapot* to which the *spout*, *handle*, and

lid are attached? Some people reply: *But that is the teapot* other responses are *bowl* and *body*. But there seems to be no fully established term. Another example: a *spoon* has two main parts, the *handle* and the *?????*. Again the response is usually hesitation and embarrassment, with some again suggesting *bowl* and *body*. Yet another example concerns the part of a pair of spectacles to which the arms are attached.

Some apparently 'accidental' gaps are found, such as the part of a *fork* to which the *prongs* are attached (or, indeed, the part of the *hand* to which the *fingers* are attached, and of which the *palm* and the *back* are parts). These are, however, relatively rare. In some cases we find **automeronymy**, that is, when part and immediate whole have the same name (but distinct senses, cf. autohyponymy). A good example of this is to be found in the human body meronomy. The term *body* is used both (i) for the whole ensemble and (ii) as a close equivalent to *trunk* (it is, in fact, perhaps the more usual term). It is *body* in sense (ii) which is the metaphorical source of the suggestions of *body* for the main parts of *teapot* and *spoon*. Other possible examples of this are *arm*, in two senses, one which includes *hand* and one which excludes *hand*, and *wheel*, which has two senses, one including and the other excluding *tyre*.

10.2.2.3 Contrastive aspects

Languages typically show differences in respect of the way wholes are divided into lexically distinguished parts, although there are reasons to believe that the underlying principles are more or less universal. This means that differences are mostly confined to (i) different groupings of the same smaller units, and (ii) differences in how far subdivision is carried. Radically non-congruent divisions are rare. An example of (i) is provided by English and Modern Greek in respect of divisions of the arm. In English, *hand* extends to the wrist and no further; in Modern Greek (which is not unique in this respect), *xeri* goes up to the elbow. There is a parallel relation between *foot* and *podi*: the latter extends to the knee. Notice that both systems respect the joints as natural boundaries for parts. Which part of *xeri* is being referred to in a particular instance is left to context to determine (there is rarely any ambiguity). But since the part of *xeri* which corresponds to *hand* is the most salient part, and overwhelmingly the most frequently involved in activities and so on, in the vast majority of contexts, little is lost by translating, or otherwise equating *hand* and *xeri*.

The other type of difference appears when one language provides finer divisions than another. One might say, for instance, that *pommette* in French is a subdivision of the part denoted in English by *cheek* (and French *joue*). The *pommette* is the rounded part of the cheek over the cheekbone; *cheekbone* will not do as an equivalent, because one cannot say *She has red cheekbones*, whereas in French one can say *Elle a les pommettes rouges* (this would go into English as *red cheeks*). Another example is the Turkish word *ense*, which means "back of the neck". It is worth asking whether the absence of an English equivalent for *pommette* or *ense* represents a **lexical gap** or a

conceptual gap. This distinction is by no means always easy to make, although there are clear cases. For instance, for French speakers, there is no natural category to which peanuts, almonds, and walnuts belong (English "nuts"), nor one which includes rabbits and frogs and crocodiles, but excludes birds and fish (English "animals"). Here we have a conceptual gap. On the other hand, English speakers would probably agree that there was a useful concept of "animal locomotion", but since we have no verb denoting just that, we can speak of a lexical gap. In the case of *pommette*, there is probably a conceptual gap: English speakers feel no need to single out this area of the cheek. The case of *ense* (cf. French *nuque*) is less clear. The concept is easy enough to grasp for English speakers, but then so are concepts like "the right side of the head" and "the underside of the tongue", which English speakers can construe when necessary, but which would not be felt to be salient enough to merit lexical recognition. It might also be relevant to ask whether there is any sign of (incipient) lexification of *back of the neck*, such as non-compositional specificity of meaning (as in the case of *blackbird*), or morphological evidence such as the existence of *fingertip*, but not **nosetip* alongside *tip of the finger* and *tip of the nose*: these would point to the emergence of a lexifiable concept. All things considered, my intuition is that *ense*, like *pommette*, does not designate a viable concept for an English speaker.

Meronomic systems of different languages also differ in the way analogous parts of different wholes are grouped for naming purposes. For instance, in French, the handle of a door, the handle of a suitcase, and the handle of a pump would be given different names (for a door, *bouton* (if round, otherwise *poignée*); for a suitcase, *poignée*; for a pump, *manivelle*). They may also differ in the way similar parts of the same whole are grouped for naming purposes. For instance, in English, we distinguish one of the digits of the hand from all the others by means of the term *thumb*; there is a sense of *finger* which excludes *thumb*: *The hand has four fingers and a thumb* (as well as one which includes *thumb*: *five-finger exercises*). In Turkish, no such distinction is made among the digits of the hand, although the thumb, like the other digits, can be distinguished by the expression *büyük parmağı* ("big finger"—cf. English *big toe*).

One further point deserves mention. Many languages designate the digits of the hand and those of the foot by unrelated terms (*finger*, *toe*); many others, however, call the digits of the foot by a name equivalent to *foot-fingers* (e.g. *doigts de pied* in French). It is claimed that the reverse process, naming the fingers *hand-toes*, never occurs, and that this is motivated by the cognitive salience of the hand as opposed to the foot. This may well be the case, but perhaps the claim should not be made too strongly. I would not find it unnatural to refer to the *heel of the hand*.

10.3 Linear structures

10.3.1 Bipoles

The simplest kind of linear structure is a pair of opposites. But there is perhaps not a great deal to say about these as structures, other than what has been said under the heading of opposites in Chapter 9.

10.3.2 Bipolar chains

However, the scale on which a pair of opposites operates is often host to a number of terms which denote different degrees of the property. The most frequent pattern is for **implicit superlative** terms of opposite polarity at each end of the scale (there is a polarity switch between the basic antonym pair):

minuscule tiny small large huge gigantic

Implicit superlatives in English can be recognized by a number of features:

(i) They are resistant to verbal grading compared with normal antonyms: *very huge*, *huger*, *extremely tiny*, *very minuscule*, etc. are all to some degree (some more than others) odd (although comparatives are usually happier with *even*: *The first one was huge, the second one was even huger*).

(ii) They can be prosodically graded, by varying the pitch range of an intonational fall carried by the adjective—the greater the fall, the higher the degree of the underlying property; normal antonyms sound odd with this intonation.

(iii) They can be modified by a low-pitch unstressed *absolutely*:

absolutely huge! absolutely tiny! ?absolutely large!

(iv) They resist affixation of *-ish*:

largish, smallish, *hugish, *minusculish

Further examples of such chains are:

spotless clean dirty filthy

fantastic excellent good bad awful abysmal

beautiful pretty plain ugly

adore love like dislike hate abominate

The temperature terms in English illustrate two much less frequent phenomena in bipolar scales: **attenuative** terms as well as implicit superlatives (i.e. *warm* and *cool*), which occupy a position on the scale between the basic antonyms, and a term which covers the mid-point between the basic pair of

opposites (*lukewarm*), which has no polarity (does *more lukewarm* indicate a higher or lower temperature than *lukewarm*?):

freezing cold cool lukewarm warm hot scorching

10.3.3 Monopolar chains

In monopolar chains, there is no sense that terms at the ends of the chains are oriented in opposite directions. There are various different types of monopolar linear lexical structures. There are also various possible ways of describing and classifying them. The following system largely follows Cruse (1986).

10.3.3.1 Degrees

Degrees incorporate as part of their meaning different degrees of some continuously scaled property such as size or intensity, but there is no relation of inclusion. Their boundaries are typically vague, and they have intuitively not lost all their gradability. We can distinguish cases where the terms actually designate values of the underlying property from those which do not, but encapsulate values of a gradable property. Examples of the former type are:

fail pass distinction

An example of the second type is:

mound hillock hill mountain

Notice that these encapsulate some notion of size, but do not actually refer to sizes, but to types of earth protuberance. Other examples are:

haze	mist	fog	pea-souper	
chuckle	laugh	guffaw		
glance	look	stare		
puddle	pond	lake	sea	ocean
breeze	wind	gale	hurricane	

10.3.3.2 Stages

Stages are points in a lifecycle (taken in a broad sense) of something and normally involve the notion of progression:

primary	secondary	undergraduate	postgraduate
infancy	childhood	adulthood	old age
egg	larva	pupa	butterfly

10.3.3.3 Measures

Measures are based on a part–whole relationship, with each whole divided into a number of identical parts; there is typically a geometrical relationship between values of the scaled property designated by adjacent terms:

second minute hour day week month (etc.)

inch	foot	yard	(etc.)	mile
ounce	pound	stone	(etc.)	ton

10.3.3.4 Ranks

In ranks the underlying property does not vary continuously, but in discrete jumps; there is none the less something that a term has more or less of than its neighbours:

lecturer	senior lecturer	reader	professor
private	corporal	sergeant	

In the above cases, the underlying property can be considered to be something like "seniority". But notice that this does not vary gradually: one sergeant cannot outrank another.

The cardinal integers can be considered to fall under this heading, the variable property being "numerosity" (which again, does not vary continuously: no group of twelve items can outnumber another group of twelve items). The levels of a taxonomic hierarchy are also ranks:

variety	species	genus	family

10.3.3.5 Sequences

In all the above cases, there is some property which an item has more of than items which precede it in the sequence, and less of than items which follow it. However, there are also ordered terms for which this does not seem to be the case; these are called **sequences**. There is nothing that Tuesday has more of than Monday:

Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday
January	February	March	April
Spring	Summer	Autumn	Winter
morning	afternoon	evening	night

These categories should not be taken too seriously: it will be noticed that several sets could be considered under more than one heading. There may be a satisfactory taxonomy, but it has not been found yet: it may be better to think in terms of features which cross-classify.

10.4 Grids

Grids are generated by recurrent concrete sense relations, or, which comes to much the same thing, by recurrent (and therefore independent) semantic components. The unit of a grid is the cell, which consists of four lexical items, any one of which must be uniquely predictable from the remaining three. The following are examples of cells:

(i)	man	woman	(ii)	hand	finger
	ram	ewe		foot	toe
(iii)	dog	puppy	(iv)	take	steal
	cat	kitten		kill	murder

These can be given componential analyses as follows:

(i)	[X] [MALE]	[X] [FEMALE]
	[Y] [MALE]	[Y] [FEMALE]
(ii)	[X]	[X] [DIGIT]
	[Y]	[Y] [DIGIT]
(iii)	[X]	[X] [YOUNG]
	[Y]	[Y] [YOUNG]
(iv)	[V.(1)]	[V.(1)] [ILLEGALLY]
	[V.(2)]	[V.(2)] [ILLEGALLY]

Notice that the following is not a well-formed cell:

flower	tulip
animal	cat

In a sense, the relation of taxonymy recurs, here. But the criterion of full predictability of any item from the other three is not met. Prediction is possible in one direction:

flower	tulip
?	cat

But in the other direction prediction is not possible:

flower	tulip
animal	?

A word needs to be said about the relations involved in these structures. In many cases, these are simply concrete versions of already familiar relations. Consider (ii). The relation between *hand* and *finger* is (a concretely specified version of) the familiar one of meronymy, and that between *hand* and *foot* is (a concretely specified version of) co-meronymy. But what of the relation between *finger* and *toe*? They are not co-meronyms, because they are not parts of the same (immediate) whole. This is a new relation, which appears only in connection with recurrent concrete relations: in Cruse (1986) terms related as *finger* and *toe* are, are termed **analogues** (the relation may be called **analogicity**). Another example of analogicity is:

captain	team
headmaster	school
vice-chancellor	university
boss	business
governor	prison

The terms on the right are analogues (of one another).

It is clear that the introduction of concrete relations has brought with it whole new dimensions of structuring in the lexicon. An important and interesting question is whether there is a finite number of such structures, or whether the number is indefinitely large. Even if the number turns out to be indefinitely large, there is still a question of whether the number of distinct relations is finite (indefinitely large structures could in principle be generated from a finite number of relations). No firm position will be taken on this point here; but it bears mention that some linguists believe the number to be limited (one suggestion is 53!).

All the grids illustrated above have been paradigmatically consistent. But there is nothing in the notion of a grid which imposes paradigmatic constraints. The following are well-formed grid cells:

pen	write	bird	fly	dog	bark
spade	dig	fish	swim	cat	miaow

However, there must be a paradigmatic relation between analogues; for instance, anything which bears the same relation to something else as *pen* does to *write*, or *spade* to *dig*, must be a noun.

10.5 Clusters

Clusters are essentially groups of synonyms. The name is intended to indicate that the sharpness and complexity of structuring is much less than in other types of field: they are somewhat informal groups. There are two main types of cluster, the centred cluster and the non-centred cluster.

10.5.1 Centred clusters

A centred cluster has a more-or-less clear core of one or two items, and a penumbra of more peripheral items. Among the characteristics of the core items are:

(i) They are expressively neutral.
(ii) They are stylistically unmarked, that is, they occur in a wider range of registers than any of the other terms.
(iii) They are propositionally superordinate.

In the set: *die*, *pass away*, *pop off*, *decease*, *breathe one's last*, *kick the bucket*, *die* is clearly the core member: it is expressively neutral, and stylistically unmarked. Feature (iii) is not applicable, since the members of the set are all propositional synonyms.

In the set: *walk*, *amble*, *stroll*, *stride*, *saunter*, *walk* is the core item: there is no marked expressive variation in this set, but *walk* is stylistically unmarked, and

is a superordinate of all the others. Although *amble*, *stroll*, and so on are hyponyms of *walk*, they do not form a satisfactory hierarchy, because the relation of difference is too weak: there is considerable overlap between, say, *amble* and *stroll*, which can be differentiated only by examining their prototype centres.

In the set: *brave*, *courageous*, *intrepid*, *gallant*, *fearless*, *valorous*, *heroic*, *plucky*, there are two candidates for the core, *brave* and *courageous*. The criteria do not favour either one of these, they are both relatively unrestricted contextually compared with their fellows, so we must recognize a two-member core.

10.5.2 Non-centred clusters

In non-centred clusters, the items spread over a spectrum of sense, but there is no superordinate item. Typically they display very slight propositional differences, which do not destroy synonymy as long as the items are reasonably close together on the spectrum, but may not be felt to be synonyms if they are widely separated. Typical examples are (taken as referring to sounds):

rap, *tap*, *knock*, *slap*, *thwack*, *crack*, *bang*, *thump*, *bump*, *pop*, *tick*, *click*, *ring*, *tinkle*, *clink*, *clank*, *jingle*, *jangle*, *ping*, . . .

Clusters may overlap: this is unusual and non-canonical in taxonomic and meronomic hierarchies. For instance, the following two clusters overlap:

(i) *unusual*, *rare*, *uncommon*, *infrequent*, etc.
(ii) *odd*, *queer*, *strange*, *weird*, *peculiar*, *extraordinary*, *alien*, etc.

Group (i) consists of words denoting low frequency of occurrence, whereas the words in group (ii) denote unfamiliarity (of course, these notions are not unconnected). Although the groups are in a sense distinct, intuitively, *unusual*, *odd*, and *strange* (at least) are felt to be synonyms.

10.6 Miscellaneous types

We have now dealt, albeit briefly, with the major types of word field that can be treated in terms of characteristic structures. There are other important groupings of words, for which the notion of structure seems less appropriate. Two examples will be mentioned. First, there are the so-called **word families**. These are words derived from a common root, like *cook* (v.), *cook* (n.), *cookery*, *cooker*, *cooking* (n.), etc. Of course there are semantic processes at work here which recur with other roots, but there does not seem much to say about this group of words (or other similar ones) **as a group**. Second, there are groupings of words by, for instance, register, as in colloquial or formal use, or by field of discourse, such as the vocabulary appropriate for (and possibly

restricted to) a religious sermon, a legal document, or a medical textbook. Again, as structures these have no particularly striking properties.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. Construct the best lexical hierarchies you can from the following sets of words, noting any difficulties. For Set A you will need to supply a number of superordinates.

(A)	*tablecloth*	*wine glass*	*table mat*	*salt*
	napkin	*teaspoon*	*breadknife*	*coaster*
	tumbler	*vinegar*	*water jug*	*fork*
	cake dish	*saucer*	*napkin ring*	*knife*
	butter-knife	*corkscrew*	*cake-slice*	*pepper*
	breadboard	*butter dish*	*soup spoon*	*teaspoon*
	serving spoon	*soup bowl*	*dessert spoon*	*mug*
(B)	*jacket*	*knickers*	*sportswear*	*T-shirt*
	shirt	*blouse*	*underpants*	*trousers*
	jeans	*cardigan*	*coat*	*pyjamas*
	sweater	*suit*	*evening wear*	*vest*
	overcoat	*waistcoat*	*clothes*	*underwear*
	skirt	*anorak*	*nightwear*	*tracksuit*
	shoes	*slippers*	*sandals*	*boots*
	socks	*stockings*	*tights*	*top*
	bodysuit	*kilt*	*dress*	*knitwear*
	dressing gown	*nightdress*	*jeanswear*	*leggings*
	blouson	*blazer*	*trenchcoat*	*briefs*
	bra	*stole*	*gloves*	*sporran*
(C)	*book*	*novel*	*headline*	*section*
	booklet	*paperback*	*textbook*	*review*
	programme	*volume*	*thesis*	*title*
	preface	*catalogue*	*hardback*	*periodical*
	pamphlet	*footnote*	*encyclopaedia*	*biography*
	index	*brochure*	*questionnaire*	*memorandum*
	journal	*circular*	*manifesto*	*magazine*
	handbook	*article*	*tract*	*page*
	newspaper	*dictionary*	*thesaurus*	*editorial*
	leader	*paragraph*	*leaflet*	*letter*
	note	*chapter*	*leader*	*monograph*
	paper	*sentence*	*advertisement*	*glossary*

Suggestions for further reading

The topics covered in this chapter are covered in greater detail in Cruse (1986), chs 5–8.

For discussion of 'folk taxonomies' by anthropological linguists see Berlin *et al.* (1973), Brown *et al.* (1976), Berlin (1978), Hunn (1983), Brown (1995) and Brown (forthcoming *a*). Lehrer (1974) contains a detailed study of the field of cooking terms in English.

Meronomies are discussed in Brown (1976) and Brown (forthcoming *b*). Brown (forthcoming *a*) and (forthcoming *b*) are especially interesting on the general principles of naming.

CHAPTER 11

Extensions of meaning

11.1 Literal and non-literal meaning 199

11.2 Naturalized, established, and nonce extensions 201

11.3 Metaphor 202

11.4 Metonymy 211

11.5 Semantic change 214

Discussion questions and exercises 215

Suggestions for further reading 216

CHAPTER 11

Extensions of meaning

11.1 Literal and non-literal meaning

Most people are aware that if someone says *Jane's eyes nearly popped out of her head*, a ***literal*** truth has not been expressed, Jane's eyes were not, as a matter of fact, on the point of being projected from her head; the message is rather that Jane was very surprised. At the everyday level, the contrast between literal and figurative use does not seem problematical. It is not so easy, however, to be more precise about what 'literal meaning' really is. Let us look at some possible ways of pinning down the essence of literalness.

11.1.1 The reading of a word with the earliest recorded use

Dictionaries often organize their entries historically, with the earliest first. It would be a reasonable requirement of a dictionary that it should indicate which meanings are literal, and which figurative: most users would probably assume that the literal meaning would be given first. However, this is not really a satisfactory explanation of what literalness is. The most obvious objection is that while we might reasonably expect an intelligible path of change from past meanings to present meanings, most speakers are ignorant of the history of their language, so history cannot be the (direct) cause of current intuitions.

11.1.2 The most frequently occurring reading of a word

Frequency is another common principle for organizing dictionary entries. At first sight this seems more promising as a rationale for intuitions of literalness. However, this turns out not to be so. An example is the verb *see*. Two of the readings of this verb are "have a visual experience" and "understand" (as in *Do you see what I mean?*). There can be little doubt that it is the first of these readings which intuition points to as the literal reading. Yet it appears that the second reading has a greater text frequency. Clearly, we must look elsewhere for an account of literalness.

11.1.3 The default reading of a word

The default reading of a word is the one which first comes to mind when the word is encountered out of context, or the reading which one would assume to be operative in the absence of contextual indications to the contrary. This criterion would seem to give the right answer for *see*: it is the first meaning to come to mind, and if, say, a foreigner were to ask the meaning, one would hardly begin by saying that it meant to "understand". However, even if the literal meaning coincides with the default reading, we are still none the wiser as regards the underlying reason: it should be possible to come up with a genuinely semantic characterization.

11.1.4 The reading from which the most plausible path of change begins

Consider the following three readings of the noun *position*:

(1) Mary has been offered an excellent position with a firm of solicitors.
(2) What is your position on the single currency?
(3) This is an excellent position from which to watch the parade.

It seems implausible that one could begin with either (1) or (2) and derive the remaining two readings by metaphorical extension. On the other hand, starting from (3), involving location in physical space, the extension to mental space in (2) and a place in an institutional hierarchy in (1) seems relatively natural. Again, it is easy to derive the "understand" reading of *see* metaphorically from the "have a visual experience" reading, but not vice versa. In both these cases, the most plausible starting point is also intuitively the literal reading. But what about *expire*, with its two readings "die" and "come to the end of a period of validity"? In this case, either reading can be convincingly derived from the other. Which, then, is the literal reading? According to my intuitions, the expiring of driving licences is the extended reading, but to my undergraduate students, it is the other way round. It is not clear what the basis for the differing intuitions is.

11.1.5 The reading most closely related to basic human experience

The criterion of the reading most closely related to human experience follows from a claim that not only much of language, but also many conceptual categories, are metaphorical in nature, and are extensions from basic experience, especially, but not exclusively, spatial experience. On this basis, the "location in physical space" reading of *position*, the "have visual experience" reading of *see* and the "die" reading of *expire* would be literal, and their other readings figurative/extended. However, on its own this factor cannot explain why my students feel that the "driving licence" reading of expire is the literal one.

Perhaps a distinction ought to be made between diachronic and synchronic processes of extension. It seems that for diachrony, the 'plausible path'

criterion and the 'basic experience' criterion give the right answer. Let us suppose that if there is only one plausible path, then the diachronic literal/figurative relationship persists in the face of later frequency changes. However, when there are alternative metaphorical extensions, while these criteria give the right answer for historical development, synchronically, an individual will take the most frequent/familiar reading (which will probably, incidentally, also be the one which is learned first) as literal, and the least familiar as extended. (Notice that the two directions of derivation for "expire" produce two distinct metaphors, not the same metaphor from different angles, or whatever.) For this explanation to be correct, it would have to be the case that when I first encountered the word *expire*, the "die" reading was much more frequent than it is now.

11.2 Naturalized, established, and nonce extensions

11.2.1 Naturalized extensions

What is historically no doubt an extended meaning may be so entrenched and familiar a part of a language that its speakers no longer feel that a figure of speech is involved at all: such readings of a word (or expression) will be said to be **naturalized**:

(4) He's **in love**.
(5) It's hard to **put into words.**
(6) The **kettle's boiling**.

11.2.2 Established extensions

There are also readings which are well established, and presumably have entries in the mental lexicon, but are none the less felt to be figures of speech:

(7) John's **a parasite/a lounge lizard/a couch potato**.
(8) She **swallowed** the story.
(9) There are too many **mouths** to feed.

11.2.3 Nonce readings

Nonce readings are ones for which there are no entries in the mental lexicon; they therefore cannot be 'looked up', but have to be generated and interpreted using strategies of meaning extension such as metaphor and metonymy. The following are selected (almost) at random from Patricia Cornwell's best-seller **Hornet's Nest**:

(10) West gave him a look that was heat-seeking, like a missile.
(11) He had never told her his fantasies about being overpowered by her,

cuffed, pinned, held, yoked, and hauled away in the paddy wagon of erotic captivity.

(12) His heart rolled forward at such a pitch, he could not catch up with it.

11.3 Metaphor

A typical dictionary definition of metaphor is: "The use of a word or phrase to mean something different from the literal meaning" (Oxford Advanced Leaner's Dictionary). This is not very enlightening: since it does not even hint at any rationale for such a curious practice, it makes metaphor seem, at best, carelessness, and, at worst, perversity. However, as Lakoff (and others) have persuasively argued, metaphor is all pervasive in language, and is for the most part effortlessly interpreted, so it deserves more constructive consideration.

11.3.1 Approaches to metaphor

There have been many more or less suggestive commentaries on metaphor, most, however, leaving much to be explained. The Greek word from which the term *metaphor* originated literally meant "transfer". For Aristotle, what was transferred was the meaning of one expression to another expression: for him, a metaphorical meaning was always the literal meaning of another expression. (This is the so-called substitution view of metaphor.) Although Aristotle recognized the crucial role of resemblance in metaphor, in the classical tradition, metaphor was regarded essentially as a decorative device.

Another aspect of metaphor—the usually incongruous nature of the expression on a literal interpretation—was pointed out by Dr Johnson, who defined it as "heterogeneous ideas yoked by violence together". There is still a degree of disagreement (and confusion?) over the exact role of 'deviance' or 'semantic clash' in metaphor; we return to this topic below.

In modern times, I. A. Richards (1965) is usually credited with giving an impetus to metaphor studies. He made a distinction between three aspects of metaphor: vehicle, the item(s) used metaphorically, tenor, the metaphorical meaning of the vehicle, and ground, the basis for the metaphorical extension, essentially the common elements of meaning, which license the metaphor. For example, in *the foot of the mountain*, the word *foot* is the vehicle, the tenor is something like "lower portion", that is, the intended meaning of the vehicle, and the ground (never properly spelled out by Richards) is (presumably) the spatial parallel between the canonical position of the foot relative to the rest of the (human) body, and the lower parts of a mountain relative to the rest of the mountain.

This account at least focused attention on the fact that there must be some essential connection between tenor and vehicle—a word cannot be used to mean just anything—but the nature of the connection, the 'how' of metaphor,

was not really elucidated. Richards also rejected the notion that metaphors can in general be translated into literal language, pointing out that there was a species of interaction between meanings ("the interanimation of words") that cannot be reproduced in literal language.

11.3.1.1 Haas: the interaction of semantic fields

A more thoroughgoing interaction theory, and more solidly grounded in language, was that of Haas (see Suggestions for further reading at the end of this chapter). For Haas, the meaning of a word constituted a 'semantic field'. This consisted of all the possible contexts of the word organized in terms of normality, the most normal contexts forming the 'core' region of the field, and the least normal forming the periphery. Essentially, the semantic field of every word encompassed the whole vocabulary, but each word imposed a different 'core–periphery' organization on it. When two words were brought into interaction, a new semantic field was created, whose core was formed by the contexts with the highest joint degree of normality for both words. This new semantic field defined a new meaning, the metaphoric one. For instance, referring to the metaphor *leg of the table*, Haas has the following to say:

> a word e.g. *leg*, is transferred to new contexts: from its normal *of the* — contexts (*of the man/woman/child/horse*, etc. to the given new context *of the table*; and we select from the more or less normal contexts of the displaced *legs* just those that fit. Though the legs of a table do not *move* or *stretch* or *hurt*, are neither *quick* nor *slow*, not *muscular* or *energetic* or *tired*, they are still found to be *long* or *short*, *strong* or *weak*, *thick* or *slim*, *beautiful* or *ugly*, they *stand (on)* and *support*, may be *broken* or *cut*, etc.

Although Haas would have no truck with feature theories of meaning, his account of metaphor is similar in spirit to analyses in terms of semantic features, in which semantic anomalies are resolved by eliminating incompatible features from a composite expression, and allowing only compatible features to form part of the resultant meaning of the expression.

11.3.1.2 Black: analogue models

One of the virtues Haas claimed for his account of metaphor was that it avoided reference to 'pure ideas', 'private thoughts' and 'hidden intentions', and referred exclusively to 'public occurrences of words—occurrences in the contexts, present or remembered, of other words and of situations'. Most modern accounts, on the other hand, unashamedly embrace 'pure ideas' (in their modern guise of concepts, domains, and so on).

The ideas of Max Black have been influential in the development of modern theories of metaphor. First of all, Black rejected both the 'substitution' view of metaphor (see above) and what he regarded as a special version of it, the 'comparison' view, according to which, the 'literal' equivalent of a metaphor is the corresponding simile, so that, for instance, the literal equivalent of *the leg*

of the table would be *the part of the table which is like a leg* (Haas used to maintain that no distinction could be drawn in principle between metaphor and simile).

Black's picture of the mechanism of metaphor involved the projection of a set of 'associative implications' derived from one entity (the 'secondary subject') on to another entity ('the primary subject'). In Black's own example:

(13) Marriage is a zero-sum game.

the primary subject is *marriage* and the secondary subject is *zero-sum game* (Black makes it clear that the relevant entities ('subjects') are notions in the minds of speakers and hearers). The relevant associated implications of the secondary subject might be as follows (after Black 1979: 29–30):

(i) A game is a contest
(ii) between two opponents
(iii) in which one player can win only at the expense of the other.

The metaphor works by imposing the same implications (or similar/analogous ones) on to the primary subject, as follows:

(iv) A marriage is a sustained struggle
(v) between two contestants
(vi) in which the rewards (power? money? satisfaction?) of one contestant are gained only at the other's expense.

The notion that the implications are not necessarily identical for the two subjects is important: Black sees the 'implicative complex' of the secondary subject as an 'analogue model' of the implicative complex intended to be inferred for the primary subject. It is hard to see a Haasian selection of normal contexts achieving this. On the other hand, Black's view of the workings of metaphor is remarkably similar to the more recent Lakoffian picture of the projection of the structure of a 'source domain' on to a 'target domain' (see below).

11.3.1.3 Relevance theory and metaphor

Sperber and Wilson (1986) make a distinction between 'representative' and 'interpretive' uses of language, which for our present purposes we can take as parallel to the 'literal/figurative' distinction. Two important insights can be picked up from their account. The first is that metaphor is nothing special or deviant, and is simply an extreme case of 'loose talk'. Take the case of *The children stood in a circle round the teacher*. Do we imagine the children forming a geometrically exact circle? No, only a shape which has a sufficient resemblance to a circle. We do not feel this to be metaphorical, but this is perhaps merely a function of the degree of resemblance: for instance, some people probably find *electronic pet* slightly metaphorical; a greater proportion will feel the presence of metaphor in *emotional blackmail*, and so on. But the

mechanism of interpretation is the same for all these: look for relevant resemblances (this does not explicitly include, but nor does it explicitly exclude, wider-ranging structural parallels). The second point highlighted by the relevance-theoretical treatment is that the interpretation of an utterance used interpretively is very much a function of context: interpreters look to maximize contextual relevance with the least expenditure of effort (this notion is explained in greater detail in Chapter 17). This point is also well made by Black, but it is given less prominence by cognitive linguists.

11.3.1.4 Lakoff

According to Lakoff, metaphors are not merely decorative features of certain styles, but are an essential component of human cognition. Nor are they purely linguistic, but are conceptual in nature. They are 'a means whereby ever more abstract and intangible areas of experience can be conceptualised in terms of the familiar and concrete'.

Metaphors involve (i) a source domain, usually concrete and familiar, (ii) a target domain, usually abstract or at least less well structured, and (iii) a set of mapping relations, or correspondences. For example, the ARGUMENT is WAR metaphor uses notions drawn from the domain of war, such as winning and losing, attacking and defending, destroying, undermining, and so on, to depict what happens during an argument. Likewise, the LIFE is a JOURNEY metaphor borrows structuring ideas from the domain of a journey and applies them to life: *We've come a long way together, but we have decided to take our separate paths*, *He has come to a crossroads in his life*, *This young man will go far*.

The correspondences involved in metaphor are of two kinds, (i) ontological, involving entities in the two domains, and (ii) epistemic, involving relations of knowledge about the entities. This can be illustrated using Lakoff's example of the metaphor which he expresses as ANGER is HEAT OF FLUID IN CONTAINER (Lakoff (1987: Book II, ch. 1)):

(i) Ontological correspondences

source: HEAT OF FLUID	target: ANGER
container	body
heat of fluid	anger
heat scale	anger scale
pressure in container	experienced pressure
agitation of boiling fluid	experienced agitation
limit of container's resistance	limit of person's ability to suppress anger
explosion	loss of control

(ii) Epistemic correspondences:

When fluid in a container is heated beyond a certain limit, pressure increases to point at which container explodes.	When anger increases beyond a certain limit, 'pressure' increases to point at which person loses control.
An explosion is damaging to container and dangerous to bystanders.	Loss of control is damaging to person and dangerous to others.
Explosion can be prevented by applying sufficient force and counter-pressure.	Anger can be suppressed by force of will.
Controlled release of pressure may occur, which reduces danger of explosion.	Anger can be released in a controlled way, or vented harmlessly, thus reducing level.

An important feature of metaphor is that the mapping from source to target domain is partial: for instance, in the ARGUMENT is WAR metaphor, there are ARGUMENT correspondences for:

winning and losing
taking up positions
defending one's position against attack
attacking and demolishing opponent's position
probing opponent's weaknesses
using weapons
shooting down opponent's aircraft, etc.

but no correspondences for:

taking hostages/prisoners
field hospital
anti-personnel mines
parachutes, etc.

Similarly, in the ANGER is HEAT OF FLUID IN CONTAINER metaphor, the 'cooking' aspect of, for instance, *boiling* and *simmering* has no correspondence in the ANGER domain.

Lakoff emphasizes that metaphors are conceptual, not merely linguistic. One consequence of this is that often a range of different linguistic expressions can tap the same metaphor, and this can be done flexibly and productively. For instance, the lexical resources of the source domain can be exploited in the target domain (this means that a conceptual metaphor cannot be reduced to a finite set of expressions). What Lakoff calls 'elaborations' involve more specific versions of the basic metaphor whose characteristics in the source domain carry over to the target domain. For instance, the difference in intensity between *boil* and *simmer* in reference to a heated liquid carries over to indicate corresponding differences in degree of anger in *to boil with anger* and *to simmer with anger*.

Another consequence of the conceptual nature of metaphor is that certain patterns of reasoning may carry over from the source domain to the target domain. Lakoff calls these 'metaphorical entailments'. For instance, if you destroy all your enemy's weapons, you win the war; similarly, if you demolish all your opponent's points in an argument, you win the argument.

The existence of a conceptual metaphor explains why new and imaginative extensions of the mapping can be understood instantly. Lakoff (1990) illustrates this using a line from a song:

We're driving in the fast lane on the freeway of love.

This, according to Lakoff, exploits the LOVE is a JOURNEY metaphor (lovers =travellers; relationship=vehicle; shared experiences=journey). When you drive in the fast lane you go a long way (have a lot of shared experiences) in a short time, and it can be exciting (sexually) and dangerous (relationship may not last/lovers may be hurt emotionally).

It is not only complex and intangible concepts like emotions which are understood metaphorically. According to Lakoff, basic semantic notions such as time, quantity, state, change, cause, and category membership are also metaphorically understood as extensions of basic conceptual elements which he calls **image-schemas**, involving space, motion, and force.

(i) Categories: categories are understood in terms of containers/bounded regions of space. Something can be in or out of a category, and can be put into, or removed from a category, just as with a container. The logic of categories is the same as (may even be ultimately derived from) the logic of containers. If X is inside container A and container A is inside container B, then X is inside container B: this transitivity carries over into category membership.

(ii) Quantity: two metaphors are involved in the conceptualization of quantity:

(a) MORE is UP; LESS is DOWN. This metaphor is exemplified in the following:

(14) Output rose dramatically.
(15) Fatal accidents are well down on last year.
(16) Efficiency savings have plateaued.
(17) Our pass rate is much higher than theirs.

(b) LINEAR SCALES are PATHS. This metaphor appears in the following:

(18) John is by far the best in the class.
(19) Bill has been catching up fast, and he's now about level with John in ability.
(20) John is streets ahead of Bill in academic ability.

(The logic of paths carries over into the logic of linear scales. For instance, if C is ahead of B on a path, and B is ahead of A, then C is also ahead of A; similarly, if C is ahead of B in ability, and B is ahead of A, then C is ahead of A (i.e. has more ability than A).)

(iii) Time: Time is understood in terms of things, locations, distances, and motion. Times are things; the passing of time is motion; time intervals are distances; future times are in front of the observer, past times behind. The passage of time can be construed in two ways, according to whether the speaker/observer is stationary or moving (it is always the case that one thing is moving, and the other is stationary):

(a) Events stationary, observer moving:

(21) We're coming up to exam time.
(22) I don't know how I'm going to get through next week.
(23) We have left all that behind us.

(b) Events moving; observer stationary:

(24) The exams will be upon us soon.
(25) The day just rushed past.
(26) Doomsday is edging closer.
(27) The holidays passed peacefully enough.

(iv) Causation: causation may be seen as a force which produces movement (i.e. change) towards a location, which may be an action (as in (28)), or a state (as in (29)):

(28) Frustration drove Jane to murder.
(29) John's words sent Jane into a state of panic.

Lakoff's arguments that metaphor has (or at least, has had) an essential constructive role in our mental life are persuasive. But a number of questions remain. One of these concerns the status of metaphorical processes in adult cognition. Obviously, they come into play in the interpretation of fresh metaphors (nonce readings); but many of the metaphors Lakoff discusses are fully naturalized in the language, others are at least established; for both types it seems necessary to assume that they are permanently laid down (entrenched) in the mental lexicon. Interpreting these would seem therefore to be a matter of selection of existing readings, rather than generation using metaphorical strategies (although we still need to explain the intuitive distinction between naturalized and merely established metaphors—perhaps this is due to a subliminal activation of the metaphorical process in the latter case). However, it is possible that metaphor is vitally operative either at earlier stages of the development of a language (or, indeed, at earlier stages in the evolution of language), or at earlier stages in the acquisition of language, for every individual.

In spite of Lakoff's insistence on the constructive role of metaphor, and his criticism of earlier views of metaphor as merely decorative, some of the metaphors that he discusses are arguably decorative in function. One of these is the following, a translation of an Indian poem:

Slowly slowly rivers in autumn show
sand banks
bashful in first love woman
showing thighs (Lakoff 1990.)

Lakoff calls such metaphors **image metaphors**: they are characterized by the fact that both source and target domains are well structured in their own right. What is the function of the metaphor here? It seems to be merely to invest the natural features of a landscape with an erotic aura—surely a species of 'decoration'? Lakoff (1990: 67) argues that the success of such a metaphor is a function of the richness of the image-schematic correspondences between the two domains ('We suggest that conventional mental images are structured by image-schemas and that image metaphors preserve image-schematic structure, mapping parts onto parts, wholes onto wholes, containers onto containers, paths onto paths, and so on.'). There are certainly many correspondences in the above metaphor between the colour, shape and untouched smoothness of the sand banks revealed by the slowly falling water level in the river and the thighs of a shy young woman divesting herself for her first lover. But while the richness of the correspondences may be necessary for a successful metaphor, they surely are not sufficient—just as important is the appropriate selection of domains in the first place.

11.3.2 Close relatives of metaphor

11.3.2.1 Personifications

Death is frequently personified as a coachman, footman, reaper, devourer, destroyer, etc. but never as a university lecturer or supermarket manager. Why? In most personifications events (like death, or natural disasters) are understood in terms of actions by some agent (like reaping, carrying away, or destroying), and it is the agent of such actions that is personified. The success of a personification thus depends (at least in part) on significant correspondences between the event and the implied actions of the agent indicated by the personification.

11.3.2.2 Proverbs

A proverb describes a specific event or state of affairs which is applicable metaphorically to a range of different events or states of affairs provided they have the same or sufficiently similar image-schematic structure.

11.3.3 Metaphor and deviance

There has been much discussion—and disagreement, not to say confusion—about the relationship between metaphor and deviance, between those who maintain that the ubiquity and utter naturalness of metaphor make it perverse to qualify it as 'deviance', and those who claim that deviance is an essential clue to the fact that an expression is metaphorical (or at least, not literal). The reader will probably already have spotted the fact that these two supposedly opposed views do not really address the same issue, and we must first clarify a source of confusion (which is surprisingly prevalent in current discussions).

There can surely be no disagreement about the claim that metaphor is a natural and vital expression of the human cognitive-linguistic endowment. However, the question remains of how we recognize that an expression is not being used literally. This is where the notion of deviance, or at least anomaly, comes legitimately into the picture. It is perfectly compatible with the idea of the naturalness of metaphor to claim that figurative expressions are recognized by the fact that they are anomalous on a literal reading, and that this triggers off a search for a relevant non-literal interpretation derivable from the literal reading. Haas says:

> If there is to be general agreement amongst us about the meaning of a new and metaphorical utterance, then that agreement can only be due to the fact that the utterance consists of familiar words and that its sense is DERIVABLE from the familiar meanings of those words. Although some part of the utterance (a word or phrase) or even the whole of it strikes us as displaced in the context in which it occurs, the abnormal contribution it makes to the sense of the utterance must be derivable from the knowledge we share of its normal occurrences.

A word of caution is necessary at this point. There are current claims that there is no evidence that metaphorical meanings are computed by first computing the literal meanings. However, experiments claiming to demonstrate this do not clearly separate conventionalized metaphors from fresh metaphors: obviously, if a metaphor is conventionalized, its activation is merely a matter of the selection of an appropriate meaning, no different from the selection of the appropriate reading of *bank* in *She works in a bank*. The mechanism suggested above applies only to freshly coined metaphors.

However, even with this proviso, the thesis that anomaly is an essential clue to non-literalness is not universally accepted. Black (1979) gives the following example:

> Suppose I counter the conversational remark, 'As we know, man is a wolf . . .' by saying, 'Oh, no, man is not a wolf but an ostrich'. In context, 'Man is not a wolf' is as metaphorical as its opposite, yet it clearly fails the controversion [=anomaly] test.

However, Black's point is considerably weakened by the observation that the ***literal*** reading of *Man is not a wolf* would sit very oddly in the context he provides! And in fact he concedes later in the same article:

The decisive reason for the choice of interpretation may be, as it often is, the patent falsity or incoherence of the literal reading—but it might equally be the banality of that reading's truth, its pointlessness, or its lack of congruence with the surrounding text and non-verbal setting.

In other words, we recognize a non-literal expression by the communicative deviance of its literal reading.

11.4 Metonymy

The second major strategy for extending word meanings is metonymy. Metonymy is responsible for a great proportion of the cases of so-called regular polysemy.

11.4.1 Metonymy vs. metaphor

Metonymy and metaphor are quite distinct processes of extension, in spite of the fact that there may exist extensions that cannot be classified, because the end-point could have been reached by either route. Claimed examples of this phenomenon are *head of the bed* and *back of the chair*: is the reason we label them as we do because a person's head normally rests at that part of the bed, or a person's back rests on that part of a chair? Or is it because of some resemblance between a bed and a supine person, or between a chair and a standing person? We may never know. A succinct statement of the difference between the two tropes was suggested by Jakobson and Halle (1956), who said that metaphor was based on resemblance, whereas metonymy was based on 'contiguity', which we can gloss without too much distortion as "association".

Jakobson's dictum captures some of the difference between metaphor and metonymy, but leaves an important point unhighlighted. Metaphor involves the use of one domain as an analogical model (in Black's terms) to structure our conception of another domain; in other words the process crucially involves two (in the simplest cases) distinct conceptual domains. Metonymy, on the other hand, relies on an (actual, literal) association between two components within a single domain (and no restructuring is involved). Take the famous *ham sandwich* case:

(30) The ham sandwich wants his coffee now.

This is, of course, 'café language', but is perfectly intelligible to all. The domain invoked is a café, or similar establishment, where a customer is (perhaps momentarily) distinguished by the fact that he has ordered a ham sandwich. This fact associated with the customer serves as a convenient identifying device. There is no question of drawing any structural parallels between the person referred to and a ham sandwich. Suppose, however, that the customer was heavy jowled and of lugubrious mien, and the waitress had said:

(31) The abandoned bloodhound wants his coffee now.

Here the hearer is invited to see the characteristic lineaments of a bloodhound's face in the customer's visage; no literal association between the customer and any actual bloodhound is imputed or evoked.

11.4.2 Patterns of metonymy

There are certain highly recurrent types of metonymy. The following may be signalled:

(i) CONTAINER for CONTAINED

(32) The kettle's boiling.
(33) Room 44 wants a bottle of champagne.
(34) The car in front decided to turn right.

(ii) POSSESSOR for POSSESSED/ATTRIBUTE

(35) Why is John not in **Who's Who** ?
(36) A: John Smith.
B: That's me!
(37) Where are you parked?
(38) Shares fall 10 per cent after Budget.

(iii) REPRESENTED ENTITY for REPRESENTATIVE

(39) England won the World Cup in 1966.
(40) The government will announce new targets next week.

(iv) WHOLE for PART

(41) I'm going to wash the car/fill up the car with petrol.
(42) Do you need to use the bathroom?

(v) PART for WHOLE

(43) There are too many mouths to feed.
(44) What we want are more bums on seats.
(45) I noticed several new faces tonight.

(vi) PLACE for INSTITUTION

(46) The White House denies the allegations.
(47) The Palace defends the sackings.

The above list is by no means exhaustive. An interesting and only partially understood question is why some relationships are metonymically viable, but others are not, or are considerably less so. Take, for instance, the part–part relation, which, since it involves items clearly associated within a single

domain, might be expected to yield lots of metonymy. But it is relatively rare. (The following are odd by my intuitions:

(48) I'm having my wheels serviced. (wheels → car; car → engine)
(49) I was obliged to spank one of the new faces.)

11.4.3 What is metonymy for?

There are many cases where an indirect metonymic strategy of reference appears to be preferred to a more direct mode of reference. (In some instances, the metonymic mode may be considered to be conventionalized, but the question still arises of why it should be so.) The following are examples (some repeated for convenience):

(50) Where are you parked?
(51) The kettle's boiling.
(52) Room 44 wants a bottle of champagne.
(53) Why is John not in **Who's Who**?
(54) John stroked the dog.

An important question is thus why metonymy should 'feel' more natural in these instances. What is the advantage of metonymy here? One possible motivation is that the expression is rendered shorter, hence more economical of effort. The full versions of the above would be:

(55) Where is your car parked?
(56) The water in the kettle is boiling.
(57) The person in Room 44 wants a bottle of champagne.
(58) Why is John's name not in **Who's Who**?
(59) John's hand stroked the dog.

However, this cannot be the full story, because many parallel cases can be invented which do not seem nearly as natural:

(60) Where are you being serviced/repaired? (Where is your car being serviced/your watch being repaired?)
(61) The oven is burning. (Something/the cake in the oven is burning.)
(62) The office is typing. (The person/the secretary in the office is typing.)
(63) A: Where is your briefcase?
B: I'm in the bedroom. (My briefcase is in the bedroom.)

Another possibility is that the target entity is more easily accessible via the metonymic vehicle than directly (obviously, the target entity must be uniquely identifiable—but this is a general requirement for successful reference, and is not the point at issue here). However, this notion is not so easy to pin down in a satisfactory way.

It is also the case that often, even though an indirect metonymic reference is

not necessarily the preferred, or default strategy, some metonyms are acceptable, whereas others, ostensibly following the same general principle, are not. The following are examples of this:

(64) I see you've got yourself some wheels/* a clutch pedal.
(65) *We've bought some new legs. (="a new table".)
(66) Room 23 is not answering.
(67) ?Room 23 is asleep/out.
(68) She's in the phone book.
(69) *She's on the back of my hand. (="Her phone number is on the back of my hand".)
(70) The car in front decided to turn right/*smoke a cigarette.

Clearly, more work needs to be done before it can be claimed that metonymy is well understood. However, it seems that the motivation for using metonymy will turn out to be one or more of the following:

(i) economy;
(ii) ease of access to referent;
(iii) highlighting of associative relation.

11.5 Semantic change

One can hardly read a chapter of, say, a novel by Jane Austen (to go no further back in time) without becoming aware of the fact that words change their meaning through time. In the case of Jane Austen, the changes are relatively uncommon, and relatively subtle. For instance, *interfere* has not yet developed its negative aspect: its meaning is closer to modern *intervene*; *handsome* is applied indifferently to men and women (and girls); *amiable* was a much more positive recommendation of a person's character than now; *direction* no longer refers to the indicated destination of a letter . . . and so on. Historical processes of semantic change are of course intimately linked to synchronic processes of meaning extension. One possible scenario might run as follows.

(1) Word W has established a literal sense, S1.
(2) Some creative person uses W in a new figurative sense, S2 (according to the rules of synchronic extension).
(3) S2 'catches on', and becomes established (i.e. laid down as an entry in the mental lexicons of members of the speech community), so that W becomes polysemous between S1 and S2. S1 is still perceived as literal, and S2 as figurative.
(4) S1 begins to become obsolescent. S2 begins to be perceived as literal, and S1 as figurative.
(5) S1 is lost, at which point the meaning of W has changed from S1 to S2.

This can be illustrated with English *expire*. First, before there were such things as tickets and licences with limited periods of validity, this just meant "die". Then, it was metaphorically extended to mean "come to the end of a period of validity", which existed as a clear figurative use alongside the literal use. Nowadays, the "die" sense is quite uncommon, and classes of students will declare that for them, it is a metaphorical extension of the "cease to be valid" sense. Stage (5) is perhaps yet to occur, but there is no doubt that the default reading has changed.

This example illustrates one way in which synchronic meaning extension forms an essential part of diachronic change (there are, of course, other scenarios). In principle, the meaning of a word may change along any of the semantic dimensions identified in Chapter 3; however, no attempt will be made here to give a full account of historical change in word meaning.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. Using Lakoff's study of anger as a model, investigate the metaphorical representation of other emotional states such as fear and depression.
2. How many examples of non-literal language use can you find in the following sentences (from Grafton 1994)? Classify each example as metaphor, metonymy or hyperbole.

   (i) Occasionally I went over to the shallow end of the pool and got my feet wet. If I lowered myself into the depths by as much as six inches, I suffered shortness of breath and a nearly overwhelming desire to shriek.

   (ii) I had a quick bowl of soup with Henry and then downed half a pot of coffee, managing in the process to offset my lethargy and kick into high gear again. It was time to make contact with some of the principals in the cast.

   (iii) The hotel's air-conditioning, which was fitful at best, seemed to drone off and on in a fruitless attempt to cut into the heat.

   (iv) I'm sorry sir, room 323 is not answering.

   (v) I went out on to my balcony and leaned my elbows on the railing, staring out at the night.

   (vi) I was aware of the yawning three-storey drop, and I could feel my basic dislike of heights kick in.

   (vii) His name was being withheld from the local papers because of his age.

   (viii) I could practically hear Mac squinting through the telephone lines.

   (ix) July in Santa Teresa is an unsettling affair.

   (x) I rolled out of bed, pulled on my sweats, brushed my teeth and combed my hair, avoiding the sight of my sleep-smudged face.

(xi) A: "Can you get me an address?"
B: "Shouldn't be too hard. She's probably in the book."

(xii) He was mortgaged to the eyeballs, so his house wasn't worth a cent.

(xiii) The day seemed interminable, all heat and bugs, kids shrieking in the pool with ear-splitting regularity.

(xiv) "I want to talk to Lieutenant Whiteside first. Can you have me switched over to his extension?"

(xv) Steep hills, pleated with erosion, rose up on my left, while to the right, the heaving gray Pacific was pounding against the shore.

Suggestions for further reading

On metaphor, an excellent source of readings is Ortony (1979); the present account has drawn heavily on the paper by Max Black in this volume, but many of the other papers are well worth reading, and will give an idea of a variety of approaches. Haas's account of metaphor has not been published, but can be accessed at the Manchester University Linguistic Department's website: http://lings.ln.man.ac.uk/Html/wh. Lakoff's views appear in several publications: a popular introduction is Lakoff and Johnson (1980); a later account with a literary focus is Lakoff and Turner (1989). The fullest exposition of Lakoff's approach, applied particularly to ANGER, is to be found in Book II, Chapter 1 of Lakoff (1987), to which may be added Lakoff (1990). An analysis of LOVE on Lakoffian lines is Kövecses (1988). See also Dirven (1985).

On metonymy, see Croft (1993) and Kövecses and Radden (1998).

CHAPTER 12

Syntagmatic relations

12.1 Normal and abnormal co-occurrences 219

12.2 Types of abnormality 221

12.3 Syntagmatic sense relations 224

12.4 The directionality of syntagmatic constraints 225

12.5 Syntagmatic and paradigmatic relations 227

12.6 Some puzzles 228

12.7 Specifying co-occurrence restrictions 229

12.8 Co-occurrence patterns between words 232

Discussion questions and exercises 234

Suggestions for further reading 235

CHAPTER 12

Syntagmatic relations

12.1 Normal and abnormal co-occurrence

It is an obvious fact that some combinations of words 'go together' naturally, and it is easy to imagine a situation in which they could function as part of a discourse. Other sets of words do not go together in this way: it is impossible, or at least very difficult, to imagine a situation in which they could be used (although we must not underestimate the flexibility and ingenuity of the human mind in this respect). This chapter is about the semantic relations between lexical units in the same discourse, string, sentence, or other syntactic structure, which govern their well-formedness. (There are, of course, important relations between larger discourse elements such as clauses, sentences, and larger units which are important for discourse cohesion and coherence. Here, however, we are concerned only with the lexical level.) All meanings co-present in a discourse affect one another to some degree and in one way or another. The interactions are complex and not yet fully understood; here only a sketchy outline can be offered. Before any details can be examined, it is necessary to make a distinction between two types of interaction between meaningful elements in a discourse. We shall distinguish the two types by the terms **discourse interaction** and **syntagmatic interaction**. We shall be eventually concerned mainly with the latter type.

Consider the following sentence:

(1) John and Mary will be joined in holy matrimony next week: who's going to get the spuds?

There are two sorts of oddness here. The first is the register clash between *holy matrimony* and *spuds*. This can easily be cured:

(2) John and Mary will be joined in holy matrimony next week: who is going to get the potatoes?

But we are still left with the difficulty of finding the relevance of potatoes to

John and Mary's marriage. (There would be no problem if *potatoes* was replaced by *confetti*, or even, *rice*.) These are both aspects of discourse interaction, as in each case the clash, as we may call it, is not between one item and its most intimate syntactic neighbour. The register clash is relatively superficial. Certain lexical items—they may have any syntactic function—serve as markers of degree of formality. Obviously contradictory markers are going to clash. The irreconcilability of *marriage* and *potatoes* has a much deeper origin, to do with the construction of plausible scenarios involving the two concepts, and drawing on cultural knowledge, which we cannot go into here, but is not obviously syntactically governed.

Another distinction needs to be made (it has already been adumbrated above) before the discussion can be advanced. There are two potential focuses of interest in studying syntagmatic semantic relations: one is whether, or to what extent, a particular combination makes sense, the other is whether, or to what extent, a combination is normal or abnormal. Although these two characteristics often coincide, they are by no means the same thing. For instance, *My geraniums kicked the bucket in the hot weather* is perfectly understandable, but is none the less somewhat odd; conversely, a difficult article on a topic in, say, formal semantics, may have no odd sentences in it. In this chapter we shall be concentrating mainly on whether syntagmatic combinations are normal or abnormal; this is both easier to control, and also more revealing of a wider range of facts.

It is undeniable that the normality of a particular string of words (even one which is close knit syntactically) can be affected by the wider context in which they are set. This means that we must be careful what we mean when we say that a particular string is abnormal. Take a case like *heavy on air*. This might strike the ear as odd, if no context is given. But suppose the conversation is about space travel and the need to develop ways of recycling vital materials like water and air. In this context it is not difficult to make sense of a statement to the effect that a particular device is *heavy on air*. The reason the original presentation was odd was that the default readings of the constituent items do not go together; the effect of the context was to enable a relevant selection of interpretations to be made. Similarly, Chomsky's *colourless green ideas* might not be so anomalous if used to describe a boring lecture on environmental issues. The moral of this is that we are not concerned with strings of words, but with strings of readings. Very often, a potential anomaly is a clue to the fact that either a different reading of some item in the string must be selected, or a new reading must be created.

In some cases, oddness can be alleviated by contextual manipulation even when there is no change of reading. This is particularly true of zeugma: it is possible to create a zeugma-like effect which has a purely discourse origin. However, this can be made to disappear with contextual elaboration. There are, on the other hand, cases where discourse manipulation does not serve to remove the zeugma, which is thus shown to be a lexical effect. What

we are interested in here is oddness which cannot be conjured away in this fashion.

Let us now look at different types of inherent combinatory abnormality.

12.2 Types of abnormality

Two basic types of abnormality resulting from the combination of two senses can be distinguished. The first is where meanings simply do not 'go together'; the second is when one meaning adds nothing new to another one with which it is combined and thus appears unnecessary, or redundant. We shall call these **clash** and **pleonasm**, respectively.

12.2.1 Semantic clash

The sorts of clash we are interested in here are those which resist contextual manipulation and can reasonably be considered to be lexical in nature. It is a feature of units of meaning that they impose semantic conditions of some sort on their syntagmatic partners: if these conditions are satisfied, the result is semantically well formed, and the combination is readily interpretable; if the conditions are not satisfied, some sort of clash results, which may trigger off a semantic transformation of some kind, which produces a reading that ***does*** satisfy the conditions. (For this reason, virtually no combination of ***words*** can be ruled out as anomalous.) We shall call the conditions **co-occurrence preferences** (rather than, as they are often designated, **co-occurrence restrictions**, which suggests a more yes/no, law-like condition than we actually find); they can also be thought of as presuppositions of the unit which imposes the conditions. Clashes come in varying degrees of severity. Presumably this property varies continuously, but as a first approximation, some distinctions can be made.

The first distinction is between clashes which result from the non-satisfaction of **collocational preferences**, and those which result from the non-satisfaction of **selectional preferences**. This latter distinction—between collocational and selectional preferences—depends on whether the preferences in question are an inherent consequence of propositional content or not. Take the case of *My geraniums have kicked the bucket*. There is here a semantic clash between *geraniums* and *kicked the bucket*: for full normality, *kick the bucket* requires a human subject. But the propositional content of *kick the bucket* is the same as that of *die*: it would not be honest to answer the question *Did my geraniums kick the bucket while I was away?* in the negative, if the geraniums in question had died, on the grounds that only humans can kick the bucket. The point is that kicking the bucket is not a special way of dying that only humans can suffer; it is more correct to say that the expression *kick the bucket* can only be used without oddness to refer to dying if certain contextual

conditions are satisfied, one of them being that the 'patient' should be human, another being that the situation should be informal. The conditions (preferences) do not arise ineluctably from the propositional meaning, but are, as it were, tagged on independently and somewhat arbitrarily. Contrast this case with the oddness of *My letter to Mary kicked the bucket*. Here the clash is not just, or even principally, between *letter* and the 'tagged on' meaning present in *kicked the bucket*, since the oddness is not significantly improved by putting *died* in place of *kicked the bucket*. There is a much more radical clash between the propositional meaning of *kick the bucket* and *my letter*, in that the concept of dying is only applicable to things/entities that at some time were alive. "Living subject" can be thought of as a logical presupposition of the default meaning of *die*; "human subject" is merely a stylistic presupposition of *kick the bucket*. If a collocational preference is contravened, we may say that **inappropriateness** results: inappropriateness is then the lowest degree of clash.

If what is here called a selectional preference is contravened, the clash is more serious. Two degrees of clash can just about be distinguished here. Consider *The cat barked*, or *a tiny giant*. *Bark* means "to make a noise" and is characteristic of dogs. But notice the difference between this case and *kick the bucket* in relation to humans. Whereas humans do not have a special way of dying (at least, this is not what *kick the bucket* denotes), dogs ***do*** have a special way of making a noise. So *bark* is not adequately glossed as "make a noise" (applied to dogs): it must be "make the characteristically canine noise". And it would not be misleading to answer the question *Did I hear the cat bark?* in the negative, if the cat had, in fact, miaowed (or, indeed, if it had been the dog which had made the noise). On the other hand, *bark* and *miaow* are in a sense the same kind of thing, both animal noises, so the clash is at a sort of intermediate level. In Cruse (1986) this was called **paradox**. Paradox is also involved when the 'wrong' value on a dimension is indicated: *It's too small to fit into this box*, *Rain falls upwards, usually*, *If you walk any faster, you'll be standing still*. Paradoxes are typically 'correctable'.

The most serious degree of clash is **incongruity**. This is when the ontological discrepancy is so large that no sense can be extracted at all, without radical reinterpretation. Since there is not even an inkling of sense, in the worst cases, there is no feeling that the utterance could be corrected. Examples are:

purple gestures of rat milk
the sky's nipple is a dictionary
crystalline miasmas of safety-pins
in phonemic toe-buckets

This is reminiscent of the worst sort of avant-garde poetry. A way of firming up these distinctions will be offered below, but it must be re-emphasized that degree of clash varies continuously, and the divisions are only first approximations.

12.2.2 Pleonasm

A pleonastic relation between two elements occurs when one of them seems redundant, and appears not to add any semantic information not already given by the other element. So, for instance:

(3) John kicked the ball with his foot.

Here *with his foot* adds nothing, since we know from *kick* what the instrument of striking was. Pleonasm can be avoided either by omitting *with his foot*:

(4) John kicked the ball.

or by replacing *kick* with *strike*:

(5) John struck the ball with his foot.

Notice, however, that (6) is not pleonastic:

(6) John kicked the ball with his left foot.

This is because the phrase *with his left foot* now contains new information: the repetition involved in *foot* is unavoidable as otherwise *left* could not be incorporated. Similarly (7) is pleonastic, because *male* gives no information that is not already conveyed by *uncle*:

(7) One of my male uncles told me.

On the other hand, *my gay uncle* is not pleonastic, although *gay* (nowadays) incorporates the notion "male", since *gay* also brings new information not present in *uncle*.

It is important to realize that repetition does not automatically bring about pleonasm. In some cases it is required by the grammar. For instance, in the phrase *two books*, one might argue that plurality is signalled twice, once by the numeral *two*, and then by the *-s* of *books*. In some languages, for instance, Turkish, although a plural affix exists, the noun would have no plural marker in such circumstances: *kitaplar* ("books", *-lar* is the plural affix); *iki kitap* ("two books"). In some cases, the repeated item simply applies twice, sometimes with dramatic effects:

(8) I don't not want it.

Here the negative acts on itself, cancelling itself out. (In many languages there is obligatory duplication of negative marking, without the above semantic effect.) In some cases, repetition has an intensifying, rather than a pleonastic effect:

(9) That is very, very good.
(10) Mary rushed quickly to the window.

Notice that the idea of "quickly" is part of the meaning of *rush*, which is why we get a paradox if we qualify an act of rushing with the opposite term:

(11) ?Mary rushed slowly to the window.

Sometimes the interpretation is not clear, as in *Will you repeat it again, please*, which some speakers will interpret simply as an intensification, while others require a previous repetition for well-formedness. The underlying rules are not clear, but it seems that repetition causes intensification most frequently when a graded property is involved.

12.3 Syntagmatic sense relations

If we try to set up syntagmatic sense relations on the pattern of paradigmatic relations we find right at the outset that there are certain differences. The main one is that there are no relations of a syntagmatic nature that have the generality and context independence of paradigmatic relations such as hyponymy and meronymy. All relations are tied to particular grammatical constructions, or at least to families of constructions. To take a simple example, the following exemplifies a clash between *chair* and *saw*:

(12) The chair saw John.

But these two words do not necessarily clash:

(13) John saw the chair.

The clash only occurs when the words are in a particular grammatical relationship. Bearing this fact in mind, we can set up three basic relations, according to whether the words in question go together normally, clash, or yield pleonasm:

philonyms: go together normally
SAW the CHAIR
xenonyms: clash
HEARTFELT INSOMNIA
tautonyms: produce pleonasm
an ACADEMIC UNIVERSITY

Remember that in each case the grammatical relation between the terms must be specified, and that we are assuming the combinations to be fully grammatical. The grammatical relations can be specified in a semantically neutral way: for instance, *chair* and *see* are subject-verb xenonyms, and *heartfelt* and *thanks* are modifier-head philonyms; or they can be specified in a semantically more concrete way: for instance, *man* and *see* are experiencer-verb philonyms, *snap* and *pleasure* are verb-patient xenonyms.

12.4 The directionality of syntagmatic constraints

Constraints on co-occurrence between lexical items usually have directional properties. Two aspects of this are of particular interest. The first concerns which item does the selecting (the **selector**), and which gets selected (the **selectee**). It is necessary to separate two notions of selection here. If we are thinking of the selection from a set of polysemous or homonymous readings, then in a sense the process is obviously at least potentially bidirectional and there is no clear distinction between selector and selectee. In the combination *a hard match*, for example, *hard* rules out the reading "device for producing a flame" for *match*, and *match* rules out the reading "not soft" for *hard*, and we are left with the interpretation "difficult contest". Here we have a combination of two words, each with more than one reading, but there is only one philonymous combination of readings, and this emerges as the preferred interpretation. However, if we look closely at the relations between the meanings of items in a grammatical construction, we usually find another species of directionality, in that it is much easier to specify the restrictions imposed by one of the items than the other. Suppose we set ourselves the task of specifying the semantic nature of the adjectives which form philonymous modifier-head pairs with a noun such as *match* ("contest"). Think of the range of possibilities:

(14) home, ill-tempered, exciting, hard-fought, postponed, three-day, all-ticket, important, decisive, qualifying

There is no cover term, or superordinate notion which encompasses all these, even approximately. The only thing they have in common is that they go normally with *match*. But look now at *hard* ("difficult") and perform the same exercise:

(15) game, exercise, problem, journey, climb, job, crossword, exam

In this case we can roughly define the qualifying head nouns as falling under the general heading of "human activity requiring effort". The same can be done with the other readings of both *hard* and *match*: in each case, the philonym partners of the *hard* readings can be given a general specification, but those of the *match* readings cannot. In fact it becomes clear that the mechanism of selection for *match* readings is as follows: *match* readings select those adjectives whose co-occurrence preferences they satisfy. In other words, the apparent bidirectional selection has a unidirectional basis.

The direction in which selection operates, is correlated with grammar. The relevant generalization is that adjectives select their head nouns and verbs select their complements; nouns, in general, are always selectees. This can be made into a more satisfying generalization in logical terms: predicates select, and arguments are selected. Why this should be so is an interesting question.

Perhaps it is something to do with the fact that arguments are so intimately connected via reference to things in the outside, non-linguistic world, whose nature is not limited to a finite set of properties. A set of properties may serve to identify a referent as belonging to this or that class, but the referent itself goes beyond those properties. For instance, *teacher* represents a set of properties, knowledge of which enables us to distinguish teachers from non-teachers in the world. But once we have identified an extralinguistic teacher, we can predicate things of them which have nothing to do with the identifying properties: *sad*, *angry*, *tall*, *rich*, etc. Predicates, on the other hand, inhabit a different, conceptual world, whose denizens ARE mutually limiting.

The second aspect of directionality concerns the phenomenon of pleonasm. Generally speaking, if a combination of words is to be normal (i.e. non-pleonastic), the combination must yield more information (in a broad sense) than either of the combined items on its own. This must be pretty obvious. What is slightly less obvious is that the burden of providing extra information falls asymmetrically on the combined items. The categories used above, of predicate and argument, are of no help in formulating a regularity here. What we need instead are the categories of **(semantic) head** and **(semantic) dependant**.

Roughly speaking, the semantic head of a combination (construction) is the element which governs the semantic relations of the combination, viewed as a unit, with other elements or combinations. Take the case of an adjective-noun combination: this combination may in turn combine with a verb, but it is only the semantic properties of the noun which determine whether the combination is normal or philonymic. Take the combination *The small table sneezed*, which we can all agree is odd. Suppose we hold *sneezed* constant and ask ourselves what is the minimal change which will restore normality. The answer is that we must change *table* (*The small boy sneezed*); no fiddling about with the adjective will produce any effect. Of course, *small* semantically interacts with *table* (**the small phoneme/meaning*), but once the combination is effected, *small* has no further combinatory role to play. Similar arguments show that it is the verb which governs the combinatorial properties of a verb phrase.

Now that we have a notion of semantic head and its dependants, we are in a position to state a generalization regarding pleonasm: it is the duty of a non-head to bring information not available in the head; the head is under no such compulsion. This conforms with the observation of pleonasm in:

(16) a female aunt
a new innovation
Please repeat it for me again.
He kicked it with his foot.
She chewed it in her mouth.
I heard it by listening.
etc.

(The reader may consider me pedantic on some of these examples.)

12.5 Syntagmatic and paradigmatic relations

There are certain systematic connections between syntagmatic and paradigmatic sense relations which are worth signalling.

12.5.1 Pleonasm

In cases of pleonasm, the oddness can in general be 'cured' by substituting one of the tautonyms by a hyponym or hyponymous expression, or the other by a superordinate. This gives us a way of identifying the head and dependent elements: the head is the item whose substitution by a superordinate cures the pleonasm. What the successful substitutions do, of course, is to restore the situation where the dependent item contributes new information. Some examples follow:

(17) male uncle (pleonastic)
gay/macho uncle (normal: *gay* and *macho* are hyponyms of *male*)
male relation (normal: *relation* is a superordinate of *uncle*)

(18) He kicked it with his foot. (pleonastic)
He kicked it with his left foot. (normal: *left foot* is hyponymous to *foot*)
He struck it with his foot. (normal: *struck* is superordinate to *kick*)

12.5.2 Clash

The severity of a clash can be roughly estimated by examining the minimal change required to cure it. This enables us to put a little more flesh on the notions of *inappropriateness*, *paradox*, and *incongruity*. Inappropriateness is a type of clash which can be cured by substitution of one of the xenonyms by a propositional synonym:

(19) The geranium passed away. (inappropriateness)
The geranium died. (normal: *died* is a propositional synonym of *pass away*)

Paradox is a more serious type of clash which can be cured by substituting one of the xenonyms by an incompatible or immediate superordinate:

(20) The cat barked. (paradox)
The dog barked. (normal: *dog* is an incompatible of *cat*)
The animal barked. (normal: *animal* is a superordinate of *cat*)
The cat emitted a noise. (normal: *emit a noise* is superordinate to *bark*)

Incongruity is an incurable clash:

(21) powdered thrills (?*finely divided experiences*)

12.5.3 Normality/philonyms

It is not generally the case that if X is a philonym of Y, then any superordinate of X is also a philonym. (One can easily think of cases where the result is normal: *The dog/animal barked*, to look no further.) This is because the result may be pleonastic: *He kicked it with his left foot/?foot*. Nor is it the case that if X is a philonym of Y, then any hyponym of X is also a philonym. Again drawing on the above examples, *The dog barked/The collie barked* is fine, but *The animal barked/?The cat barked* is not. However, it might be surmised that if X is a philonym of Y, no superordinate of X can be a xenonym of Y. Thinking of a hyponym as having 'more meaning' than its superordinate, and assuming that any clash must be attributable to some bit of the meaning of X, how can taking away a bit of meaning produce a clash? Well, what about *a homeopathic doctor/?a homeopathic human being*? The explanation for this seems to run as follows. If the meaning of X can be represented as [A] + [B], then an adjective modifying X may attach itself uniquely to [B]. Suppose, now, that Y contains only the component [A]; the adjective is then forced to attach itself to [A], with which it may clash. This is a plausible explanation of what happens with *homeopathic doctor*: if we analyse "doctor" into [HUMAN] + [PRACTICES MEDICINE], then *homeopathic* will modify only the second component, and when that is removed, it will be forced to modify [HUMAN], with which it clashes. Whether this can happen also with natural kinds is an interesting question.

12.6 Some puzzles

The effect of putting words together is not always what might be predicted on general grounds. A particular example of this is the failure of pleonasm to appear in certain circumstances. Consider the following examples:

(22) Mary rushed quickly to the door.
(23) John murmured softly in Bertha's ear.
(24) Some children were shouting loudly in the street.
(25) During last summer's scorching heat-wave . . .
(26) Jack gasped—a huge giant stood at the door.

Somehow, these are not as bad as they should be: after all, surely quickness is of the essence of rushing, softness of murmuring, loudness of shouting, and so on. Also, substituting antonyms for these epithets results in paradox:

(27) ?Mary rushed slowly to the door.
(28) ?John murmured loudly in Mary's ear.
(29) ?Some children were shouting softly in the street.
(30) ?Jack gasped—a small giant stood at the door.

In examples like (22)–(26), instead of pleonasm, we seem to get either reinforcement, or something like semantic agreement. It is difficult to say under what circumstances pleonasm does not appear. All the examples mentioned here involve some gradable (adverbial) property which is incorporated into the meaning of a verb: expressing the same idea with a separate adverb has the effect of reinforcing the notion. The same effect appears with *Johnny was very, very, very naughty*, where every extra *very* adds intensity; on the other hand, in *Johnny was extremely, extremely, extremely naughty*, the extra *extremely*'s come across (to me at least) as merely redundant.

Another type of situation where pleonasm fails to appear occurs with certain verbs of bodily motion. Consider the following:

(31) Mary shrugged her shoulders.
(32) Mary stamped her foot in annoyance.
(33) Mary pouted her lips.

Why are these not pleonastic? What else can one shrug with except one's shoulders, or pout with, except one's lips? Also, *What Mary pouted was her lips* and *What Mary shrugged were her shoulders* are pleonastic, and, of course, *What Mary shrugged were her thighs* and *What Mary pouted were her ears* are paradoxical. The generalization here seems to be that these verbs denote actions which can serve as signals. If the body part is not explicitly mentioned, then the signalling function of the action is highlighted (*Mary shrugged, Mary pouted*); if the body part *is* mentioned, the action itself is highlighted, and this may, or may not, be intended also to carry the conventional message (cf. *John shrugged his shoulders to dislodge the parrot* and *?John shrugged to dislodge the parrot*). The impossibility of **Mary smiled her lips* or **Mary frowned her forehead* is presumably due to the fact that these are basically intransitive verbs but the question remains of why this should be so.

12.7 Specifying co-occurrence restrictions

In this section some of the problems of stating the co-occurrence regularities of words will be discussed, without, perhaps, all of them being resolved.

Classically, selectional restrictions were stated in the form of semantic categories to which lexical partners had to belong (recall that most selectees are nouns). Furthermore, these categories were of the classical variety, with sharp boundaries and necessary and sufficient criteria for membership. So, for instance, in the case of *X drank Y* and *X poured Y into Z*, the selectional restrictions of both *drink* and *pour* require that Y denote a liquid. Violation of the restriction leads to anomaly. Hence, the following are normal:

(34) John drank the milk.
(35) John poured the milk into the cup.

(36) Mary drank the beer.
(37) Mary poured the petrol into the can.

while the following are not:

(38) ?John drank the bread.
(39) ?John poured the cabbage into the pan.
(40) ?Mary drank her wedding ring.
(41) ?Mary poured the cup into the milk.

In some cases (but probably not any of the above), the anomaly can be resolved by reinterpreting the sentence as a metaphor:

(42) Mary drank in John's words.

If the patient (i.e. the thing affected) of either of these verbs is not specified, then the feature [LIQUID] will be transferred to them; thus, in each of the following, a normal interpretation would be that the patient is in liquid form:

(43) Mary drank the medicine.
(44) John poured the butter over the meat.
(45) The aliens were drinking a purplish substance.

This is all very well, so far as it goes. However, consider, first, the following:

(46) Mary poured the sugar into the bowl.
(47) The lorry poured the bricks onto the road.

By no stretch of the imagination can the sugar and bricks be considered to belong to the category of liquids, yet these sentences are not as anomalous (are they at all?) as they ought to be. One possibility is that we have misidentified the selectional restriction: perhaps the restriction for *pour*, at least, should require that the patient is capable of flowing. This would seem reasonable for sugar, but is it plausible for bricks? Do they flow? Here we seem to be stretching the meaning of *flow* somewhat.

Second, consider the following:

(48) Mary drank the petrol.
(49) John drank the sulphuric acid.

Are these normal? The patients are certainly liquids. If not, is this a sign that the selectional restrictions as specified are inadequate? If we think of drinking as a purely physical activity—the ingestion of liquids—then these are not odd. If Mary took in some petrol in the way that people normally take in water, then we would have to describe her action as *drinking*. However, there are other aspects to drinking: people usually drink to satisfy a thirst, for nourishment, or for enjoyment. Drinking harmful liquids is definitely eccentric.

A way of accommodating both these types of case is to take a view akin to the prototype view of categories. There are no hard and fast rules for combining words, combinations are not either normal or anomalous, they are more or less normal. We can therefore say, for instance, that *pour* has a preference for liquid patients; that is, the more the patient behaves like a liquid, the more normal the result will be (or, the better an example of the use of *pour* we will have). In a sense, bricks in large enough numbers falling out of a lorry, and from a distance, have some of the characteristics of "flowing", and to that extent resemble a liquid. In the case of drinking, there are prototypical and less prototypical instances of drinking. To characterize prototypical instances, we need to bring in more than just the physical nature of what is drunk. For these reasons, it is better to speak of selectional preferences. And yet there is still a problem here. In some sense, liquidness is more essential to drinking than harmlessness. It is necessary, for drinking (or pouring) to occur, that the patient should be sufficiently liquid-like; it is not necessary that the liquid should be nourishing, therapeutic, or thirst quenching. So we haven't completely got rid of necessity.

In some cases it is difficult to pin down exactly what the co-occurrence constraints are. Take the case of the adjective *avid*. Dictionaries typically mention interest, enthusiasm:

> Someone who is avid has an extreme interest in something so that they do it with enthusiasm. (*Collins Cobuild Dictionary*.)
> strongly interested, enthusiastic. (*Longman Dictionary of the English Language*.)

These definitions seem to capture the sense of *avid* in, for example: *an avid reader*, *an avid television viewer*, *an avid stamp-collector*. But this sense does not rule out the following less normal collocations, which seem to fall under the definitions given: *?an avid footballer*, *an avid gambler*, *an avid musician* (although *an avid concert-goer* is OK), *an avid botanist*. Some sense of consumption or acquisition seems to be necessary: compare *?an avid computer hacker*, which has no orientation towards reception, and *an avid net-surfer* which has. Even this is not quite right, because *an avid womanizer* and *an avid drinker* do not feel good either (although the latter case might be explained by the necessity for "interest"): it seems that satisfaction of the basic appetites does not count. It is not clear what sort of account of selectional preferences is called for in such cases. It may be that we could build up a picture of a prototypical avid person in terms of which an account of preference grading could be framed. (The picture is complicated by the slightly different, but none the less related, requirements of *avid for*: This is satisfactory in combination with: *praise*, *affection*, *knowledge*, *recognition*; but less so with: *sex*(?), *food*, *exercise*, *music*, *money*.)

12.8 Co-occurrence patterns between words

It is a commonplace observation that words prefer some partners to others. And some dictionaries take it upon themselves to impart what they call 'collocational information' to their readers. In this section we shall look at the different factors (not excluding the semantic factors discussed above) which govern the relative frequency of association of two (or more) words, and in the process we shall hope to provide a rationale for a useful lexicographic practice.

The question we shall attempt to answer will be formulated comparatively: Why does A have a greater affinity for X than for Y? This will be helpful in isolating the different factors. The notion of (collocational) affinity refers to the ratio between the actual co-occurrence of two words, and their predicted co-occurrence on the basis of their individual frequencies in the language. The first distinction to be made is between those cases where the reason for A's preference for X over Y is due to a semantic clash between A and Y, and the absence of such a clash between A and X, and those cases where there is no such clash between A and Y, and yet A has a greater affinity for X. We shall begin with the latter type of case.

12.8.1 Extralinguistic factors

Some of the possible reasons for the greater affinity of A for X rather than Y are not located in the language at all, but in the extralinguistic world. For instance, one reason why *Jane fried the egg* is more frequent than *Jane fried the lettuce* is simply that people in the world are more likely to fry eggs than lettuce. It is not that there is anything about lettuce that prevents it being fried: on the contrary, fried lettuce is delicious. Similarly, the reason *old* has a greater affinity for *clothes* than for *newspapers* is simply that people tend to throw newspapers away when their day is past, but hang on to clothes a bit longer, so that there are more old examples around. However, frequency in the extralinguistic world is not the only consideration, since something may be very frequent, but not often noticed or realized, and is therefore not often talked about. So, for instance, there are probably more old pebbles in the world than old men, but first, old pebbles do not enter our consciousness very often, that is to say, they have low salience, and second, it is much less easy to gauge the age of a pebble than that of a man, that is to say, this is knowledge that we are less likely to have. A further governing factor is significance: to what extent does it matter whether something is old or not? It may be presumed that the more significance something has, the more it gets talked about. Again, there are probably as many old trees as old men, but it matters little, generally speaking, whether a tree is old or young. But it makes a great deal of difference (generally) whether a man is old or young. This is the probable explanation of why the most frequent collocation of *old* in present-day English is *man*.

12.8.2 Stereotypic combinations

A factor leading to collocational affinity which lies on the border between the linguistic and the non-linguistic is the existence of **stereotypic combinations**, such as the co-occurrence of *beautiful* with *flower(s)*, or *dear* with *friend*. This is to be distinguished from what will be called **clichés** below: there, it is a matter of there being a standardized way of saying something (although there are alternatives); here, it is a matter of there being a standardized thing to say, or perhaps more revealingly, a standardized thing to think. This seems more a matter of the culture than of the language as such.

12.8.3 Default patterns (clichés)

A number of factors leading to collocational affinity are, of course, part of the language. We shall make a distinction between patterns of co-occurrence, divergence from which leads to anomaly of some kind, and those where there is not necessarily any anomaly, merely a degree of markedness or heightened salience. An example of the latter type is *barefaced lie*, where *shameless*, *brazen*, *unabashed*, *insolent*, or *blatant* would be semantically compatible, but the choice of one of these would be less 'automatic'. Another example is:

(50) X was last night under intense pressure to resign.

Here, the meaning of *intense* would be equally well conveyed by *strong* or *extreme*, but is significantly more likely. Similarly, *fresh allegations* (cf. *new allegations*), *gross negligence* (cf. *great negligence*), etc.

12.8.4 'Arbitrary' collocational restrictions

It is obvious enough that the meanings of words have an effect on their collocational affinity. A foreigner who knew the meanings of the words would not need to be told that *The farmer killed the rabbit* is more likely to occur in English than *The farmer killed the gate*. It is not that occasions of gate killing are rare in English-speaking countries (but a national pastime elsewhere); it is rather that they are inconceivable anywhere. This is because things have to be alive before they can be killed, and gates are just not living things. Here it is a matter of the satisfaction, or otherwise, of inherent selectional preferences. A person who consistently got this sort of thing wrong would be suspected of either a deficient knowledge of the meanings of the words, or insanity. However, as we saw above, there are also selectional preferences which are arbitrary in the sense of not being predictable from general knowledge. For instance, we say *a high wind* but *heavy rain*. In each case the adjective indicates the degree to which the relevant phenomenon is manifesting itself, and the degree is the same in both cases. But we cannot say *a heavy wind* or *high rain*. There is no inherent semantic incompatibility between "high degree" and "wind": the incompatibility is between the word *heavy* and the word *wind*.

This is information that even a sane foreign learner cannot be expected to have, and should be presented in any dictionary that aims at comprehensiveness. (Notice that it is not entirely clear that the collocational affinities proposed between *kill* and *rabbit*, and between *high* and *wind* will show up as enhanced collocational frequency. In the case of *kill* and *rabbit*, the effect might be masked by the infrequency with which people kill rabbits, or the lack of newsworthiness of such events. In the case of *high* and *wind*, it could well be that the frequency of *high wind* is less than what would be predicted from the separate frequencies of *high* and *wind*. The problem here is what should be counted. If we count word forms, then it is not clear that affinity will be reflected in frequency. If, on the other hand, we look at occurrences of the notion "high wind", then we would expect the form *high wind* to be the most frequent. Or perhaps we should be more specific still, and ask ourselves, given that we wish to express the notion "high wind", and given that we wish to use the word *wind*, what would be its most likely partner?)

12.8.5 Non-compositional affinities

A special type of affinity holds between lexical items which occur in a non-compositional (e.g. idiomatic) combination such as *pull someone's leg*. Expressions of this sort were discussed in Chapter 4.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. None of the following sentences is ambiguous, although each one contains at least one ambiguous word. Explain carefully how the selection of appropriate senses operates:
   (i) A: Are you going to the club tonight?
   B: I'll have to go to the bank first.
   (ii) Have you booked the right turn?
   (iii) She had gained several pounds since she had worn this ensemble last.

2. Identify the degree of clash in the following (i.e. inappropriateness, paradox, incongruity):
   (i) She's more than just a pretty countenance.
   (ii) The president is said to be unconvinced by the locomotion.
   (iii) Mum, it's so nice to be back in my place of domicile again!
   (iv) The whole thing was over in an age.
   (v) I don't know if he acted from motives of despair or crockery.

3. Consider the selectional restrictions governing the X-position in the following (give a prototype account where appropriate):

a record X X is sad a leisurely X Can you lend me an X? (consider why *tree* is odd in this position)

Suggestions for further reading

This chapter is mostly a development of ideas which first appeared in Cruse (1986), especially chs. 4.12 and 12.2. Cruse (forthcoming *a*) takes a prototype-theoretical approach to syntagmatic sense relations. The notion of 'semantic head' presented here is quite closely parallelled by Langacker's 'profile determinant' (see Langacker 1991*b*). For a structuralist account of selectional restrictions, see Kastovsky (1980). Katz and Fodor (1963) give the first generative version. Jackendoff's 'preference rules' (see, for instance, Jackendoff 1983) yield a prototype-like account of co-occurrence restrictions/preferences.

CHAPTER 13

Lexical decomposition

13.1 **Introduction** 239

13.2 **The prima-facie motivation for lexical decomposition** 239

13.3 **The aims of lexical decomposition** 242

13.4 **Problematic aspects of lexical decomposition** 254

13.5 **What are the alternatives to lexical decomposition?** 260

Discussion questions and exercises 261

Suggestions for further reading 261

CHAPTER 13

Lexical decomposition

13.1 Introduction

The search for semantic atoms, or 'the alphabet of thought'—the smallest units of meaning out of which all other meanings are built—has a long history, and is very much alive today still. It has survived intense opposition, even ridicule. In fact, it is probably true to say that virtually every attempt to explicate a rich word meaning ends up by giving some sort of breakdown into simpler semantic components. There seems no other way to do it, or at least nothing that is not merely a 'notational variant'. Some prototype theorists (see Chapter 7) valiantly stand out against the general trend, hoping to develop a more 'analogical' way of approaching meaning (as opposed to the 'digital' nature of componential theory). But it is none the less striking how easily even prototype theorists can slip into using feature representations. However, even within a broad acceptance of the validity of the feature approach, there is scope for quite radical disagreements on such topics as the nature of semantic features, how they are to be discovered and verified, how they combine, whether all aspects of word meaning are susceptible to a feature analysis, and so on.

13.2 The prima-facie motivation for lexical decomposition

It is sometimes proposed that the semantic atoms of a natural language are the meanings of its lexical items. On this view, complex meanings are certainly built up out of combinations of simpler ones, but there is no need to break up the meanings of individual words (or at least, morphemes): they are seen as unanalysable monads. It would therefore be useful for us to look first of all at the sort of reasons that have been put forward for lexical decomposition, that give the componential enterprise a prima-facie plausibility.

13.2.1 Partial similarities

One such reason is the intuition that a pair of words may be partially similar in meaning and partially different. There is a certain plausibility in construing this situation in terms of components of meaning some of which are common to the two words in question, and some of which are not shared. As an obvious example of such a case, take *mare* and *stallion*. The similarity between these can be expressed by saying that they are both horses, that is, they share the component [HORSE], and that they differ in that *mare* has a component [FEMALE] not shared by *stallion*, and *stallion has* [MALE], which is not present in the meaning of *mare*. Or take the case of *heavy* and *light*: these share the component of [WEIGHT], and differ in that *heavy* has a component [MORE THAN AVERAGE], where *light* has [LESS THAN AVERAGE]. A concrete analogy for this might be a mixture of sand and salt, on the one hand, and a mixture of sand and sugar on the other. Both preparations share a property of grittiness, which can be attributed to the presence of sand in each; but they differ in taste, which can be attributed to the fact that one contains sugar and the other, salt. The concrete analogy of a mixture was chosen deliberately, because in a mixture, the properties of the individual constituents are still in evidence in the mixture. Many systems of lexical decomposition seem to aim at something of this sort. It is worth noticing, however, that if chemical compounding were thought to be a more appropriate analogy, the nature of semantic composition would change radically, and we would be looking for quite different sorts of components. Take the case of salt, which is a compound of sodium and chlorine: very few, if any, of the properties of either sodium or chlorine are observable in salt.

13.2.2 Correlations

The examples of partial similarity which provide the most convincing evidence for lexical decomposition are **correlations**, where the proposed components can be seen to be distributed independently of one another. The following are examples:

(1)	[MALE]	[FEMALE]
[SHEEP]	ram	ewe
[HORSE]	stallion	mare

The components [MALE] and [FEMALE] are widely distributed in the language; [FEMALE], for instance, occurs in: *mother*, *daughter*, *wife*, *girl*, *woman*, *aunt*, *sow*, *cow*, *doe*, *filly*, *vixen*, *hen*, and many others; [HORSE] occurs in *horse*, *mustang*, *foal*, *gelding*, and probably also forms part of the definition of *stable*, *jockey*, *neigh*, *fetlock*, etc.

Further illustrative examples are given in (2) and (3):

(2)

	[ADULT]	[YOUNG]
[HUMAN]	adult	child
[SHEEP]	sheep	ewe

Notice that when a polysemous word appears in a correlation, only one of its senses (see Chapter 6) is intended to be operative. For example, there is a sense in which a lamb is a sheep, but there is nothing odd about saying *Make sure that the lambs do not get separated from the sheep*. It is the latter sense which is intended in (2). (*Adult* is likewise polysemous.)

(3)

	[ADULT]	[YOUNG]
[MALE]	man	boy
[FEMALE]	woman	girl

A two-dimensional correlation does not necessarily give a full analysis of the meaning of a word. In (2), [YOUNG] [SHEEP] seems a satisfactory analysis of *lamb*, but [YOUNG] [FEMALE] is not a satisfactory analysis of *girl*: the [HUMAN] factor is missing.

13.2.3 Discontinuities

In some cases there is more direct evidence of the functional discreteness of a portion of meaning, in the form of a discontinuity of some sort in the semantic structure of a sense. Some examples will make this point clearer.

(i) The ambiguity of *I almost killed her* ("I was on the point of carrying out an action (e.g. pulling the trigger of a gun) which would have caused her to die"/"I acted in such a way as to cause her to be almost dead" (e.g. by squeezing her windpipe)) suggests a functional autonomy for components [CAUSE] and [DIE] within the meaning of *kill*.

(ii) The fact that *The astronaut re-entered the atmosphere* is appropriate even on the astronaut's first trip into space, indicates that we must analyse "re-enter" into (at least) MOVE and IN, since in the case mentioned, the recurrence signalled by *re-* applies only to IN, that is, the astronaut must on some previous occasion have been located inside the earth's atmosphere. (According to my intuitions—but this is a matter for argument—the sentence is not ambiguous: it does not matter whether the astronaut has had a previous experience of entering the atmosphere or not.)

(iii) The fact that the default reading of *That's not a stallion* is that the animal indicated is a mare, that is to say, the negative applies only to the [MALE] component, leaving the HORSE component untouched (although complete negation is of course also possible in appropriate contexts) is evidence of the separability of [MALE]. (Notice also the potential ambiguity of *an overworked stallion* ("too much pulling of heavy carts"/

"required to perform stud duties with too many mares"), which testifies further to the functional independence of [MALE].)

13.2.4 Simplex: complex parallels

In many cases, grammatically simple forms have semantic properties either very similar to, or closely parallel to, complex forms. Consider the case of *false* and *untrue*. In the case of *untrue*, the notions [NOT] and [VERACIOUS] (let's say) are expressed by different morphemes, so the meaning of *untrue* ***must*** be analysed as complex. But what about *false*? There is no morphological evidence for complexity, but in view of the close meaning relationship to *untrue*, it would seem almost perverse not to give *false* the same semantic analysis. There are countless similar cases. Synonymy is not necessary. Compare *rise*/*fall* with *lengthen*/*shorten* (in their intransitive senses). *Lengthen* and *shorten* are clearly related morphologically to *long* and *short*, and can be analysed semantically as [BECOME] [MORE] [LONG] and [BECOME] [MORE] [SHORT]. Now, given that the contrast between *lengthen* and *shorten* is the same as that between *rise* and *fall*, and given that the semantic relation between *lengthen* and *long* is the same as that between *rise* and *high* (and *fall* and *low*), surely this justifies a componential analysis of *rise* and *fall* as [BECOME] [MORE] [HIGH] and [BECOME] [MORE] [LOW], respectively?

13.3 The aims of lexical decomposition

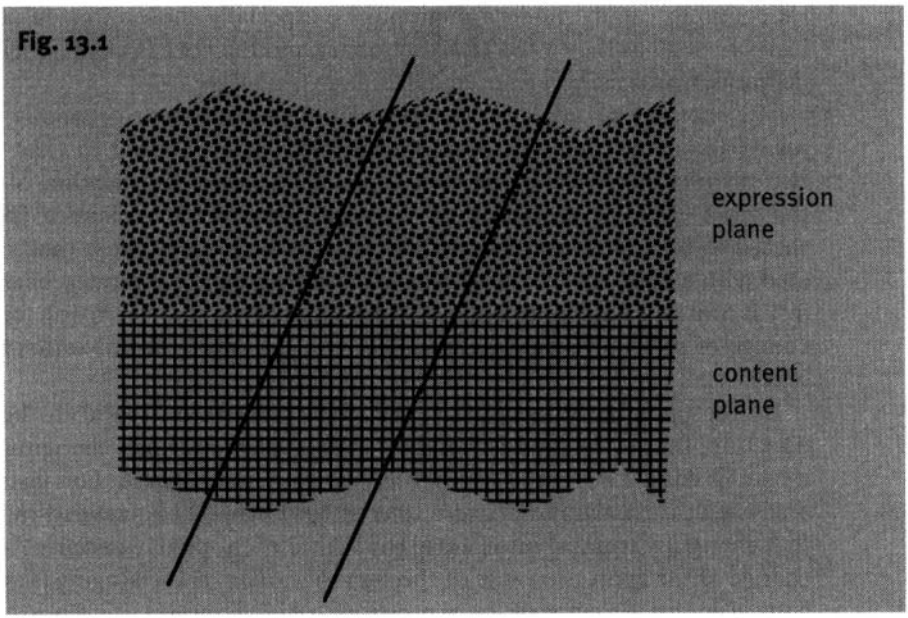
In this section we look in greater detail at the sorts of ideal end-results that various semanticists have aspired to in embarking on a componential analysis of general vocabulary. It is worth pointing out that most have been content to work on small groups of words that were hopefully representative of the lexicon as a whole.

13.3.1 Reduction (cf. dictionaries)

An important aim of many componentialists (although not necessarily all) has been to achieve a genuinely reductive analysis of the realm of meaning. As an illustration of this 'mindset', we may take the example of the Danish linguist Louis Hjelmslev.

Hjelmslev was a representative of early European structuralism in linguistics; his was the first definite proposal for a componential semantics, following up a suggestion of Saussure's. He started from Saussure's well-known conception of the linguistic sign, illustrated in Fig. 13.1.

Saussure imagined a realm of all possible meanings, which he called the 'content plane' of language (originally, 'le plan du contenu') and a realm of all possible human linguistic sounds, which he called the 'expression plane' (le



plan de l'expression'). He then characterized the linguistic sign as a slice through the two planes, which created an arbitrary (in the semiotic sense) association between a specific sound and a specific meaning.

Now, a study of the sound aspect of the signs in any natural language shows that they lend themselves to a genuine reductive analysis, that is, they can be progressively analysed into combinations of ever simpler units belonging to smaller and smaller inventories. Take the case of English. We may take it that the vocabulary of English comprises several hundreds of thousands of items. However, the sound structures of these items are not like the pebbles on a beach, each one idiosyncratically individual and not systematically related to any others: all the words of English (in their sound aspect) can be shown to be built up out of combinations of smaller units drawn from a much more restricted list of 200–300 syllables; these in turn can be shown to be made up of phonemes drawn from an even smaller list (20–80), themselves analysable as combinations of distinctive features numbering no more than a dozen or so. In this way, the initial bewildering variety is reduced to systematic order. Hjelmslev believed in the symmetry of the two planes of language, and concluded that it ought to be possible to perform a parallel analysis of the content plane of signs which would achieve a similar reduction of bewildering variety to system and order.

For Hjelmslev, the simpler meaning units in question were essentially the meanings of other words. Hjelmslev thus hoped to arrive at a restricted basic vocabulary in terms of which all other meanings could be expressed. It is worth noting that this aspiration is still very much alive in the world of

lexicography: many modern dictionaries, especially those targeted at foreign learners, such as the *COBUILD* dictionary and the *OALD*, deliberately aim to define all words using a restricted defining vocabulary.

The method of analysis was based on **commutation**, originally used to justify phonemic analysis. A phonemic difference was said to exist between two distinct elements of the expression plane when substitution of one for the other entails a change in the content plane. So, for instance, [p] can be shown to be a different phoneme from [b] in English, because [pin] is associated with a different meaning from [bin]. However, the aspirated bilabial stop [p^h] is not a different phoneme from the unaspirated form [p], because a change of meaning is never associated with the choice of one rather than the other.

By the principle of symmetry, the same procedure is valid in the reverse direction, that is, we have isolated a semantic element when changing a bit of meaning entails a parallel change in the expression plane. For instance, an analysis of the meaning of *mare* into [HORSE] [FEMALE] is justified by the fact that changing [FEMALE] into [MALE] (by a kind of thought experiment) entails a change of the expression side of the sign to *stallion*, and changing [HORSE] into [SHEEP] entails a change of the expression to *ram*. However, if we postulate that the meaning of *horse* includes the semantic component [BLACK], then this is not supported, because changing it to [BROWN] entails no change in the associated phonetic form.

A distinction was made between components belonging to restricted inventories and those belonging to unrestricted inventories. Take the case of *stallion* analysed as [HORSE] [MALE], once again; the substitution possibilities of [MALE] are very restricted indeed, the only possibility being [FEMALE]; the possibilities for [HORSE], however, are much wider. Components belonging to restricted inventories are the more significant for reductive purposes, since they have the widest distribution, in the sense of occurring with the greatest variety of other components.

Mention has been made above of the importance to Hjelmslev of a reductive analysis. Let us see how this works out in practice. Take a set of words such as the following:

rise	raise	high
fall	lower	low
lengthen (1)	lengthen (2)	long
shorten (1)	shorten (2)	short

(Lengthen (1) and shorten (1) are intransitive, like rise and fall; lengthen (2) and shorten (2) are transitive/causative like raise and lower)

This is a highly structured set, with many sets of correlated contrasts. If we take the lexical items to be the minimal semantic atoms, then this set needs twelve semantic units for its description. Such a description will not give an

account of the parallelisms: these would have to be stated separately. Now suppose we perform the following analysis:

rise = [BECOME] [MORE] [HIGH]
fall = [BECOME] [MORE] [LOW]

raise = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [HIGH]
lower = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [LOW]

lengthen (1) = [BECOME] [MORE] [LONG]
shorten (1) = [BECOME] [MORE] [SHORT]

lengthen (2) = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [LONG]
shorten (2) = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [SHORT]

This new analysis shows that the contrast between, for instance, *rise* and *fall* is the same as that between *raise* and *lower*, since both are attributable to the contrast between [HIGH] and [LOW]. Also, the contrast between *high* and *raise* is the same as that between *long* and *lengthen (2)*, and so on. Notice that this is achieved with the use of only seven components, as opposed to twelve without lexical decomposition. The economy becomes more striking if other items are added to the set:

wide	widen (1)	widen (2)
narrow	narrow (1)	narrow (2)
thick	thicken (1)	thicken (2)
thin	thin (2)	
strong	strengthen (1)	strengthen (2)
weak	weaken (1)	weaken (2)

Without lexical decomposition, these would add eighteen more semantic atoms, giving thirty in total; with decomposition along the above lines, only six new semantic elements are necessary, giving a total of thirteen for the set.

However, there are correlations in our set of words that cannot be expressed by our analysis as it stands, for instance:

rise:fall::lengthen (1):shorten (1)

Accounting for this should lead to even greater economy in the inventory of components. Consider the following:

raise = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [HIGH]
lower = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [LOW]

lengthen (2) = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [LONG]
shorten (2) = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [SHORT]

The parallelism here can be captured if we analyse as follows:

raise = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [HIGH]
lower = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [LESS] [HIGH]

lengthen (2) = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [LONG]
shorten (2) = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [LESS] [LONG]

This seems on the right lines, but, as it stands, it loses the parallelism *raise:lower::high:low*. It appears that a more radical analysis is required:

raise = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [MORE] [HEIGHT] [REF: X]
lower = [CAUSE] [BECOME] [LESS] [HEIGHT] [REF: X]

Here we introduce the notion of a reference point: to raise something is to cause it to be at a greater height than some reference point, normally the height it was before the act of raising took place. This notion of reference point can be used also in the analysis of *high* and *low* (and *mutatis mutandis*, *long* and *short*) since something which is high is at a greater height (and something low is at a lesser height) than some reference point, often an average of some sort (see discussion of antonyms in Chapter 9):

high = [MORE] [HEIGHT] [REF: Average]
low = [LESS] [HEIGHT] [REF: Average]

long = [MORE] [LENGTH] [REF: Average]
short = [LESS] [LENGTH] [REF: Average]

At first sight this does not seem to reduce the number of components. However, the pay-off comes when we extend the analysis to larger sets, because the addition merely of a single new dimension, for example, [SPEED], [WEIGHT], [HARDNESS], or whatever, allows us to account for the meanings and relationships of six new words.

The discussion so far has sought to illustrate the effects of allowing componential analysis to be motivated by the existence of correlations and the need to be reductive. It is as well, however, to bear in mind the limitations of such an analysis. Two are worth emphasizing at this point. The first is that the proportion of the vocabulary which lends itself to this sort of analysis is relatively restricted: the majority of words remain unanalysed. Areas which have proved amenable to componential analysis are, for example, kinship terms, terms referring to male/female/young/adult animals and humans, and binary oppositions like those discussed above. The second point is that even when a word can be analysed, like *stallion*, the analysis leaves much semantic knowledge unaccounted for.

A radical, relatively recent proposal for reductive analysis of word meaning is that of Anna Wierzbicka (1996), who is probably the most original of contemporary componentialists, and is certainly the most thoroughgoing. She takes her inspiration not from the structuralists, but from much further back in the past: her source is Leibniz, who was the first to attempt to discover an

'alphabet of thought' by reducing complex meanings to combinations of simpler ones. Leibniz followed a Hjelmslev-like procedure of beginning with complex meanings (like "stallion") and reducing them to simpler ones, guided by the meanings of other words. When reduction could go no further, Leibniz thought, one will have arrived at the fundamental units of thought. Wierzbicka does things the other way round: she starts with a small list of what appear to be indispensable notions (her original list had exactly eleven members), and tries to express as many meanings as possible with these, only adding items to the list of primitives when forced to do so. Her current list (not held to be definitive) runs as follows:

"substantives"	[I], [YOU], [SOMEONE], [SOMETHING], [PEOPLE]
"determiners"	[THIS], [THE SAME], [OTHER], [SOME]
"augmentor"	[MORE]
"quantifiers"	[ONE], [TWO], [MANY/MUCH], [ALL]
"mental predicates"	[THINK], [KNOW], [WANT], [FEEL], [SEE], [HEAR]
"non-mental predicates"	[MOVE], [THERE IS], [(BE) ALIVE]
"speech"	[SAY]
"actions and events"	[DO], [HAPPEN]
"evaluators"	[GOOD], [BAD]
"descriptors"	[BIG], [SMALL]
"time"	[WHEN], [BEFORE], [AFTER], [A LONG TIME], [A SHORT TIME], [NOW]
"space"	[WHERE], [UNDER], [ABOVE], [FAR], [NEAR], [SIDE], [INSIDE], [HERE]
"partonomy"	[PART (OF)]
"taxonomy"	[KIND]
"metapredicates"	[NO], [CAN], [VERY]
"interclausal linkers"	[IF], [BECAUSE], [LIKE]
"imagination and possibility"	[IF . . . WOULD], [MAYBE]
"words"	[WORD]

To qualify as a member of this list, a suggested primitive must be universal (this is of course hard to check, but it must be expressible in all known languages). Wierzbicka argues that since all humans are born with the same innate capacities, if the primitives are a reflection of innate semantic capacities, then an apparent primitive that appears in some languages but not others must be expressible in terms of primitives that appear in all languages. Primitives must also not be abstract, they must be accessible to direct intuition, and any proposed analyses should pass the test of native speaker judgements of plausibility. She dismisses analyses of the Katz and Fodor variety as not so much genuine analyses of meaning as translations into an artificial language (sometimes referred to in derogatory fashion as "markerese") for which no one

has any intuitions. The following will give the flavour of a typical Wierzbickan analysis:

X punished Y for Z:

(a) Y did Z.
(b) X thought something like this:
(c) Y did something bad (Z).
(d) I want Y to feel something bad because of this.
(e) It will be good if Y feels something bad because of this.
(f) It will be good if I do something to Y because of this.
(g) X did something to Y because of this.

This analysis is intended to capture in maximally simple terms the fact that punishment is objectively justifiable causation of suffering for an offence. Notice that 'it will be good' must be taken to indicate an objective evaluation; substitution of a subjective evaluation such as *I will feel good* in (e) and (f) would yield a definition of *take revenge on.*

The analyses are couched in the form of sentences. This means that there must also be a set of semantically interpretable syntactic primitives. This aspect of the system is under investigation, but is currently less well developed.

13.3.2 Lexical contrasts and similarities

A somewhat different approach to componential analysis takes as its primary aim the explication of lexical contrasts and similarities within the lexicon of a language. On this view, a minimal semantic component is the smallest possible difference between the meanings of two words; all components have to be justified by actual lexical contrasts; furthermore, the closer two word meanings are, the more components they should have in common. Let us see how this works out in practice, using in the first place a familiar example (in the literature). We shall attempt a componential analysis of the word *chair.* Bear in mind that the aim is to distinguish *chair* from every other word in English, and also to indicate its semantic distance from other items. We shall begin with the most distant words and move steadily closer; this is not theoretically necessary, but it is convenient and makes it easier to be systematic. From each of the following contrasts, we can extract a feature, and the full set adds up to a specification of the meaning of *chair*:

chair vs. *thought* [CONCRETE]
vs. *cat* [INANIMATE]
vs. *trumpet* [FURNITURE]
vs. *table* [FOR SITTING]
vs. *sofa* [FOR ONE]
vs. *stool* [WITH BACK]

Ideally, the components should be necessary, and should therefore be justifi-

able by entailment (for instance, *It's a chair* entails *It's inanimate*, *It's an item of furniture*, etc.). According to the above analysis, *chair* and *thought* represents the most distant pair, whereas *chair*'s nearest neighbours are *stool* and *sofa*, with each of which it shares five out of six components. If the above analysis is correct and complete, then there is nothing designated by a term in English which is not a chair and which shares all six features. (This does not mean that *chair* cannot be further subdivided: for instance, *armchair* would possess all the features of *chair*, plus [WITH ARMS]. But this is not a true contrast, since an armchair is a kind of chair.)

An analysis of this type clearly covers the whole vocabulary, and provides a great deal more information than the previous type. All the same, it is worth noting that there are things we know about chairs which are not represented, for instance, that a chair 3 inches wide would be no use, or one whose 'flat' portion was tilted at an angle of 60 degrees, or one made of cardboard. (Information of this type would typically be found in a prototype representation; for more details of this, see Chapter 7.)

As a second example, let us see if we can analyse the verb *walk*:

walk vs. *sleep* [ACTION]
vs. *bite* [LOCOMOTION]
vs. *drive* [USING BODY ONLY]
vs. *fly* [ON GROUND]
vs. *crawl* [BIPEDAL]
vs. *hop* (like frog) [USING LIMBS ALTERNATELY]
vs. *run* [ONE FOOT ALWAYS ON GROUND]

In this case, it is not quite so clear what should be in the analysis. Should we, for instance, make a distinction between mental acts like thinking and physical acts like walking? Should we distinguish locomotion using mechanical energy from an external source, like driving a car, from, for instance skiing, where only one's own energy is used? Have we adequately distinguished *walk* from, say, *dance*? However, the broad lines of the analysis are clear enough.

Notice that this approach does not guarantee a reductive analysis: we shall almost inevitably end up with as many components as words we are analysing. This is because so many features appear in the analysis of a single word: they are not independently distributed. The names of the animals provide a clear illustration of this. In order to distinguish cats, dogs, sheep, cows, wolves, seals, elephants, and so on from one another, each one must be allotted a distinguishing feature such as [CANINE], [FELINE], [BOVINE], [OVINE], [VULPINE], [PHOCINE], [ELEPHANTINE]. Hence, an analysis of the set of animal terms requires more features than there are animals, since each one will contain, in addition to the unique distinguishing feature, others such as [CONCRETE], [ANIMATE], [MAMMAL] and so on.

13.3.3 Lexical relations and entailments

A componential analysis can formalize, at least to some extent, certain recurrent meaning relations between lexical items. Sense relations are treated in greater detail in Chapters 8–10; here we shall concentrate on just two, for the purposes of illustration, namely, the relation of inclusion which holds between *dog* and *animal*, *tulip* and *flower*, and so on (known as hyponymy), and the relation of exclusion that holds between *dog* and *cat*, and between *tulip* and *rose* (incompatibility). The first relation is the easier: we can say that word W(1) is a hyponym of word W(2) iff all the components of W(2) are included in the componential specification of W(1). By this definition (which is too simple, but we shall ignore the complications here) the following hyponymous relationships can be explicated:

stallion [ANIMAL] [EQUINE] [MALE] is a hyponym of
horse [ANIMAL] [EQUINE]

kitten [ANIMAL] [FELINE] [YOUNG] is a hyponym of
cat [ANIMAL] [FELINE]

chair [CONCRETE] [INANIMATE] [FURNITURE]
[FOR SITTING] [FOR ONE] [WITH BACK] is a hyponym of
furniture [CONCRETE] [INANIMATE] [FURNITURE]

and so on.

The examples considered so far are very straightforward, but there are some complications. For instance, we need some way of filtering out cases like *kill* ([CAUSE] [BECOME] [NOT] [ALIVE]) and *die* ([BECOME] [NOT] [ALIVE]), because although the specification of *kill* includes that of *die*, *kill* is not a hyponym of *die*, and *John killed* does not entail *John died*. (We also need to ensure that *dead* ([NOT] [ALIVE]) does not come out as a hyponym of *alive* ([ALIVE].) The moral is that a satisfactory system of lexical decomposition must take account of the different ways in which semantic components combine together (see section 4.5 below).

Explaining incompatibility is a little more complicated. This is because there is nothing in the specification of, say, *horse* ([ANIMAL] [EQUINE]) and *cat* ([ANIMAL] [FELINE]) which enables us to conclude that it is not possible for something to be both at the same time. Since we can conclude this, if our descriptive apparatus does not allow us to represent it, then it can be said to be to that extent deficient. The usual way round this is to include as part of the semantic theory within which the proposed features operate, a specification of those sets of features whose members are mutually exclusive (sometimes called **antonymous n-tuples**). The following are examples:

[MALE]/[FEMALE]
[RED]/[GREEN]/[BLUE] etc.

[CANINE]/[FELINE]/[OVINE]/[BOVINE] etc.
[CIRCULAR]/[SQUARE]/[TRIANGULAR] etc.

Notice that grouping the features in this way means that we do not have to make special statements for every pair of lexical items. For instance, it is not only *dog* and *cat* that are incompatibles, but also any pair of words such that one contains one feature belonging to an antonymous n-tuple and the other contains another feature from the same antonymous n-tuple. Thus *puppy*, *bitch*, *spaniel*, *alsatian*, etc., all of which contain [CANINE], are each incompatible with words such as *kitten*, *tom*, *moggy* (which contain [FELINE]), *cow*, *calf*, *bull*, *heifer*, (which contain [BOVINE]), *horse*, *colt*, *filly*, *mare*, *mustang* (which contain [EQUINE]), and so on.

This approach can be extended (with some reservations) to cover certain entailments and the distinction between analytic and synthetic propositions. For instance, it was pointed out that hyponymy between two lexical items in parallel positions in two propositions may be reflected in a relation of entailment from the proposition containing the hyponym to that containing the superordinate, as in the case of *It's a dog* and *It's an animal*, and *A dog passed by* and *An animal passed by*. To the extent that this is valid for hyponyms, it can easily be expressed in componential terms. But equally, the same reservations apply, namely, that propositions differing only in the specificity of lexical items in a particular position do not invariably show entailment. Sometimes the entailment is in the wrong direction, as in *All animals need food* and *All dogs need food*, or *That's not an animal* and *That's not a dog*. Sometimes there is no entailment at all, as in *John began to sprint* and *John began to run* (even though *John sprinted across the quad* entails *John ran across the quad*). Sometimes there is entailment without hyponymy, as in *Mary's birthmark is on her thigh* and *Mary's birthmark is on her leg*. The fact that native speakers can easily assess the presence or absence of entailment presumably means that there is some systematic relationship between hyponymy and entailment, which then can be translated into componential terms, but this will be possible only when the factors governing the different entailment-related effects are fully understood. To the best of my knowledge, this is not currently the case.

13.3.4 Anomaly

The task of predicting whether a combination of words is anomalous or normal is usually handled within componential systems by specifying selectional restrictions, that is, features which accompanying words must possess for a normal sentence to result. These also help to account for contextual disambiguation. So, for example, we can explain why in *John expired*, *expired* means "died", while in *My driving licence has expired*, it means "has become invalid". The solution is to specify the relevant selectional restrictions (adopting the convention that these appear in angled brackets):

expire = [BECOME] [NOT] [ALIVE]⟨[HUMAN]⟩
= [BECOME] [NOT] [VALID]⟨[DOCUMENT]⟩

Of course, some way is needed of showing that the restrictions apply to the subject of the verb; we could, for instance, put the restrictions in initial position:

expire = ⟨[HUMAN]⟩[BECOME] [NOT] [ALIVE]
= ⟨[DOCUMENT]⟩[BECOME] [NOT] [VALID]

This formulation predicts that if the subject of *expire* is *the man*, then the reading "become invalid" will be anomalous, since the specification of the meaning of *the man* will not contain the feature [DOCUMENT], but the reading "die" will be normal, since the specification of *the man* will contain the feature [HUMAN]; hence the sentence *The man expired* will be normal, and because only one reading is normal, it will be unambiguous; similarly, *mutatis mutandis*, for *The driving licence expired.* It also predicts that if the subject of *expire* contains neither [HUMAN] nor [DOCUMENT] in its specification, then the sentence will be anomalous, as in *?The cup expired.*

As a second example, consider the word *pregnant*. At first sight, this seems straightforward:

pregnant = [WITH CHILD IN WOMB]⟨[ANIMAL] [FEMALE]⟩

This would correctly predict that *My sister is pregnant* is normal, and *The chair is pregnant* anomalous. However, it would also predict that *My neighbour is pregnant* would be anomalous, since although a full specification of the meaning of *neighbour* would presumably include [ANIMAL] and [HUMAN], it would not contain [FEMALE]. How, then, do we account for the difference between *The chair is pregnant* and *My neighbour is pregnant*? Notice that in the latter sentence, *pregnant* projects the feature [FEMALE] on to *neighbour*; what we need, therefore, is something in the specification of *neighbour* which licenses this projection, but blocks it in the case of *chair*. Basically, we need to indicate that although *neighbour* is unspecified for sex, it is none the less specifiable. For instance, something like the following would do the job:

neighbour [ANIMAL] [HUMAN] [MALE/FEMALE]
[LIVING IN ADJACENT DWELLING]

The case of *pregnant* illustrates another problematic point, which is that expressing a co-occurrence restriction, in the form adopted here, seems to make the restrictions relatively extrinsic to the meaning of the item, whereas in some cases, they may intuitively be felt to be more essential. In the case of *pregnant*, is it not the case that [FEMALE] is central to the meaning? Take another example, the verb *drink*. Obviously, this requires its direct object to have the feature [LIQUID]; but should the analysis be as in (a) or as in (b)?

(a) *drink* [INCORPORATE] [BY MOUTH], ⟨[LIQUID]⟩

(b) *drink* [INCORPORATE LIQUID] [BY MOUTH]

There are good reasons for distinguishing relatively extrinsic co-occurrence restrictions like [HUMAN] for *pass away* and *expire*, and the more inherent restrictions like those for *drink* and *pregnant* (see discussion in Chapter 12, section 8).

13.3.5 Discontinuities

It was suggested in section 2 above that a componential analysis provided a natural explanation for the apparent discrete nature of the variable scope of operators such as *again*, *almost*, and *not* within the meanings of lexical items, as in *John opened the door and immediately closed it again* vs. *John opened the door and immediately closed it AGAIN*, and the ambiguity of *When I saw who it was, I almost closed the door*. Two points are worth making in this connection. The first is that some examples of the phenomenon are more convincing than others. The case of *again* is convincing, because the possibilities are strictly limited. For instance, although *eat* and *drink* both (presumably) involve some such feature as [INCORPORATE], the repetition of this feature in *I drank, then ate again* does not license a 'first-time' interpretation of *ate*; that is, *again* cannot take [INCORPORATE] as its scope. The case is much less convincing with negation, however. It is true that *That's not a stallion* normally carries some sort of presumption that a horse is being referred to, and therefore that the referent is a mare. However, the next step in the argument, that this is because only [MALE] is within the scope of the negative, is more shaky. The reason is that negatives typically have the pragmatic function of correcting some previous or imagined incorrect statement; hence, one says *That's not a stallion* when someone has suggested, or seems to think, that it is a stallion. But this means that what features are denied, and what are left intact depends on plausible confusions or errors on someone's part. For instance, (a) and (b) are both plausible, but (c) is not:

(4) That's not a horse, it's a deer.
(5) That's not a mouse, it's a shrew.
(6) ?That's not a horse, it's a mouse.

To explain this, we would need to say that both *horse* and *deer* contained a feature [LARGE], which was missing from *mouse* and *shrew*, which, in turn, have [SMALL], and that these features were outside the scope of the negative in (a) and (b), respectively. The problem here is that this seems to open the door to an unlimited number of features, based on the parameters of possible resemblance/confusion. For instance, the most natural interpretation of (d) is that there was a confusion in the identification of a sound:

(7) That wasn't a horse, it was a car.

Presumably there is some property of the sound which the speaker is not denying, and which led to the wrong identification. Does this justify yet another feature?

It will be recalled from Chapter 6 that the facets [TEXT] and [TOME] formed discrete entities within the meaning of *book*. The question then arises of whether we need to make a distinction between [TEXT] and [TOME] within the meaning of *book* and, for instance, [MALE] and [EQUINE] within the meaning of *stallion*; and if so, what is the difference? Intuitively, there does seem to be a difference. Both types would seem to be necessary; in fact, we would expect both [TEXT] and [TOME] to receive an analysis in terms of the other type of component. This is a difficult question, but perhaps the notion of autonomy is relevant: both [TEXT] and [TOME] can function as readings of *book*; on the other hand, neither [MALE] nor [EQUINE] can function as autonomous readings of *stallion*. Another way of looking at the difference is to say that [TEXT] and [TOME] retain their individual properties within the meaning of *book*, relatively unaffected by the presence of the other, somewhat like the components of a chemical mixture; [MALE] and [EQUINE], on the other hand, interact strongly, in that the way maleness manifests itself perceptually in the context of [EQUINE] is different from the way it manifests itself in the context of, say, [CANINE] (for instance, a horse's penis is not the same as a dog's penis).

13.4 Problematic aspects of lexical decomposition

13.4.1 Too hasty analyses: the abstractness of features

Some superficially plausible componential analyses have been attacked on the grounds that they are too crude and ignore nuances of meaning. For instance, Lyons questions the legitimacy of the following:

boy = [HUMAN] [MALE] [YOUNG]
girl = [HUMAN] [FEMALE] [YOUNG]

on the grounds that the parallelism *man:boy::woman:girl*, which is presupposed by the analysis, is only an approximate one. He points out that the transition from boyhood to manhood in ordinary everyday reference occurs at an earlier age than the corresponding transition from girlhood to womanhood (things are perhaps changing, but it is still the case that *the girls in the Lower Sixth* slides down more easily than *the boys in the Lower Sixth*, although *lads* seems unobjectionable).

Another well-known example is the analysis of *kill* as [CAUSE] [DIE], which has been criticized on the grounds that *cause to die* is not synonymous with *kill*. There are events which count as instantiations of *cause to die* but not of *kill*. For instance:

(8) John caused Bill to die on Saturday by poisoning his cornflakes on Friday.
(9) ?John killed Bill on Saturday by poisoning his cornflakes on Friday.
(10) The lightning caused John to die when it struck the power cable supplying his life-support machine.
(11) ?The lightning killed John when it struck the power cable supplying his life-support machine.

One response to this sort of criticism is to say that semantic components are abstract elements in a semantic theory, with specific roles to play in modelling certain semantic phenomena. They are therefore not to be equated with the meanings of particular words, or indeed with any 'surface' meanings. A consequence of this is that their presence or absence cannot be directly intuited: the correctness of an analysis can only be verified by its success in modelling the relevant phenomena. Wierzbicka strongly criticizes this approach and insists that semantic primitives must not be abstract, they must be accessible to direct intuition, and any proposed analyses should pass the test of native speaker judgements of plausibility. She dismisses analyses of the abstract variety as not so much genuine analyses of meaning as translations into an artificial language (sometimes referred to in derogatory fashion as "markerese") for which no one has any intuitions.

13.4.2 Bogus analyses

It has already been mentioned (in Chapter 8) that some pairs of words, like *stallion:horse*, wear, as it were, their hyponymous relationship on their sleeve, since one is readily definable in terms of the other (*A stallion is a male horse*), whereas for other hyponymous pairs, like *horse:animal* (true taxonyms), no such definition is available. This fact casts some doubt on analyses such as:

horse = [ANIMAL] [EQUINE]

and merits a closer look.

One objection to an analysis of this kind runs as follows. Consider, first, a specification of *stallion* as [HORSE] [MALE] (leaving *horse* unanalysed for the moment). Suppose we remove the feature [MALE], what are we left with? Well, this is an intelligible question, and obviously we are left with [HORSE]. Likewise, if we remove the feature [HORSE], we are left with the feature [MALE]. In each case what remains is an intelligible portion of meaning. But look now at *horse* = [ANIMAL] [EQUINE]. Removing [EQUINE] is no problem: we are left with [ANIMAL]. But what happens if we remove [ANIMAL]? What is left? In what sense does [EQUINE] represent an intelligible portion of meaning in the absence of [ANIMAL]? In fact, the only way of explaining what [EQUINE] means is to relate it to *horse*: [EQUINE] = "pertaining to horses". Hence, saying that *horse* = [ANIMAL] [EQUINE] is equivalent to saying "a horse is a horsey animal". If this is an analysis at all, it clearly is of a different type from "a stallion is a male horse".

13.4.3 Universal vs. language-specific components

Many systems of componential analysis aim at universality (for instance, Wierzbicka's), that is, the set of semantic components in terms of which meanings are to be expressed are part of our innate cognitive/linguistic capacity, and should therefore be adequate for the description of any natural human language. It is worth pointing out, however, that the analytical methods of such as Hjelmslev and Pottier do not guarantee universality, since they are based on reduction and/or contrasts within a single language. Universality would have to be checked out separately, and that is no simple matter. (Wierzbicka always checks her components against as many languages as possible, but they are always, in principle, provisional.)

13.4.4 Finiteness and exhaustiveness

There is a basic incompatibility between the aims of finiteness and exhaustiveness in a componential analysis, and different theorists attempt to resolve the conflict in different ways.

A favourite strategy is to have limited aims. For instance, one could say that the function of semantic components is not to account for lexical meaning in all its richness, but only to explicate the syntactic properties of words.

The system devised by Katz and Fodor (1963) illustrates this sort of approach. First, what they set out to account for is limited to ambiguity, anomaly, and logical properties such as entailment and analyticity. Second, a distinction was proposed between those aspects of a word's meaning which participated in systematic relations with other words, and an idiosyncratic, unanalysable, unsystematic residue which fell outside the scope of the analysis (some scholars consign this to a 'pragmatic' component of word meaning). The systematic aspects were to be exhaustively accounted for by a finite set of semantic markers drawn from a finite pool. For instance, one of the readings of the word *bachelor* had the following analysis:

bachelor = (ANIMAL) (MALE) [young seal without a mate during the breeding season]

(In Katz and Fodor's system, semantic markers were indicated by round brackets, and semantic distinguishers by square brackets.) The distinction between markers and distinguishers was severely criticized because of unclear criteria, but one of the motives was to preserve finiteness. However, the aim of finiteness is compromised even with the specified limitations. Take the case of the colour terms. According to Katz and Fodor, these all possessed the marker (colour) and were distinguished from one another by distinguishers:

red = (colour) [red]
green = (colour) [green]

and so on.

It was pointed out, however, that this failed to predict anomalies such as *This red paint is green*. This could be averted by promoting the features distinguishing different colours to marker status:

red = (colour) (red)
green = (colour) (green)

and so on.

However, this would have the unfortunate consequence that every perceptually discriminable shade of colour would have to be assigned a marker, since they are all incompatible with one another, and all are potentially designated by lexical items. Extending this to all areas of the vocabulary would surely multiply unacceptably the number of markers.

Limiting the role of components to the formalization of lexical contrasts, as in Pottier's or Nida's systems, would seem to guarantee a finite inventory. However, if we think that the lexemes of a language at any particular moment are just a selection from a vastly greater pool of potential words (is this finite?), any of which might enter the language at some point, then the notion of finiteness becomes less secure.

It is as well, too, to bear in mind an important distinction between a set of features which are sufficient to identify a lexeme (i.e. to distinguish it from all others), and a set of features which provide an exhaustive description of the meaning of a lexeme. An illuminating analogy is with identification keys for, say, wild flowers. Typically one is asked a series of questions, each one of which narrows down the choice until only one possibility remains. Let us suppose that questions asked establish that the plant has a prostrate habit, the leaves are grouped in threes on the stem, the flowers are red, and the petals have a triple notch at the end. Let us further suppose that only one species shows this particular set of characteristics. It is clear that this set of features, although adequate to identify our plant, do not in any way amount to a full description of the plant. The same is true of features of meaning: what is good enough for distinguishing from all other meanings does not *ipso facto* provide a specification of the meaning. Once the notion of 'full description' is raised, the notion of finiteness again begins to look shaky.

It is possible that some aspects of meaning are inherently not amenable to specification by means of a finite set of components. Plausible candidates for this status are properties which are continuously graded. Take the property of anomaly. It varies continuously from very slight, as in *The baby is sad* (N.B. *The baby **looks** sad* is normal) to extreme, as in *Zebra-green gravity evaporates against tunnels of truth*; it does not vary in discrete jumps. Katz and Fodor's system gives us a simple dichotomous characterization of sentences as anomalous or not, but this is not how things are in reality. There is no way a finite set of components can model a continuously varying property. Similarly, the Katz and Fodor system gives a yes/no answer to the question of whether one sentence entails another, rather than a point on a continuous scale of degree of

necessity (see Chapter 3). Another important graded property is prototypicality, or centrality in a category (see Chapter 7).

13.4.5 Binarism

Some systems of componential analysis insist on the binary nature of semantic components, that is to say, components have one of two values, '+' or '–'. On this system, features are associated together in pairs. Take the case of "stallion" and "mare", which we analysed earlier as [HORSE] [MALE], and [HORSE] [FEMALE], respectively. The features [MALE] and [FEMALE] form an obvious binary pair, and in the binary system we would need only one component which could have one of two values. However, we must decide whether it should be [+/–MALE] or [+/–FEMALE]. One most commonly sees [+/–MALE] in such circumstances. However, the convention in phonology is for the **marked** term of a binary contrast to carry the positive sign and the **unmarked** term to bear the negative sign. There are various reasons for claiming that the meaning "female" is the marked term of the "male"/"female" opposition. One is the fact that in a great many cases, the word from a related pair referring to a female is formed from the word referring to the corresponding male by the addition of a morphological mark in the form of an affix: *prince/princess*; *lion/lioness*; *poet/poetess*; *usher/usherette*; *waiter/waitress*; *conductor/conductress*; etc. Cases where the word referring to a male is derived from the word referring to a female are extremely rare in English: *widow/widower*. A further indication of the marked nature of [FEMALE] is the fact that in general only the term referring to males can also have a generic use. So, for instance, *actors* can designate a group of males and females; *actresses* has no such use. This also applies where the terms are morphologically unrelated: *dogs* can be a mixed set, but not *bitches*; the *man-* of *mankind* embraces males and females. (*Ducks* and *cows* go against this tendency, but such cases are in the minority.) If, therefore, we follow the phonological convention, then *stallion* should be analysed as [HORSE] [–FEMALE].

A strict adherence to binarist principles leads to a number of problems. Two will be mentioned here. First, how do we distinguish between for example *horse*, which is neither male nor female (it is commonly said in such cases that the contrast is **neutralized**), and for example *table*, which is also neither male nor female, but differs from *horse* in that the contrast is not even applicable? One solution is to allow something like a 'zero' value of the feature, which indicates a neutralization of the contrast. Adopting this possibility, we would simply not specify the feature at all for *table*—the feature is absent—whereas for *horse* we would include the feature in our analysis, but give the zero value (ϕ), as in [HORSE] [ϕFEMALE]. Notice, however, that in pure binarist terms this is cheating, as it involves a third value of the component.

A second problem arises when features apparently form a set consisting of more than two. Take the example of *chair*, where one of the features was [FOR

SITTING]. What are the implicit contrasts here? Well, we need at least [FOR SLEEPING] (to account for *beds*), [FOR STORING] (to account for *cupboard*), and [FOR EATING AT] (not really satisfactory, but let it pass), for *table*. A binarist solution would be to divide these into two groups of two each, then further divide into two. But there does not appear to be a non-arbitrary way of doing this. A (not very plausible) suggestion might be to divide furniture into "human supporters" (chairs and beds) and "thing-supporters" (cupboards and tables). An even more difficult case would be to give a binary analysis of colour terms. It seems altogether more plausible to recognise that there are binary features and non-binary features, without trying to force everything into the same mould.

Even if a binarist system is not adopted, antonymous n-tuples containing only two members, like [MALE]/[FEMALE], need to be specially signalled, since words differentiated by only these features have special properties. For instance, they are likely to be not only incompatibles, but also complementaries, like *man* and *woman*. (It is worth pointing out that defining lexical complementaries on the basis of differentiation by features drawn from a two-member set of antonymous n-tuples results in a much larger class of complementaries than that defined in Chapter 9. For instance, *brother* and *sister* would be complementaries by the feature definition, but *That's not my sister* does not entail *That's my brother*, so they would not qualify as complementaries by the earlier definition. Generally speaking, the detailed properties of the different sorts of opposite are very hard to model adequately in terms of features.)

13.4.6 How do components combine?

Most systems of lexical decomposition are very inexplicit about how the components combine to form larger units of meaning. Weinreich advanced thinking somewhat by suggesting that the modes of composition for features were identical to those for words in sentences, and he introduced two basic modes of composition, according to whether the features in a compound formed **clusters** or **configurations**. In clusters, features combined in a Boolean fashion. This is, for instance, the way in which [HORSE] and [MALE] combine in "stallion": anything which is both male and a horse is a stallion. Some features, however, combine more in the way in which a verb and its direct object combine: the meaning of *drink wine*, for instance, is not formed in this way. Weinreich suggested that the features [FURNITURE] and [FOR SITTING] combine in this way in the meaning of *chair*. Wierzbicka also has recognized this problem and, adopting a broadly similar approach, has begun to elaborate a basic universal semantic grammar which governs the processes of composition. It must be said, though, that, while equating the composition of components to that of words in sentences may well be a step forward, the latter remain deeply mysterious, and are still mostly taken for granted.

13.5 What are the alternatives to lexical decomposition?

The question must be asked at some point whether there are any alternatives to semantic components: can we do without them in semantic analysis? There is no simple answer to this question. For some phenomena, there does seem to be an alternative. Take the case of entailment. Instead of saying that *It's a dog* entails *It's an animal* because all the components defining the meaning of *dog* are included in the set defining *animal*, why do we not simply state that the entailment holds? The description of the meaning of a word would then consist (at least partly) of a statement of the entailments it gave rise to in various sentential contexts. Not all entailments would have to be explicitly stated: for instance, the fact that *It's an alsatian* entails *It's an animal* would follow automatically from the fact that *It's an alsatian* entails *It's a dog*, and the latter entails *It's an animal*; also, there could presumably be some schematization of sentential contexts, so that the entailments below would not have to be stated separately:

I saw a dog	*I saw an animal*
I bought a dog	*I bought an animal*
I heard a dog	*I heard an animal*

etc.

(I do not wish to minimize the difficulties of this, but it ought to be possible in principle.) One advantage of this approach would be that the description of word meaning could easily be opened up to include relationships with a lower degree of necessity than full logical entailment (componential analyses normally require full logical necessity). The result would then be little different from one type of prototype representation of word meaning (see Chapter 7). This is, essentially, the method of **meaning postulates**. Notice that meaning postulates presuppose nothing about atomicity, or the distinctness of bits of meaning, or, indeed, finiteness. Most things that can be said about word meaning in componential terms (in addition to entailment) can also be said using meaning postulates. For instance, instead of saying that *drink* requires its direct object to possess the component [LIQUID], we simply say that it must entail *liquid* (in suitable contexts). Antonymous n-tuples are automatically covered in the statements of entailments (e.g. *It's red* entails *It's not green*), instead of requiring a 'special' statement, as with a componential analysis.

Does this mean that componential analysis is completely dispensable? Well, not exactly. The prima-facie reasons for believing in semantic components given at the beginning of this chapter still stand, and a meaning postulate analysis gives no account of them. A meaning postulate analysis gives the same description of [MALE] as a component of *stallion* as of [EQUINE] as a component of *horse*; the fact that the former is intuitively satisfying and well

supported, whereas the latter is 'bogus' receives no recognition. A possible conclusion from this line of argument is that 'componentiality' is a property of some, but not all, aspects of the meaning of some, but not all, words, and should be recognized in semantic descriptions. Of course, if this were accepted, there would be no place for a 'componential theory of meaning'.

Discussion questions and exercises

Suggest a componential analysis of the following words along the lines of Pottier's analysis of *chair* (remember that each feature should be motivated by a possible contrast within the field):

skirt book cottage teaspoon violin dream (v.) kiss (v.)

Suggestions for further reading

The earliest proposals for a componential approach to semantics can be found in Hjelmslev (1961). European structuralism subsequently developed a French version and a German variety. The main French exponent was Pottier (see Pottier 1974, and Tutescu 1975; Baldinger 1980 has a summary in English). For an account of the German variety of structuralism, see Coseriu (1975) and Geckeler (1971). Nida (1975), although purportedly a contribution to generative grammar, is very much in the spirit of European structuralism.

The earliest proposals for a componential semantics within the generative school were from Katz and Fodor (1963), which were further developed in Weinreich (1966) and Katz (1972). Current exponents are Jackendoff (e.g. 1983) and Pustejovsky (1995) (both of these are fairly technical, especially the latter).

The most recent account of Wierzbicka's views on semantic primes is Wierzbicka (1996).

For sceptical views of the componential approach, see Bolinger (1965) and Sampson (1979); see also Taylor (1996) and Deane (1996) (whose target is Jackendoff's system).

Part 3
Semantics and Grammar

Communication using isolated words is necessarily extremely limited: words need to be used together with other words. But a simple collection of words is not much use, either: combinations of words need to be governed by grammatical rules. Grammar has a dual role in producing intelligible messages. First, there are rules of combination, which determine what sort of global meaning results when constituent meanings are combined. Second, the grammatical elements which articulate grammatical structures (affixes, particles, constructions, syntactic categories, etc.) carry a distinguishable sort of meaning, which contributes in a special way to the meaning of whole constructions and sentences.

In this section, which has only one chapter, we survey those aspects of the meanings of larger syntactic units which are attributable to grammar.

CHAPTER 14

Grammatical semantics

14.1 Grammatical meaning 267

14.2 The meaning of major grammatical categories 267

14.3 Grammatical meanings associated with nouns and noun phrases 268

14.4 Grammatical meanings associated with the verb 274

14.5 Adjectives and properties 289

14.6 Quantification 291

Discussion questions and exercises 298

Suggestions for further reading 299

CHAPTER 14

Grammatical semantics

14.1 Grammatical meaning

In this chapter we look at the sort of meanings that grammatical elements of various kinds bear. It will be recalled that to perform their characteristic functions, any meaning carried by a grammatical element must be of an impoverished, 'thin', or very general nature, so as to permit wide collocability: typical 'rich' lexical meanings impose too many conditions on their collocants.

We shall survey the varieties of grammatical meaning, but no attempt will be made to be exhaustive (particularly typologically—most of the examples will be drawn from English). This is now a complex and well-researched area: some of the treatment will be fairly traditional, as an exposition of many modern treatments requires extensive background knowledge for which there is not sufficient space here.

14.2 The meaning of major grammatical categories

Traditionally, syntactic categories are defined semantically: nouns are defined as words referring to "persons, places or things", verbs are "doing words", that is, they refer to actions, whereas adjectives are "describing words". In early structuralist linguistics such definitions were shown to be seriously flawed: *(a) punch* refers to an action, but is a noun; *seem* is a verb, but does not refer to an action; in *John shouted*, *shouted* describes what John did, but is not an adjective, and so on. It was recommended that syntactic categories should be defined on syntactic criteria: for instance, nouns are inflected for number, gender, and case and take articles as modifiers; verbs are inflected for tense and aspect, etc. Connections with semantics were held to be non-systematic. More recently, the question of the semantic basis of grammatical categories has been raised once again.

One approach has been to utilize the insights of prototype theory: perhaps grammatical categories are like natural categories such as BIRD and FRUIT, not

definable by a set of necessary and sufficient criteria, but with fuzzy boundaries and graded typicality. We might then say, for instance, that a prototypical noun refers to a person or thing, a prototypical verb refers to an action, and so on, but that more marginal examples of these categories may not conform to these descriptions. There would seem to be some justification in this view. For instance, there are many respects in which *seem* does not behave syntactically like a typical verb: it does not occur in the passive (**happy was seemed by John*), or the progressive aspect (**John is seeming happy*). There is a certain plausibility in correlating the verb's semantic marginality with its syntactic marginality. Likewise, a semantically atypical noun like *jogging* (as in *Jogging is good for you*) is also syntactically atypical: it can be modified by an adverb (*Jogging gently is good for you*), it is unhappy with certain determiners (*this/that jogging*), and so on.

A more illuminating and unified approach pictures the difference between nouns, adjectives, and verbs in terms of temporal stability: all languages have a way of making a difference between persistent entities whose properties change relatively little over time, and highly time-sensitive experiences, that is, between entities and events, with nouns encoding entities and verbs encoding events. Adjectives, if they occur, denote experiences which fall between the two poles (but not all languages have adjectives, the functions they typically have in English being performed either by nouns or verbs).

This approach, too, falls foul of the same sorts of counterexample as the traditional approach: in what sense is a punch a temporally stable entity? Once again, one can fall back on the prototype escape clause, but this does not seem entirely satisfactory. Another line of defence is to say that the characterizations do not apply directly to referents, but to conceptualizations: when we say *John punched Bill*, we conceive the punch as a time-bound happening; but when we say *The punch John threw . . .* , we re-conceptualize it as something with a certain permanence, we, as it were, freeze it in midflight, to allow ourselves to examine it and say things about it.

Another approach takes a cognitive view and sees nouns as denoting a 'region of cognitive space' (Langacker 1991*b*), whereas adjectives and verbs denote 'relations', adjectives portraying the states of affairs they denote as atemporal and verbs presenting their denotations as temporal. The cognitive viewpoint here seems correct. However, the notion of a 'region of cognitive space' is not very perspicuous.

14.3 Grammatical meanings associated with nouns and noun phrases

Certain types of meaning are typically carried by grammatical elements—inflections, clitics, or markers—associated with nouns or noun phrases. The

most important of these are: definiteness, number, animacy, gender, and functional roles. Definiteness is dealt with in Chapter 15, and will not be discussed here; functional roles are as much concerned with verbs as with nouns and will be discussed in the next section. Here, we shall look at number, animacy, and gender.

14.3.1 Number

Number is an inflectional category of nouns or noun phrases, which is not found in all languages. Semantically, number systems are all concerned, one way or another, with how many there are of some item. Number systems are not to be confused with numeral systems, which are linguistic devices for counting (*one*, *two*, *forty-three*, *one hundred and ninety*, etc.); obviously there are connections between the two, but numerals are syntactically and semantically distinct from number markers.

The number system in English has only two terms: **singular** and **plural**. We shall examine the semantics of these in a moment. A minority of languages have a three-term number system including a **dual**, used for just two things. A very small minority have four-term systems, in which the fourth term is either a **trial** (for three things), or a **paucal** (for 'a few' things). No language has a trial or a paucal without also having singular, dual, and plural; no language that has a dual does not also have singular and plural. (Of course, the meaning of *plural* is not precisely the same in a two-term system as in a three- or four-term system: *plural* in English means "more than one"; in a four-term system it means either "more than three" or "many" (i.e. "more than a few")).

14.3.1.1 Count nouns and mass nouns

English nouns are traditionally divided into two classes, count nouns and mass nouns. They can be recognized by the following criteria:

(i) Count nouns:
  (a) cannot occur in the singular without a determiner:
  This cup/**Cup is clean;*
  (b) occur normally in the plural;
  (c) are quantifiable by *a few*, *many*, and numerals:
  a few/*many cups*; (**much cup*), *thirty cups*.

(ii) Mass nouns:
  (a) can occur in the singular without a determiner:
  Butter is good for you;
  (b) are odd in the plural (or require reinterpretation):
  butters, *milks*;
  (c) are quantifiable by *a little*, *much*:
  a little/*much milk*; (**many milk*).

Count nouns present something as being manifested in discrete, bounded

units that in principle can be counted; mass nouns present their referent as an unbounded mass. Notice that this is a matter of conceptualization, not of objective reality: the blood referred to in *There was blood on the floor* may well have occurred in discrete drops and patches, but it is thought of as an undifferentiated substance.

What determines whether the name of something is a mass noun or a count noun? Obviously, if there is nothing to count, as with liquids and gases and many abstract notions, then the name will be a mass noun. But in the case of many mass nouns, there are observable particles of some sort: rice comes in discrete grains, and sugar in grains or crystals; even flour can be seen to consist of particles. In such cases, the crucial factor seems to be the size of the particles. The cross-over point seems to be somewhere between the size of an average pea and that of a typical grain of rice (at least for English). So, we have *beans*, *peas*, *noodles*, and *lentils* as count nouns, but *barley*, *rice*, *sugar*, and *flour* as mass nouns. The boundary is not rigid: *sweet corn* and *spaghetti* seem on the large side for mass nouns; and it is worth recalling that *peas* is a reanalysed form of *pease*, which was a mass noun. Some things are referable to indifferently by mass or count nouns. Some such cases are obviously 'mass' in nature: mashed potatoes/potato, scrambled eggs/egg. The dual use can perhaps be explained in terms of whether the conceptualization focuses on the original state of the ingredients (i.e. discrete units), or on the state of the final product. Cases where the final product is also in the form of discrete units are harder to explain: *poached eggs/egg*.

14.3.1.2 Secondary uses of count and mass nouns

In the above discussion it has been assumed that a given noun is 'basically' either mass or count. This has been disputed, on the grounds that the vast majority of nouns in English can be found with both count and mass uses. While this is true, it is also true that for the majority of nouns, one use is intuitively more basic than the other, and this enables us to identify two significant phenomena and enquire about their semantic correlates: basic count nouns used as mass nouns, and basic mass nouns used as count nouns.

Basic count nouns used as mass nouns

Examples:

(1) With a Lada you get a lot of car for your money.
(2) Could you move along a bit? I haven't got much table.
(3) I can hear too much piano and not enough violin.

Here, the count noun is metonymically reinterpreted to yield a mass notion: sound, in (3), working space in (2), perhaps just size in (1).

Basic mass nouns used as count nouns

Examples:

(4) Three beers/cheeses/cakes/chocolates
(5) Three wines

Mass nouns used as count nouns are usually to be interpreted in one of two ways, either as unit quantities of the continuous mass, or as different types or varieties. The first type is illustrated in (4). The type of unit is partly conventionally determined, partly contextually. Thus, *three beers* probably refers to three bottles or standard glasses of beer, *three cheeses*, three spherical entities with a single rind, as the cheesemaker first produces them, etc. This alternation does not only apply to edible substances: it is observable in *not much time/they come at different times*; *not much space/spaces between words*, etc.

The second type is sometimes known as the **distributive** plural. (Some languages have a special form for the distributive plural; in others the plural is only used distributively. For instance, the Arabic *ashjaar* is a plural of *shajar*, meaning "tree", but is indifferent to the number of trees, only to the number of tree varieties referred to.) Something like a distributive plural can be observed in English, with words that do not usually take the plural affix, such as *trout*, *deer*, etc. They can, on occasion, take the plural *-s*, and when they do the most likely interpretation is a distributive one: *the trouts of N. America*, *the deers of N. Europe*, etc.

The semi-mass use of count nouns

In the previous paragraph we examined some cases of the anomalous presence of the plural marker. In this section, we look at the converse of this, namely, the anomalous absence of the plural marker. The following are examples:

(6) We shot three lion last week.
(*We shot three fox last week).
(7) He has three hectares of oak.
(8) There is a field of beetroot/turnip.
(9) Two rows of lettuce/*leek/*pea/*bean.

This is not ordinary mass use, because the words in question are plurals:

(10) Those lion we saw last week have moved on.
(11) The oak on the other side of the hill are showing signs of disease.

On the other hand, there is something 'mass-like' about this usage. It seems to be confined to experts, hunters, foresters, horticulturists, and so on (as, indeed, is the use of the anomalous plural *-s*). Somehow, the individuality of the referents does not matter, only their species.

14.3.1.3 Singular nouns with (optional) plural concord

Two further number anomalies are worth pointing out. The first concerns so-called group words. These are count nouns which have the peculiarity that in the singular form they can take either singular or plural concord with the verb:

(12) The committee is/are considering the matter right now.

These words refer prototypically to groups of humans (my student informants find *The flock have gone over the hill* odd, but in Gray's *Elegy* we find *The lowing herd wind slowly o'er the lea*; certainly, inanimate 'collections' do not behave in this way:

(13) *His library are all leather bound.
(14) *The forest are leafless at this time of the year.).

There is a subtle difference of meaning between the uses. With singular concord, the group is conceptualized as a unity; with plural concord, it is conceptualized as constituted out of separate individuals. Predicates which can only apply to each individual separately are anomalous with singular concord:

(15) The committee are wearing their hats.
(16) *The committee is wearing its hat/their hats.

Predicates which can only be true of the group as a whole are anomalous with plural concord:

(17) The committee was/*were formed six months ago.

It is only verbal concord which may vary: items inside the noun phrase must be singular:

(18) *Those committee are considering the matter now.

14.3.1.4 Plural nouns with (optional) singular concord

The second anomaly is the converse of the first, namely, plural nouns with singular concord:

(19) Five wives is more than enough for anyone.

This use seems to be confined to noun phrases with numerals in them:

(20) *Those wives is more than enough for any man.
(21) ?Several wives is too much for an old man.

In this usage, the quantified noun phrase is interpreted as a single quantity.

14.3.2 Gender and animacy

Gender is a classification system for nouns, which affects such grammatical matters as agreement and pronominal reference. Many different types of

gender system can be found in the world's languages, some of them quite exotic (like the case made famous by Lakoff, in which one gender class includes words referring to 'women, fire and dangerous things'); but the most widespread are those which correlate to a greater or lesser degree with the sex of the referent, and the present account will be limited to these.

It is usual to make a distinction between **natural gender** and **grammatical gender**. English is usually said to exhibit natural gender (in so far as it has gender at all—it affects only pronominal reference), since the appropriate pronoun (*he*, *she*, or *it*) can be predicted with a high degree of success purely on the basis of the sex (male, female, or neuter) of the referent. In languages possessing grammatical gender, at least a significant proportion of cases of gender assignment are apparently semantically arbitrary, although in some cases the arbitrariness is less than it seems at first sight. Often cited as exemplifying the semantic arbitrariness of gender are the German words *Löffel* ("spoon"; masculine); *Gabel* ("fork": feminine) and *Messer* ("knife": neuter). However, in German, as in French, there is a strong tendency for words referring to male beings (especially humans) to be grammatically masculine, and for words referring to females to be grammatically feminine (there are exceptions in both languages). (Since there are no languages with completely arbitrary gender assignment, we should probably think in terms of a scale of naturalness/arbitrariness, rather than an arbitrary/natural dichotomy.)

Gender is of course intimately bound up with animacy, since prototypically, only living things can be male or female. Many languages have grammatical processes which are sensitive to animacy, or relative animacy. On the basis of an examination of a wide range of languages the following scale has been put forward (after Frawley, 1992: animacy decreases from right to left):

1st Person > 2nd Person > 3rd Person > Human > Animal > Inanimate

An examination of the English pronoun system shows that it, too, correlates to some extent with the animacy scale:

***helshe* only**	***helshelit***	***it* only**
non-infant humans	infant humans	things
gods, angels	animals (cars, ships)	

What seems to underlie the scale of animacy is perceived potency, or capacity to affect other things (including the human mind, hence, also saliency and relevance) and bring about changes. What a culture regards as potent may not coincide with our notions: it is reported, for instance, that Yagua, an Amazonian language, uses the same classifier for humans, animals, the moon and stars, rocks, brooms, and fans, while the sun, spoons, and other inanimates have a different classifier. This system makes more semantic sense when it is

realized that the Yagua are moon worshippers, while rocks, brooms, and fans are valued for the effects they produce (in the case of rocks, for crushing food).

14.4 Grammatical meanings associated with the verb

14.4.1 Tense

Semantically, the grammatical feature of tense serves essentially to locate the event referred to in the sentence with reference to the time at which the utterance was produced (although it may have other secondary functions). Only languages which encode timing distinctions by means of grammatical elements (usually inflectional morphemes or grammatical markers such as auxiliary verbs) can be properly said to manifest the grammatical feature of tense; many languages encode the timing of a designated event lexically, by means of expressions equivalent to *yesterday*, *last year*, *next week*, etc.

A distinction is usually made between **primary** (or **absolute**) tenses, which encode event time directly relative to time of speaking, and **secondary** (or **relative**) tenses, which encode event time relative to a secondary reference time which, in turn, is located relative to speaking time, thus making the relation between event time and speaking time an indirect one.

The tense systems of most languages are said to be **vectorial**, that is, they essentially indicate the direction along the time-line from speaking time to event time. Some languages also grammatically encode degrees of remoteness, equivalent to contrasts such as the following:

(22) I used to go for a run every morning, once. (distant past)
(23) I went for a run. (past)
(24) I've just been for a run. (recent past)

The alternative to a vectorial system is a **metrical** system of tense, based on definite intervals of time. The most frequent is the **hodiernal** system, which distinguishes "today" and "not today". Up to six of seven intervals may be distinguished, with, as in most tense systems, the past being more highly differentiated than the future. According to Comrie (1985: 99), Yagua makes the following distinctions in its grammatical tense system:

(i) past (today);
(ii) yesterday;
(iii) within a few weeks ago;
(iv) within a few months ago;
(v) distant past.

There are three basic primary tenses, past (event occurs before time of speaking); present (event occurs concurrently with speaking time, or includes it); and future (event is projected to occur after the time of speaking):

(25) John saw Bill.
(26) John sees Bill.
(27) John will see Bill.

In the case of secondary tenses, there are nine possibilities (in each of the following, the reference time is John's arrival, and the time of Bill's action is situated relative to that):

(28) At the time John arrived, Bill had switched on the lights.
(event prior to reference time; reference time in past)
(29) At the time John arrived, Bill switched on the lights.
(event coincident with reference time; reference time in past)
(30) At the time John arrived, Bill was about to/was going to switch on the lights.
(event subsequent to reference time; reference time in past)
(31) At the time John arrives, Bill has switched off the lights.
(event prior to reference time; reference time in present—can only receive a habitual interpretation)
(32) At the time John arrives, Bill switches off the lights.
(event coincident with reference time, reference time in present—can only receive a habitual interpretation)
(33) At the time John arrives, Bill is about to switch off the lights.
(event subsequent to reference time, reference time in present)
(34) At the time John arrives, Bill will have switched off the lights.
(event prior to reference time; reference time in future)
(35) At the time John arrives, Bill will switch on the lights.
(event coincident with reference time, reference time in future)
(36) At the time John arrives, Bill will be about to switch off the lights.
(event subsequent to reference time, reference time in future)

Presumably all languages can express all nine secondary tense relationships one way or another; however, no language with an inflectional tense system has distinct inflections for all nine.

14.4.2 Aspect

It is important to distinguish aspect clearly from tense. Tense serves to locate an event in time; aspect says nothing about when an event occurred (except by implication), but either encodes a particular way of conceptualizing an event, or conveys information about the way the event unrolls through time. It is also important to make a distinction between aspect as a semantic phenomenon, and aspect markers in a particular language, which may have a variety of semantic functions. To make things even more complicated, a lexical verb may encode aspectual information as part of lexical meaning; this may affect the way the meaning of the verb interacts with the meanings of aspectual markers with which it is associated.

14.4.2.1 Perfective/imperfective

One of the most widespread aspectual distinctions is that between imperfective and perfective. In many languages there is a formal distinction of some sort whose prototypical semantic function is to signal the perfective/imperfective contrast (e.g. Czech and Arabic). In English, there is no regular way of indicating the distinction, but it is often associated with the progressive/simple alternation and can be observed in the following:

(37) I saw the chicken cross the road. (perfective: the event was viewed in its entirety and is treated as unanalysable)

(38) I saw the chicken crossing the road. (imperfective: event is viewed as taking time, allowing other events to be temporally located within its boundaries. Makes no commitment as to whether the chicken successfully made it to the other side of the road, but sees the chicken's movement as part of a complete crossing)

The perfective aspect construes an event as completed, and as an unanalysable conceptual unit with no internal structure; it is sometimes described as viewing an event holistically, without any attention being directed to constituent parts. Notice that it does not say anything about the event itself, for example whether it is instantaneous, or takes time to happen (although, of course, events which take an appreciable time to be completed lend themselves to the imperfective aspect more readily than those which happen in an instant): what the perfective aspect does is to treat the event as if its time course was irrelevant. The imperfective aspect, on the other hand, opens up the internal temporal structure of the event, taking an inner rather than an outer viewpoint, and allowing intermediate stages between beginning and end to be relevant.

Although tense and aspect are to be rigorously distinguished, it is sometimes the case that information that is conveyed in one language by the tense system, is conveyed in another by the aspectual system. This occurs particularly with the perfective/imperfective contrast. It is arguable that Arabic, for instance, has no tense system. A sentence like *John killed* is translated into Arabic as *qatala Hanna*, whereas *John is killing* would be *yaqtala Hanna*. The verb *qatala* is not in the past tense, but in the perfective aspect; likewise, *yaqtala* is not strictly in the present tense, but the imperfective aspect. The connection between past tense and perfective aspect is that, prototypically, events that are complete are ones that happened in the past; similarly, there is a default assumption that an uncompleted event is currently in progress, hence the association between imperfective and present tense.

14.4.2.2 Perfect/prospective

The English **perfect** is a typical example. Consider the difference between the following:

(39) John read the book.
(40) John has read the book.

Both indicate that John's reading of the book occurred in the past. But the first sentence directs our attention into the past, to the specific time when the event occurred; the second sentence, on the other hand, directs our attention towards John's present state, or at least at aspects of it which are attributable to his having read the book at some (indeterminate) time in the past. This is the essence of the perfect: present relevance of past events. Notice the incompatibility between a perfect and a definite past time adverbial:

(41) ?I have done it yesterday.

and (in British English, at least) between the past tense and *now*:

(42) ?I just did it now.

Some linguists distinguish a counterpart to the perfect, but involving the future, called the **prospective**. A gloss of this would be: the present relevance of a future event. Consider the difference between the following:

(43) John will leave tomorrow.
(44) John is leaving/is going to leave tomorrow.

One explanation is that the first sentence can be a pure prediction, and can apply to an event which is not under the control either of John or of the speaker. The second sentence, on the other hand, implies that the event is under the control of one or the other, and that decisions and arrangements are currently complete; in other words, things are currently in a state such that, if all goes according to plan, John will leave tomorrow. This would go some way to explaining why, for instance, the following is somewhat odd:

(45) The sun is going to rise at 7.00 a.m. tomorrow.

14.4.2.3 Miscellaneous aspectual distinctions

A number of miscellaneous aspectual distinctions can be illustrated from English, although there is no regular way of signalling them grammatically.

Punctual/durative

(46) John sat (down) on the chair. (punctual)
(47) John sat there for two hours without speaking. (durative)

This is fairly self-explanatory. The following is ambiguous between the two readings:

(48) John sat on the pin.

Punctual/iterative

(49) John sneezed.

(50) John was sneezing.

The first sentence indicates a single sneeze, the second a series of sneezes with a relatively short time interval between them.

The iterative aspect is to be distinguished from the habitual, where there is also a repetition, but over a longer period, and with (potentially) longer intervals between occurrences, as in:

(51) John switches on the lights at 5.00 p.m.

Inchoative/medial/terminative

Inchoative, medial, and terminative do not have stable morphological or syntactic reflexes in English. Inchoative refers to the initiation of an event or state, as in:

(52) As soon as I saw him I knew he was guilty.

Medial refers to the 'body' of the event or state, as in:

(53) I knew the answers to all the questions.

Terminative focuses on the ending of a state, process, or action, as in:

(54) We soon exhausted our stocks of food.

14.4.2.4 The aspectual character of verbs

As mentioned above, verbs often encode aspectual information as part of their meaning. For instance, *be born* denotes the beginning of a state (inchoative), *live* the middle part (medial), and *die* the end of a state (terminative). These verbs are sometimes said to have a particular **aspectual character**.

It is instructive to examine the different 'uses' of the English progressive and simple forms of the verb. It will be seen that the forms have a different effect according to the semantics of the verb. This can also be regarded as a variety of aspectual character in verbs.

First, we shall assume that the prototypical meaning of the progressive form is to indicate that a process, activity, or action is, was, or will be in progress at some particular (perhaps implicit) reference point in time. For instance, *It is raining* indicates that the natural process of precipitation is in progress at the time of speaking, that is, it started before the time of speaking and is expected to continue after the time of speaking. *It was raining*, on the other hand, involves an implicit reference point in the past (e.g. *It was raining when we left the house*), but the relation to the reference point is the same as in the previous example.

The effect of combining the progressive form with a verb in English depends on the semantics of the verb. As already mentioned, with verbs denoting processes (non-intentional durative 'happenings'), the progressive has its prototypical value. A subtle difference can be detected between verbs (or

expressions) which denote **activities** (actions which have no natural end-point, such as *swim*, *walk*, *dance*, *breathe*, etc. and for which there is no great difference in meaning between *stop V.-ing* and *finish V.-ing*: compare *I've stopped swimming* and *I've finished swimming*), and those which denote **accomplishments** (actions which have a natural end-point, like *wash up*, *eat an apple*, etc., and for which there is a marked difference between *stop V.-ing* and *finish V.-ing*: compare *I've stopped washing the dishes* and *I've finished washing the dishes*). The difference with the progressive can be felt with the following:

(55) She's washing the dishes.
(56) She's crying.

In the first, there is an implication that unless there are unforeseen interruptions or impediments the action will continue to completion: in the second, there is no such implicit boundary.

With verbal expressions possessing semantic characteristics other than those just discussed, the progressive takes on a different hue. Let us begin with stative verbs, that is, those which denote a state of affairs which remains constant over an appreciable time-scale. Some stative verbs will not accept the progressive at all; this type includes a number of inanimate types like *resemble*, *contain*, *overlook*, and so on:

(57) This box contains/*is containing 25 matches.
(58) The flat overlooks/*is overlooking the park.
(59) John resembles/*is resembling Bill.

and also certain mental verbs:

(60) I know/*am knowing him.
(61) I believe/*am believing that to be so.

With a number of stative verbs, a feature of 'provisionality' is added to the message. This can take different forms. For instance, in (62) and (63) the contrast seems to be one of permanence/temporariness:

(62) John lives in London.
(63) John is living in London.

In (64) and (65), the feature appears as tentativeness, openness to correction:

(64) I assume you will do it.
(65) I am assuming you will do it.

In (66) and (67), and (68) and (69), the feature appears as doubt of the evidence of one's senses, admission of the possibility of hallucination:

(66) I hear a noise.
(67) I'm hearing a noise.

(68) I think I see something.
(69) I think I am seeing something.

In the case of punctual verbs, that is, verbs or expressions that denote an instantaneous action, there are two main effects, in each case modifying or extending the meaning of the verb so as to conform with the prototype. The first can be observed in (70):

(70) John is coughing.

Here a series of punctual events is being construed as a unified durative process. The same interpretation is possible for (71):

(71) John is switching on the lights.

However, this interpretation is not available if the direct object is singular:

(72) John is switching the light on.

In this case, the punctual event is extended to include preparatory actions like going towards the switch, and in that way receives a durative reading.

14.4.3 Voice

In this section we shall look only at the three traditional **voices**:

(i) Active: *John opened the door.*
(ii) Passive: *The door was opened by John.*
The door was opened.
(iii) Middle: *The door opened.*

To understand the passive, we must first consider the nature of a prototypical transitive clause. In this, one participant, the most 'active', exerts some kind of force on a second, less active participant, resulting in some change, denoted by the verb. In the active voice, the more active participant plays the syntactic role of subject, and the less active participant plays the syntactic role of direct object. There is another difference between the two participants, besides their relative level of activity: the more active, the subject, is thrown into higher relief than the other—and in the basic form of the clause is the 'topic', the entity that the clause 'is about'. The effect of passivization is to promote the less active participant (the logical object), as it were, to the front of the stage by making it the syntactic subject, and to background the logical subject (to such an extent that it becomes an optional adjunct). The effect of the middle voice is to abolish the logical subject altogether, and construe the event as being causeless. (Even in the short passive, although the logical subject is not overtly mentioned, the event is construed as being the result of an action by an 'off-stage' agent.)

Clauses whose semantics depart radically from the prototype may resist passivization:

(73) The box contains Mary's jewellery.
(74) *Mary's jewellery is contained by the box.

(75) John resembles his brother.
(76) *John's brother is resembled by him.

(Notice that although *John resembles Bill* is too far, semantically, from the prototype for passivization to occur, it has not lost all contact with the prototype: there are still two participants, one relatively highlighted, the other relatively less prominent and functioning as a reference point.)

14.4.4 Functional roles

Consider the sentence *John opened the door*. There are two main participants in the event, John and the door. These, however, have different relationships to the act of opening: John is the doer, the agent, and supplies the force needed to open the door; the door is passive, is affected by the action, and undergoes the designated change of state. Consider, now, the sentence *John saw the door*. Again there are two participants, but at least one of these has a third possible relation to the verb. John is no longer a supplier of force resulting in the change of state of the door; in fact, he is now the entity that is affected, in that he has a perceptual experience. However, it would be misleading to say that John's experience was caused by the door, in the same sense that the door's opening was caused by John. Hence we have identified three (possibly four) different possible relationships that the noun phrase in a minimal transitive clause can contract with the verb. As a final example, consider *This key will open the door*. Here the door seems to be in the same relationship with the verb (plays the same functional role) as it does in *John opened the door*. The role of *key*, however, is a new one: the key although it affects the door, does not supply the necessary force, it rather transmits it from another entity (unmentioned). The relationships that have been illustrated are variously called **functional roles, case roles, deep cases, participant roles, thematic roles.**

When a wide range of languages is examined, it appears that the same roles crop up again and again, and it seems that in some sense there is a limited number of possibilities. There are many accounts of functional roles, which differ not only in what roles are recognized, but also in the number recognized. None of the suggestions so far has received general acceptance. A full discussion of this topic is not possible here; what follows is merely illustrative.

It is first necessary to distinguish between **participant roles** and **circumstantial roles**, our discussion being confined to the former.

Consider the following sentences:

(77) John put his bicycle in the garage.
(78) John repaired his bicycle in the garage.

In (77), the phrase 'in the garage' has a much more intimate relation to the

verb than the same phrase in (78): it is part of the 'inner' structure of the clause. In (78), on the other hand, it is external to the clause nucleus. In traditional terms, *in the garage* in (77) is a complement (= fulfils a participant role) of the verb, whereas in (78) it is a clausal adjunct (= fulfils a circumstantial role). How do we tell the difference? Well, as a start, all adjuncts are optional (syntactically—i.e. omitting them does not render the clause ungrammatical), whereas all obligatory elements are complements. On this basis, *in the garage* in (77) is a complement. The major problem with this characterization concerns optional complements. We shall not delve into this matter too deeply. The following can be taken as indications of complement status:

(i) occurrence as subject, direct or indirect object of verb;
(ii) omission leads to 'latency' (i.e. 'missing' element must be recovered from context, as with the direct object of *watch* in *Somebody's watching*).

We shall now concentrate on complements.

As mentioned above, there is no agreement as to the best way of describing participant roles, although a significant number of linguists appear to feel that there is a finite number. It would be impossible in the limited space available to give a thorough discussion of the various suggestions: what we shall do here is to go back to the earliest set of proposals, namely those of Fillmore (1968), and point out some of the difficulties. Fillmore's proposals had an elegant simplicity, but history shows elegant simplicity to be a fragile thing in linguistics. Fillmore's original list (1968: 24–5) went as follows:

[i] AGENTIVE (A), the case of the typically animate perceived instigator of the action identified by the verb.

[**Mary** kicked the cat.]

[ii] INSTRUMENTAL (I), the case of the inanimate force or object causally involved in the state or action identified by the verb.

[John used **the hammer** to break the window.
The hammer broke the window.]

[iii] DATIVE (D), the case of the animate being affected by the state or action identified by the verb.

[**Mary** heard the nightingale.
The nightingale enchanted **Mary**.]

[iv] FACTITIVE (F), the case of the object or being resulting from the action or state identified by the verb, or understood as part of the meaning of the verb.

[John cooked **a delicious meal**.]

[v] LOCATIVE (L), the case which identifies the location or spatial orientation of the state or action identified by the verb.

[Mary vaulted **the wall**.
John put his finger **on the button**.]

[vi] OBJECTIVE (O), the semantically most neutral case, . . . conceivably the concept should be limited to things which are affected by the action or state identified by the verb.

[Mary opened **the door**.
The door opened.]

The following indicates the flavour of some later developments:

(i) **Agentive**: Most modern treatments subdivide the AGENTIVE role. There are various problems. A prototypical agent is animate, supplies the energy for the action, and acts deliberately. First of all, an agent-like cause may not be animate: *The wind rattled the windows*. By Fillmore's definition, *wind* should be INSTRUMENTAL, but this does not seem satisfactory; some linguists suggested a new case, FORCE, which was distinct from AGENTIVE. (Does this apply to *computer* in *The computer is working out the solution*?) Second, there are agent-like entities which do not really supply the energy for the action, although they do supply the will, as in *The sergeant-major marched the recruits round the parade ground.* This has been called the INSTIGATOR, although it is then not clear what role to assign *the recruits* to. Finally, there are cases where the agent-like entity supplies the energy, but not the will, as in *John accidentally knocked the vase on to the floor*. A suggestion for this is EFFECTOR.

(ii) **Instrumental**: Instruments are supposed to be inanimate; what, then, are we to make of *sniffer dogs* in *The police used sniffer dogs to locate the drugs*? (This syntactic frame is often put forward as diagnostic for INSTRUMENTAL.)

(iii) **Dative** (sometimes called **Experiencer**): The definition for this role leaves open the possibility that *John* in *Mary threw John out of the window* is EXPERIENCER, but it does not seem significantly different from *Mary threw John's trousers out of the window* (and they co-ordinate without zeugma, sometimes given as a test for same role: *Mary threw John and his trousers out of the window*). One way round this is to stipulate that EXPERIENCER can only occur in connection with a process or action where animacy is crucially involved. This is clearly not the case in the above example, but is in *Mary terrified John*, and *John heard the noise*. A distinction is often made between EXPERIENCER and BENEFACTIVE, the latter being exemplified by *Mary* in *John made Mary a cake*.

(iv) **Factitive**: This is not now usually separated from PATIENT (see below).

(v) **Locative**: Various subdivisions can be made of this role. One is a simple, static location, as in: *The Ighzui inhabit a remote island in the Pacific.* Three dynamic subdivisions are possible (i.e. cases where motion is at least implied. First, we have SOURCE, as in *The lamp emits heat*; second,

PATH, as in *Mary crossed the street*; and finally GOAL, as in *We finally reached the igloo.*

(vi) **Objective**: A frequent division under this heading focuses on whether the affected entity is changed by the process or action, or not. An unchanged inanimate affected is a THEME, as in *John put on his hat*; a changed item is a PATIENT, as in *Mary minced the meat.*

Two points should be made about functional roles. The first is that there are obviously many borderline and intermediate cases—one can go on subdividing until the cows come home. Clearly some criteria are needed. Since we are dealing with grammatical semantics, one criterion is that a proposed subdivision should have grammatical consequences. Again, there are two possibilities: a case role distinction can be recognized if ***any*** language makes the distinction grammatically; or a distinction can only be justified within a particular language if ***that*** language makes the distinction grammatically. It should probably be borne in mind also, that necessary and sufficient definitions of participant roles are likely to be hard to come by, and that the best approach may be to characterize the prototypical cases.

Functional roles provide an approach to the characterization of syntactic functions such as subject and object. Traditionally, the subject is the 'doer' and the object the 'done to' (in the active voice), but it is easy to think of exceptions to this. A more promising approach is to establish a scale of 'activity', and define the subject as the most active participant. Fillmore's **activity hierarchy** went as follows:

AGENTIVE > INSTRUMENTAL > EXPERIENCER > LOCATIVE > OBJECTIVE

In English, a subject is obligatory, so if there is only one noun phrase in a sentence, it automatically becomes subject. The hierarchy explains cases like the following, where the subject has different roles, but is always the most active in the sentence:

John cut the wood with a saw.
This saw won't cut the wood.
Mary opened the door.
The door opened.
Mary saw the incident.
John frightened Mary.

There are many exceptions: for instance, a change of voice from active to passive will obviously change the rules for subject. There is not space to go into details.

14.4.5 Semantics and syntax: a case study

An important question concerning the relation between semantics and syntax

is the extent to which the syntactic properties of words are determined by, or predictable from, their meanings. There is a substantial body of opinion which holds that there is a significant degree of arbitrariness in grammar. That this is so, is suggested by such elementary considerations as the obvious syntactic differences between near synonyms, as in the following:

(79) Let's hide it.
Let's conceal it.

(80) Let's hide.
*Let's conceal.

(81) We've finished the job.
We've completed the job.

(82) We've finished.
*We've completed.

Even Langacker, who believes that grammar can only be properly understood in terms of its semantic function (i.e. every construction at every level must be seen as symbolizing some element of conceptual content), none the less denies that grammar can be predicted from meaning. In one sense, this is obvious, otherwise all languages would have essentially the same grammar, differing only in phonetic realization (unless one adopts a strong Whorfian position). However, it leaves open the possibility that, within a particular grammar, formal choices may be dictated by meaning. We shall illustrate this point by referring to a study (reported in Levin and Hovav Rappaport 1992) which takes up this position, and attempts to support it by showing a tight relationship between the meanings of a set of verbs and their complementation patterns.

Levin and Hovav Rappaport's study involves what they initially call 'verbs of removal' (although *remove* does not belong to the class), such as those in:

(83) John cleared the leaves from the lawn.
(84) Mary wiped the offending words from the blackboard.

Both of these also occur in a pattern in which the location (where the things are removed from) is the direct object of the verb:

(85) John cleared the lawn.
(86) Mary wiped the blackboard.

However, the two verbs differ in their ability to occur in a pattern where the locatum (the thing which is removed) is expressed by an *of*-phrase:

(87) John cleared the lawn of leaves.
(88) *Mary wiped the blackboard of offending words.

Wipe can occur in this pattern only if a final state is specified:

(89) Mary wiped the blackboard clean of offending words.

The patterns in which they occur separate these verbs of removal into two distinct classes:

I *Clear*-verbs: clear, clean, empty

II *Wipe*-verbs: buff, brush, file, mop, pluck, rake, rinse, rub, scour, scrape, scratch, shear, shovel, sponge, trim, vacuum, wipe

Remove belongs to a third class which do not allow alternative expression of their arguments:

III *Remove*-verbs: dislodge, draw, evict, pry, remove, steal, uproot, withdraw, wrench

Levin and Hovav Rappaport's task, then, is to discover the semantic features which determine whether a verb belongs to I, II, or III, above. The following generalizations emerge:

(i) *Clear*-verbs: these verbs all encode the final state of the entity being acted on, but do not encode either the manner in which the final state is achieved, or the instrument which is used. Consistent with this, they are typically derived from adjectives denoting the final state: this is true of the verbs *clear*, *clean*, and *empty*, which are zero-derived from adjectives.

(ii) *Wipe*-verbs: these verbs all encode either a manner (e.g. *wipe*) or an instrument (e.g. *brush*), but do not entail that a particular state will result (as the authors point out, the fact that a blackboard has been wiped is no guarantee that it is clean). None of these verbs is de-adjectival; those, like *brush*, which encode an instrument, are typically derived from the noun denoting the instrument.

(iii) *Remove*-verbs: these verbs are characterized by the fact that they encode neither a final state nor a way of carrying out the action.

It is clear from the results of this investigation that, at the very least, there is a close relationship between meaning and grammatical properties.

14.4.6 Modality

Modal expressions are those which signal a particular attitude on the part of the speaker to the proposition expressed or the situation described (typically in a statement). So, for instance, in *It's probably the case that imported versions are cheaper*, the words *It's probably the case (that)* indicate the speaker's assessment of the likelihood of the proposition *imported versions are cheaper* being true. Other modals indicate the degree of desirability (or otherwise) of a proposition becoming true: *I think you should ask John about it first.* Here the speaker indicates his assessment of the merit of bringing about the truth of the proposition *you ask John about it first.*

If we take modality to be a semantic phenomenon, it is clear that it is not exclusively grammatical in nature. Indeed, in the first sentence quoted in the previous paragraph, it is expressed by lexical means. In this chapter, however, we are concerned with grammatical meaning. As far as English is concerned, this involves the so-called modal verbs, such as *may*, *might*, *should*, *ought*, *can*, and so on.

14.4.6.1 Epistemic and deontic modality

Consider sentence (90):

(90) John should be there by now.

This has two fairly distinct interpretations:

(i) John is under an obligation to be there by now.
(ii) It is likely that John is there by now.

Interpretation (i) is said to be a **deontic** reading of the modal *should*, and interpretation (ii) is said to be an **epistemic** reading. Halliday (1985) says that epistemic modality calibrates the area of meaning lying between *Yes* and *No*; whereas deontic modality calibrates the area of meaning between *Do it!* and *Don't do it!*

It is a notable fact that grammatical modal expressions regularly have both epistemic and deontic uses, and this seems to be a universal phenomenon, not confined to English. Various suggested explanations have been put forward for this, either by showing that both are merely special cases of some more general meaning, or by showing that the derivation of one from the other (by metaphor, or whatever), is so 'natural' as to be inevitable; however, none of the proposed solutions so far is wholly convincing.

14.4.6.2 Values of modals

Halliday recognizes three strengths or levels of modality: high, median, and low. In the case of epistemic modality, **high** means a high probability of the truth of the proposition; in the case of deontic modality, **high** designates a high degree of obligation. High and low values can be distinguished from median values by their behaviour with negatives. It is first necessary to distinguish between the negation of the modal and the negation of the proposition. Take the case of (91):

(91) John must leave tomorrow.

If the modal is negated, the meaning would be that John is not obligated to leave tomorrow; if the proposition is negated, the meaning would be that John is obligated to not leave tomorrow. In English, a straightforward syntactic negation results in the proposition being negated semantically:

(92) John must not leave tomorrow.

In order to express the negation of the modal, a different verb is needed:

(93) John need not (i.e. "not-must") leave tomorrow.

It sometimes happens that whether the modal or the proposition is negated by a syntactic negative depends on whether the modal is functioning epistemically or deontically. This is the case, for example, with *may*:

(94) The papers may not be ready. (epistemic: "it is possible that the papers are not ready"; proposition negated)
(95) You may not leave before you have finished your work. (deontic: "you are not allowed to leave before you have finished your work"; modal negated)

High and low values of modality are distinguished by the fact that there is a marked difference in meaning according to whether the modal or the proposition is negated; for a median value modal, there is relatively little difference of meaning. In the case of high- and low-value modals, negation reverses the value, so that a high-value modal assumes a low value, and vice versa:

(96) You must do it. (high-value modal)
(97) You mustn't do it. (high-value; proposition negated)
(98) You needn't do it. (low-value; modal negated)
(99) You may do it. (low-value modal)
(100) You may not do it. (deontic: high value; modal negated)
(101) It shouldn't be too difficult. (epistemic; modal negated; median value)
(102) It should be not-too-difficult. (epistemic; proposition negated; median value)

Halliday classifies modal verbs as follows:

high: must, ought to, need, have to, is to
median: will, would, shall, should
low: may, might, can, could

14.4.6.3 Modality as deixis

Recently it has been suggested that modality can insightfully be regarded as a form of deixis with a spatial basis, with modals indicating the extent to which the speaker associates with or distances themselves from the proposition. This might have a superficial plausibility, but the arguments are far from compelling. Clearly, modality would have to be seen as a metaphorical extension of space (along the lines of *John and I are very close*). However, modal expressions which contain metaphorically extended spatial terms do not readily spring to mind (modal verbs have no overt connection with space). Moreover, one can just as easily think of modals operating on a scale of something like certainty, on the model of the scales of length, temperature, or whatever, which underlie antonym pairs. This, while perhaps ultimately having some connection with spatial concepts, would indicate a much less direct association

between modality and deixis. (Another argument against a ***deictic*** analysis of modality (even if a spatial analysis is accepted) is that objective interpretations of modals are arguably not oriented towards the speaker.)

14.5 Adjectives and properties

Not all languages have adjectives (the functions that adjectives perform in English being covered by nouns, verbs, or some combination of these), but in those languages which have them, adjectives prototypically denote atemporal properties, that is to say, properties which are relatively stable over time, or which are construed in such a way that no account needs to be taken of the passage of time. Adjectival properties are also prototypically unidimensional, denoting an easily isolable concept, in contrast to prototypical nouns, which denote rich, highly interconnected complexes of properties.

14.5.1 Modification

The principal function of adjectives is **modification**: the combination of Adj. + Noun prototypically restricts the domain designated by the noun alone to a subpart, and designates a subset of the entities denoted by the noun alone.

There are two main positions for adjectives in English:

a long book	**attributive** position
the book is long	**predicative** position

Most adjectives can occur in both positions (there are exceptions: *The man is afraid*/**the afraid man*; *the main problem*/**The problem is main*). One suggestion as to the semantic correlates of this positional difference is that the predicative position attributes a relatively greater time sensitivity to the designated state of affairs. So, for instance, (103) is slightly more normal than (104), because the temperature of water is inherently changeable:

(**103**) Be careful, that water is hot.
(**104**) Be careful, that is hot water.

The normalities are reversed in (105) and (106), because softness is a relatively permanent property:

(**105**) Don't add too much detergent—our water is soft.
(**106**) Don't add too much detergent—we have soft water.

This proposal would also offer an explanation of the oddness of *an afraid man*.

Generally speaking, we would expect dispositions to be happier in attributive position and labile states to be happier in predicative position:

(**107**) He is calm now.

(108) ?He is a calm man now.

(109) ?He is placid now.
(110) He is a placid man now.

In this connection we may contrast *afraid*, which is a labile state, and *timid*, which is a disposition, and has a preference for the attributive position:

(111) John is timid < John is a timid person.

14.5.2 Gradable and non-gradable adjectives

There are two major dichotomies in the classification of adjectives. The first separates **gradable** from **non-gradable** adjectives. This has grammatical consequences, because prototypically, the degree inflections occur only in connection with gradable adjectives; if an adjective is basically non-gradable, then it has to be reinterpreted when inflected for degree (the affix coerces a reinterpretation), as in *Kate was very married* and *Mary is very alive*. These topics are treated in some detail in Chapter 9.

14.5.3 Absolute and syncategorematic adjectives

The second major division among adjectives is between **absolute** and **relative** (or **syncategorematic**) types. A simple test for this distinction is as follows: if Adj. + X (always) entails Adj. + Y, where X is a hyponym of Y, then the adjective is absolute; if there are clear cases where the entailment fails, then the adjective is a relative one. The essence of a relative adjective is that it cannot be interpreted except in connection with the head noun. So, for instance, *a black dog* is *a black animal*, hence *black* is an absolute adjective, but *a small tyrannosaurus* is not *a small animal*, so *small* is a relative adjective.

14.5.4 Order of modifiers

Adjectives have a tendency to occur in a particular order when there are several attached to one noun:

(112) Three excellent thick sturdy old black front doors
(113) *Sturdy thick old front black three excellent doors

There have been many attempts to account for this ordering (which is not identical in all languages, although there are general similarities). One approach describes the order in terms of general concept types:

Quantity > Value > Physical Property > Age > Colour

This covers English pretty well (ignoring certain specifiable exceptions), but it leaves much unexplained. An approach that is similar in principle, but more unified, suggests that adjectives denoting more objective properties, which are less susceptible to the vagaries of personal judgement, come nearest to the

noun, whereas those that are more a matter of personal opinion come furthest away from the noun. This explains why VALUE is further than COLOUR (this seems to be true of many languages), but it does not explain, for instance, why QUANTITY is the farthest, or why *long* comes before *old*. Nor does it explain why the order is as it is, rather than the reverse. Various partial explanations have been put forward, but none is comprehensively convincing.

14.6 Quantification

Quantification is concerned with expressions like

No Albanians came to the party.
Some of my best friends are troglodytes.
All aardvarks can sing the 'Marseillaise'.

The subject noun phrases in the above are **quantified noun phrases**; the sentences express a quantification.

A quantification requires a **quantifier**, (e.g. *no*, *some*, *many*, *all*, etc.), a **restriction** (which indicates the sort of things being quantified, e.g. *Albanians*), and a **scope**, which expresses what is true of the items designated by the quantified noun phrase.

14.6.1 Quantifiers in classical predicate logic

Classical predicate logic recognizes just two quantifiers, (i) the **existential** quantifier (usually symbolized as ∃), which in its quantificational properties corresponds to such English expressions as *somebody*, *a cat*, *some book*, etc. and (ii) the **universal quantifier** (symbolized as ∀), which corresponds to expressions like *all men*, *every aardvark*, *everybody*, and so on. Some idea of the nature of quantifiers can be gained by a closer examination of these.

Consider the English sentences below:

(114) Everybody saw Mary.
(115) Somebody saw Mary.
(116) Mary saw somebody.
(117) Mary saw everybody.

These would be translated into predicate calculus by means of formulae with roughly the structure of the following:

(i) For all (x), (x) saw Mary.
(ii) For some (x), (x) saw Mary.
(iii) For some (x), Mary saw (x)
(iv) For all (x), Mary saw (x).

Here, (x) is called a **variable**, because it does not have a fixed reference, and the

quantifier is said to **bind** the variable. *Mary saw (x)* is called a **propositional function** and when (x) is given a referential value, it forms/expresses a proposition. For a sentence like *All aardvarks are left-pawed* a more complex representation is required:

For all (x), if (x) is an aardvark then (x) is left-pawed.

And for existential quantification, take *An aardvark sang*:

For some (x), (x) is an aardvark and (x) sang.

Now let us look at sentences with two quantifiers, like:

(118) Every aardvark saw a springbok.

This sentence is ambiguous: either all the aardvarks saw a particular springbok, or every aardvark had a springbok-viewing experience, but not necessarily of the same springbok. This ambiguity can be captured by placing one quantifier within the scope of the other in two different ways. Suppose we start with the existential quantifier in the outer position, with the universal quantifier in its scope. The resultant sentence has a 'formal' translation as follows:

There exists some (x), such that (x) is a springbok and for all (y), if (y) is an aardvark then (y) saw (x).

Reversing the order of the quantifiers yields:

For all (y), if (y) is an aardvark then there exists some (x) such that (x) is a springbok and (y) saw (x).

Quantifiers interact in regular ways with negatives, and similar sorts of ambiguities can arise as with two quantifiers. Take the sentence *Alf the aardvark didn't see a springbok*. The most natural interpretation of this would be:

It is not the case that there existed a (y) such that (y) was a springbok and Alf saw (y).

Here, the existential quantifier is within the scope of the negative operator (translated as *it is not the case that . . .*). But there is another possible interpretation for this type of structure, as in *John did not see a sniper, and was shot as he crossed the road.* Here the negative is inside the scope of the existential operator:

There existed an (x) such that (x) was a sniper and it is not the case that John saw (x).

There is a similar interaction between a negative and a universal quantifier. Consider the sentence *All the aardvarks did not see Pik.* The most natural interpretation of this is once again with the negative having widest scope:

It is not the case that for all (x), if (x) is an aardvark, (x) saw Pik.

It is less natural to read this sentence with the quantifier having the widest scope:

For all (x), if (x) is an aardvark then it is not the case that (x) saw Pik.

A more natural encoding of this meaning is *None of the aardvarks saw Pik*. If we have two quantifiers and a negative, as in *All the aardvarks did not see a springbok*, there are in theory six possible interpretations, although some of them are somewhat unnatural:

For all (x) if (x) is an aardvark, then it is not the case that there exists a (y) such that (y) is a springbok and (x) saw (y).
(No aardvark saw a springbok)

For all (x) if (x) is an aardvark, then there exists a (y) such that (y) is a springbok and it is not the case that (x) saw it.
(For every aardvark there was a springbok that it did not see)

It is not the case that for all (x) if (x) is an aardvark, then there exists a (y) such that (y) is a springbok and (x) saw (y).
(Not all the aardvarks saw any springbok)

It is not the case that there exists a (y) such that (y) is a springbok and for all (x) if (x) is an aardvark then (x) saw (y).
(No springbok was seen by all the aardvarks)

There exists a (y) such that (y) is a springbok and for all (x) if (x) is an aardvark, then it is not the case that (x) saw (y).
(There is a springbok that none of the aardvarks saw)

There exists a (y) such that it is not the case that for all (x) if (x) is an aardvark then (x) saw (y).
(There is a springbok that was not seen by all the aardvarks)

When one quantifier is within the scope of another, the including quantifier is said to have **wider scope** (this applies not only to the 'classical' quantifiers just dealt with, but to *most*, *many*, *a few*, etc.). It is possible to arrange quantifiers in order of their preferences for wide scope; this at least partially determines the preferred readings of propositions with more than one quantifier. One suggestion for the order of preference is as follows:

each > every > all > most > many > several > some > a few

The effect of these different degrees of inherent tendency to have wide scope can be seen in the following:

(**119**) A springbok was seen by many aardvarks.
(**120**) A springbok was seen by each aardvark.

In the preferred interpretation of (119), *many* is within the scope of *a*, and we take it that a single springbok is involved. In (120), however, the scopes are reversed, and we assume a plurality of springboks. This is a consequence of the fact that *each* has the stronger tendency to wide scope, strong enough to override the tendency of a subject to take wide scope; *many*, on the other hand, is overridden by *a* in subject position.

14.6.2 Generalized quantifiers: the 'set' interpretation of quantifiers

The trouble with the classical quantifiers of predicate logic is that, first, there are quantifying expressions that intuitively belong together with *every* and *some/a*, but which cannot be expressed in the predicate calculus (for instance *many*, *few*, *more than half*, etc.) and second, there are many whose expression is clumsy and counterintuitive (Cann (1993) gives the following as a translation of *At least two students laughed*:

There exists an (x) and a (y) such that (x) is a student and (y) is a student and (x) is not the same as (y) and (x) laughed and (y) laughed

This can be adapted for any specific number, but at some cost in plausibility.)

A more fruitful way of looking at quantifiers is to say that they express relations of quantity between sets of elements. These are relations which are not concerned with the identity of any of the elements in the sets that they relate to, but only with their numbers. The relevant sets in a quantified sentence such as *Every aardvark sneezed* are (i) the set of things which satisfy the subject nominal, that is, the set of aardvarks, and (ii) the set of things which satisfy the predicate, that is, the set of sneezers. One way of accounting for the relation between these sets which is expressed by the sentence is to say that the set of aardvarks is a subset of the set of sneezers. A more general way which allows a uniform treatment of a wider range of quantifiers is in terms of cardinality, that is, the number of elements in a set, together with operators such as '=', '>', '<', etc. This gives the following interpretations:

(121) *Every X is Y*: "The number of elements in the set of things that are X but not in the set of things that are Y is zero."

(122) *Some X are Y*: "The number of elements in the set of things that are both X and Y is greater than zero."

(123) *Five X are Y*: "The number of elements in the set of things that are both X and Y is five."

(124) *Most X are Y*: "The number of elements in the set of things that are both X and Y is greater than the number of elements in the set of things that are X but not Y."

(125) *Neither X is Y*: "The number of elements in the set of things that are both X and Y is zero, and the number of elements in X is two."

Some of these analyses are straightforward, but some merit further discussion. Take the analysis of *most*: as it stands, it would also serve for *the majority of* and *more than half*. Is this an entirely satisfactory account of *most*? Cann (1993) suggests that for at least some speakers *most* requires a greater proportion than *more than half*: that is to say, if out of 100 aardvarks, 51 sneezed and 49 did not, this would not justify the use of *most*, but would satisfy the formula given above (and would justify *more than half*). Cann's solution is to say that the required proportion for *most* is pragmatically determined by reference to context (this should be taken to include the identity of X and Y); he incorporates a contextual proportional factor in the formula. His account of *most* can be expressed verbally as follows:

(126) *Most X are Y*: "The number of elements in the set of things that are both X and Y is greater than the number of elements in the set of things that are X but not Y multiplied by the contextual factor *c*."

A contextual factor is also needed for *many*. Cann points out that the proportion which would justify the use of *many* need not be as much as *more than half*; for instance, *Many civil servants receive knighthoods* may mean no more than that the proportion of knighted civil servants is greater than that of other comparable professions, and may still be quite a small percentage. Cann's analysis of *many* is:

(127) *Many X are Y*: "The number of elements in the set of things that are both X and Y is greater than the number of elements in the set of things that are X multiplied by the contextual factor *c*."

It should be noted, however, that the *c* which appears in (126) is not the same as that which appears in (127); they should therefore be distinguished as *c* (most) and *c* (many).

14.6.3 Conservativity

Conservativity appears to be a property of all natural language quantifiers (taking as a defining feature of quantifiers that they are syntactically determiners). Consider the following:

(128) Every aardvark sneezed.
Some aardvarks sneezed.
No aardvark sneezed.

In assessing the truth of these sentences, we are constrained to consider the set of aardvarks, and we do not need to consider anything that is not an aardvark. The quantified noun phrase establishes the universe of discourse. Contrast

these with (129), where the truth cannot be established by looking only at aardvarks, since non-aardvarks must also be considered:

(129) Everything except aardvarks sneezed.

The quantifier phrases in (128) are said to be **conservative**; that in (129) is not conservative. Cann suggests that conservativity can be recognized by paraphrasability, as follows:

(130) Every aardvark sneezed. = Every aardvark is an aardvark that sneezed.
Some aardvarks sneezed. = Some aardvarks are aardvarks that sneezed.
No aardvark sneezed. = No aardvark is an aardvark that sneezed.

Notice that (129) cannot be paraphrased in this way:

(131) Everything except aardvarks sneezed. ≠ Everything except aardvarks is an aardvark that sneezed.

Larson and Segal (1995) point out that it is logically possible to define a determiner *nall* with the meaning "everything except", such that *Nall aardvarks sneezed* would be synonymous with (129); however, no such determiner has been found in any natural language.

14.6.4 Directional entailingness

From sentence (132)

(132) Every dog barked.

we can validly infer *Every spaniel barked*, but not *Every animal barked*; we can also infer *Every dog made a noise*, but not *Every dog barked loudly*. Notice that the valid entailment goes from less specific to more specific for the subject term, but from more specific to less specific for the predicate term; more technically, the subject in (132) is **downward entailing**, and the predicate is **upward entailing**. The directional pattern of entailment is characteristic of the quantifier *every*, which creates a downward-entailing environment for its subject and an upward-entailing environment for its predicate. The full range of patterns is as follows:

14.6.4.1 Subject upward entailing; predicate upward entailing

(133) If some dogs barked, then some animals barked.
(134) If some animals barked, then some animals made a noise.
(provided *some* is interpreted as "at least one")
(135) *If some dogs barked, then some spaniels barked.
(136) *If some dogs barked, then some dogs barked loudly.

14.6.4.2 Subject and predicate downward entailing

(137) If no dogs barked, then no spaniels barked.
(138) If no dogs barked, then no dogs barked loudly.
(139) *If no dogs barked, then no animals barked.
(140) *If no dogs barked, then no dogs made a noise.

14.6.4.3 Subject downward entailing, predicate upward entailing

(141) If every dog barked, then every spaniel barked.
(142) If every dog barked, then every dog made a noise.
(143) *If every dog barked, then every animal barked.
(144) *If every dog barked, then every dog barked loudly.

14.6.4.4 Subject no entailment, predicate upward entailing

(145) If most dogs barked, then most dogs made a noise.
(provided 'most' is interpreted not to exclude 'all')
(146) *If most dogs barked, then most spaniels barked.
(147) *If most dogs barked, then most animals barked.
(148) *If most dogs barked, then most dogs barked loudly.

14.6.5 Negative polarity items

Directional entailment properties correlate in an interesting way with so-called **negative polarity items (negpols)**. These are expressions which are only normal in certain types of environment, typically containing a negative element of some kind. Typical examples are *anyone*, *anything*, *ever*:

(149) He never says anything.
He rarely says anything.
I haven't seen anyone.
No one has ever reached the top.
Few people have ever reached the top.

Compare the normality of these with those in (151):

(150) *A man has ever reached the top.
*All men have ever reached the top.
*Some men have ever reached the top.
*Most men have ever reached the top.
*Many men have ever reached the top.

*He always says anything.
*He sometimes says anything.
*He usually says anything.

The correlation with direction of entailment is that negpols are licensed in downward-entailing environments, but not in upward-entailing environments

or environments where there is no entailment. This constraint applies to both the subject and the predicate positions (examples from Larson and Segal):

(151) No [person who has ever visited Boston] has returned to it.
No [person who has visited Boston] has ever returned to it.

*Some [person who has ever visited B.] has returned to it.
*Some [person who has visited B.] has ever returned to it.

Every [person who has ever visited B.] has returned to it.
*Every [person who has visited B.] has ever returned to it.

This correlation is interesting, but it does not really constitute an explanation, and there are other unexplained properties of negpols, such as the fact that some occur happily with questions, while others do not (and how questions fit in with the direction of entailment feature):

(152) I didn't say anything.
Did you say anything?

I didn't say a word.
*Did you say a word?

It won't take long.
Will it take long?
No one with any wit has taken long to do it.
*No one who has taken long over it has any wit.

Clearly, further research is needed into this topic.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. In what way(s) is the number-related behaviour of the following English nouns unusual?:

cattle *oats* *scissors* *iron filings*

2. Construct a set of sentences parallel to (28)–(36) in this chapter, but with the secondary tense in the subordinate clause, and the reference time in the main clause, as in:

When John had eaten, Bill switched off the lights.

Notice the different distribution of forms.

3. Consider the following verbs in connection with the progressive/simple alternation:

resemble	*die*	*think* (of NP as NP/adj.)
guess (v.i.)	*look (happy)*	*exaggerate*
command	*graduate*	*feel (cold)*
explode		

4. What case roles are represented by the **bold** items in the following?:

(a) **John** watched **the squirrel**.
(b) Mary put the cup **on the table**.
(c) **You** can taste the wine. (two possible answers)
(d) We followed **the river** for three miles.
(e) John drilled **a hole** in the wall, then filled **it** with plaster.
(f) They left **London** yesterday.
(g) **The storm** had ripped the roof off.
(h) Mary bought **John** a tie.

5. The notion of modality is sometimes extended beyond modal verbs proper to expressions like *it is possible that*. Classify the following as 'high-', 'median-' or 'low-' value modals:

it is probable that
it is possible that
it is unlikely that
it is certain that

6. How would you characterize the following verbs in terms of Levin and Hovav Rappaport's three classes?

erase drain extract sweep unload scrub

7. Which of the following are implicitly negative (examine their collocability with negpols)?

hardly	*often*	*seldom*	*occasionally*
mostly	*a few*	*far (from)*	*near*
free (from)	*beware of*	*take care to*	*avoid*

Suggestions for further reading

The most complete currently available account of grammatical semantics is Frawley (1992), which covers all the topics dealt with in this chapter in a fairly accessible way.

For a fuller treatment of individual topics, the following may also be consulted:

- Number: Allan (1986, Vol. 1: 120 ff.) and Cruse (1994*a*).

- Tense and aspect: Dahl (1985).
- Participant roles: Fillmore (1968) and (1977).
- Modality: Palmer (1986), Halliday (1985).
- Quantifiers: Cann (1993), Larson and Segal (1995), chs. 7 and 8.

Part 4
Pragmatics

Part 4 deals with topics which are normally held to fall under the heading of pragmatics. The topics of reference and deixis, and conversational implicatures, dealt with in Chapters 15 and 17, respectively, belong uncontroversially here, since they deal not only with aspects of meaning not overtly encoded as the conventional meaning of any linguistic expressions, but also with how language 'hooks on to' the extralinguistic world. Speech acts, on the other hand, the topic of Chapter 16, straddle the semantics/pragmatics divide somewhat uncomfortably: performative verbs arguably belong to lexical semantics, and grammatical performatives, like interrogatives and imperatives, would not be out of place in Chapter 14. However, much illocutionary force is implicated, and to that extent belongs in pragmatics. It is customary to treat the various aspects of speech act theory as belonging to pragmatics, and this convention has been followed here.

CHAPTER 15

Reference and deixis

15.1 Reference	305	**Discussion questions and exercises**	326
15.2 Definite reference	312	**Suggestions for further reading**	327
15.3 Deixis	319		

CHAPTER 15

Reference and deixis

15.1 Reference

The topic of reference has been the cause of an outflow of gallons of recondite ink: some of the subtlest philosophical minds have grappled with it, and the debates have been contentious and inconclusive. What is put forward in this chapter is necessarily of an introductory nature.

Under the heading of reference we encounter one of the most fundamental and vital aspects of language and language use, namely, the relations between language, as a medium of communication between human beings, and the world, about which we communicate. One of the most basic things that we do when we communicate through language is to pick out entities in the world and ascribe properties to them, or indicate relations between them. Reference is concerned with designating entities in the world by linguistic means.

Right at the start we encounter deep controversies. One of these concerns the basic nature of reference. Let us take it for the moment as uncontroversial (it isn't) that one of the terms in an instance of the relation of reference is something in the world. What is the other term? The obvious choices are a linguistic expression, such as *Tom*, or *the man*, and the person speaking. It is commonplace in discussions of linguistic matters to say things like: '*Bill Clinton* (in, say, *Bill Clinton is to visit Ireland in May*) refers to the current president of the United States.' Here we are putting forward an expression and a person as the terms of the relation of reference. However, there is no privileged one-to-one relationship between the expression *Bill Clinton* and the Bill Clinton who is president of the USA. There are doubtless hundreds (at least) of Bill Clintons in the world. *Bill Clinton* referred to the current president of the USA only because some speaker intended to use the expression for that purpose on some particular occasion. Here we have a unique one-to-one relation, namely, that between the speaker's intention to refer and the president of the USA. We shall therefore adopt Searle's (1969) position, and say that reference is not an inherent property of expressions, but is a speech act. This is not to say, of course, that the speech act of reference is unconstrained by the linguistic

expressions used; on the contrary, certain expressions are specially adapted for this function, as we shall see.

Two further uses of the word *reference* should be signalled, one of which will be occasionally adopted here, the other not. It is common to speak of the reference of a linguistic expression, meaning the things it has been used on some specific occasion to refer to. So, for instance, in a newspaper headline: *Bill Clinton to visit Ireland in May*, the reference (in this sense) of *Bill Clinton* is the present president of the USA. This seems to be harmless, and does not lead to confusion. (If there is any danger of confusion we shall use *referent(s)*.) Another common usage is to say that, for instance, *dog* refers to the class of dogs, and that the reference of *dog* is the class of dogs. This is contrary to our usage, and it will not be adopted. We shall follow Lyons (1968), and say that *dog* **denotes** the class of dogs, and that the class of dogs constitutes the **denotation** of *dog*. (There is, of course, a relation between what an expression denotes and what acts of reference it can be used in the performance of: the former constrains the latter.)

We have so far assumed that the distal term of the relation of reference is something in the world. But this, too, is rife with controversy, and goes even deeper than the controversy just mentioned. Are there, indeed, any such things as 'things in the world'? Are things not mental constructs? In which case we should specify that reference is to do with things in the experienced world, not in the objective world. Of course, we assume there is some connection between these two worlds, but the relation between referrers and the objective world is indirect. This position is compellingly argued by Jackendoff (1983), and will be assumed here to be correct, although we shall continue to speak merely of *things in the world*.

15.1.1 Definite reference

There are various types and modes of reference. We shall concentrate on three: **definite reference**, **indefinite reference**, and **generic reference**. There is no doubt that it is definite reference which is the most crucial for the functioning of language. (In the philosophical literature it is usually called *singular definite reference*; for our purposes, however, there are no particular problems in moving from *singular* to *plural*.)

To open the discussion of definite reference, consider the two sentences below:

(1) The man gave it to her.
(2) A man gave it to her.

How does the meaning of sentence (1) differ from the meaning of sentence (2)? Obviously both indicate an act of giving by some adult male person (we shall ignore the rest of the sentence). The features which distinguish (1) from (2) can be set out as follows:

(a) The intended referential target is necessarily a particular entity (believed by the speaker to fall into the category MAN, but notice that the speaker can be mistaken about this and still, on some particular occasion, successfully refer), who can in principle be uniquely identified by the speaker.

This means that the speaker should be able, on demand, to give information that for them distinguishes the (man) in question from all other men. The speaker may not be able to name the man, or even give any descriptive information: for instance, what makes the man unique may be only that he occasioned an auditory experience on the part of the speaker at a particular time and place.

(b) The speaker intends that the referential target should come to be uniquely identified for the hearer, too.

This is, in fact, the main point of the act of reference. Once again, the information which enables the hearer to uniquely identify the intended referent may be minimal.

(c) The act of reference brings with it to the hearer an implicit assurance that they have enough information to uniquely identify the referent, taking into account the semantic content of the referring expression (or other properties of the expression which limit the search space), and information available from context, whether situational (i.e. currently perceivable), linguistic, or mental (i.e. memory and knowledge).

Searle makes a quaint distinction between a 'successful' act of reference, which requires only (a) to hold, and a 'fully consummated' act of reference, which requires also (b). (The act of reference is thus like having an orgasm: one can do it on one's own, but to be fully consummated we need a partner.) We can follow Searle, and add the following features/conditions for a fully successful act of referring (not necessarily distinctive for referring):

(d) Normal input and output conditions hold.

This just means that, for instance, speaker and hearer speak the same language, the utterance is both audible and comprehensible to the hearer, and so on.

(e) The act of reference is embedded in a more inclusive speech act.

An act of reference cannot stand on its own as a communication: *the man* communicates nothing, except when embedded in a sentence like *I saw the man*, or as an answer to a question such as *What can you see?*

(f) The speaker intends that the hearer should recognize his intention to refer by virtue of his having produced the utterance in question.

(g) Prototypically, the part of the utterance, the production of which is intended to signal the intention to refer, should have a form which conventionally performs this function.

In general, the identification of the referents of definite referring expressions is necessary so that the hearer can reconstruct the proposition(s) being expressed by the speaker, as these specify the arguments of such propositions. (We shall not discuss here the knotty problem of exactly what the terms of a proposition are, i.e. whether they are things in the objective world or the experienced world, or entities in the same sort of platonic realm as numbers, etc.)

15.1.2 Indefinite reference

Sentence (2) above is an example of indefinite reference. The essence of indefinite reference is that the identity of the referent is not germane to the message: that is, nothing hinges on the individual features of the referent, only the class features indicated are presented as relevant. Notice that this has nothing to do with whether or not either speaker or hearer is in fact able to effect a unique identification of the referent. Suppose someone complains of extreme boredom, and in response I pick up a book and offer it to them, saying either (i) *Here, read a book*, or (ii) *Here, read this book*. What is the difference? In both cases the identity of the book is clear to both participants. The difference is that in (i), the identity of the book is not germane, just the fact that it is a book, whereas in (ii), the identity of the book is presented as (a) important to the message (e.g. *You're bound to find this particular one interesting*), and (b) accessible to the hearer. (We shall leave aside for the moment the question of why it would not be appropriate to say *Here, read the book* in these circumstances.)

We have so far only considered the indefinite article as a signal of indefiniteness. However, all the following sentences contain indefinite expressions:

Come up and see me sometime.
I expect he's hiding somewhere.
You'll manage somehow.
Are you looking for something/somebody?
She met this sailor.
Some man gave it to him.
To make the spell work, you have to say certain words.

Consider now the following sentence:

(3) To get the automatic door to open you have to say a word.

This can be interpreted in two ways: either it is the case that any word will open the door, or a specific one is necessary. This is the classic **specific/non-specific** distinction in indefinites, which has given rise to much discussion. It is usually claimed that the distinction is operative only in certain modal contexts,

for example with *want*, *must*, *have to*, and so on (the standard example is *Mary wants to marry a Norwegian banker*). It is true that there are circumstances where the difference is hard to intuit (e.g. *Mary married a banker*), but this may simply be because it is difficult to construct a context where the distinction would be relevant. It would be difficult to extend the idea of 'modality' to cover the following cases, where the distinction can easily be felt:

(4) A: How did he get the door to open?
B: He said a word.

(5) A: Why was Mary angry?
B: Because John bought a book.

The specific readings of *a word* in (4) and *a book* in (5) are very close to "a certain word" and "a certain book", respectively. This reading shares with the meaning of a corresponding definite expression (*the word* and *the book*) that the identity of the referent is relevant to the situation described; what distinguishes these readings from definites is that the speaker does not signal to the hearer that the identification of the referent is essential to the message being conveyed (I am referring here to what I assume are central uses of *a certain X*; there are (presumably) marginal cases where the use represents the deliberate avoidance of a proper name for (presumably) non-semantic reasons, that is, the proper name, would, other things being equal, have been appropriate):

(6) I spoke to a certain person about you-know-what.

Notice that *this* can also function as a specific indefinite:

(7) We met this man in the pub.

This usage seems to signal that the man in question has been introduced as a topic about which more will be said; *a certain man* does not function in this way.

There has been some controversy about whether sentences like (4) are genuinely ambiguous between the two readings, or whether the specific reading is merely a contextual enrichment of the non-specific reading. This is somewhat difficult to decide. One can point to the fact that in some languages, the distinction is made grammatically:

(8) Marie cherche un homme qui **peut** lui faire l'amour douze fois par jour.
(9) Marie cherche un homme qui **puisse** lui faire l'amour douze fois par jour.
("Marie is looking for a man who can make love to her twelve times a day")

In (8), Marie knows exactly who(m) she is looking for; in (9) she is simply overly optimistic. The difference is signalled by indicative vs. subjunctive mood in the verb.

In Turkish, a difference of this kind can be signalled by the presence or absence of the direct object marker on the noun:

(10) Bir **kelime** söyledi. ("S/he said a word"; non-specific)
(11) Bir **kelimeyi** söyledi. ("S/he said a word"; specific)

But such observations are not conclusive as far as ambiguity is concerned. If we take it that the specific indefinite is more specific than the non-specific indefinite in the same, or a similar sense in which *dog* is more specific than *animal*, then we can apply the independent truth-condition test. Recall examples like the following:

(12) A: Does John drink?
B: No, he'll just have an orange juice.

This shows that the specific reading of *drink* (= "drink alcohol") has independence.

The specific reading of *child* (= "girl"), on the other hand, does not pass this test:

(13) A: Was it a child who answered the door?
B: *No, it was a boy.

We can now apply the same test to indefinites. First notice the normality of the following:

(14) A: Do you have to say a certain word?
B: No, any word will do.

If *a word* is ambiguous, with *a certain word* as one of its readings, the following ought to be normal:

(15) A: Do you have to say a word?
B: No, any word will do.

Clearly, this is not normal, and this is evidence for the lack of distinctness of the specific reading.

At least one analysis of indefinites (Hawkins 1978) claims that the use of an indefinite implies that reference is being made to one item out of a set of similar items. Suppose A says, *I can't see to read in my bedroom* and B replies, *Take a lamp from the dining-room.* This seems to implicate that there is more than one lamp in the dining-room, otherwise B would have said, *Take the lamp from the dining-room.* However, this is not quite true: the facts are more complex. Suppose B does not know how many lamps there are in the dining-room. In that case, B will still say, *Take a lamp.* . . . That is to say, the true implicature of *a lamp*, out of context, is that a plurality of (qualifying) lamps is not excluded. A will take an implicature that there is more than one lamp only if they know (or assume) that B knows how many lamps there are. The claim Hawkins should have made, therefore, is that the use of an indefinite implicates that reference is not knowingly being made to an item uniquely defined by the linguistic expression used. If the referent is known by the speaker to be

thus uniquely defined, but the particular identity is not specially relevant, then some other construction must be used, for instance, *There's a lamp in the dining-room you could use.*

15.1.3 Generic reference

Now consider the following sentences:

(16) The tiger is a friendly beast.
(17) A tiger is a friendly beast.
(18) Tigers are friendly beasts.

Sentence (16) is ambiguous, with a reading which is irrelevant to our current concerns, but all three have readings which involve what is called **generic reference**, that is, reference to a class of referents. All of the above predicate friendliness as a general characteristic of the members of the class of tigers. None of them is inconsistent with minor exceptions, but all of them are inconsistent with the existence of a significant subclass of unfriendly tigers:

(19) The tiger, with few exceptions, is a friendly beast.
(20) ?The tiger is a friendly beast, although there are many that are not friendly.

(21) A tiger is a friendly beast, although there is the occasional exception.
(22) ?A tiger is a friendly beast, although many of them aren't.

(23) Tigers, with few exceptions, are friendly beasts.
(24) ?Tigers are friendly beasts, although many of them aren't.

None of the above is synonymous with *All tigers are friendly beasts* or *Every tiger is a friendly beast*:

(25) *All tigers are friendly beasts, although there are a few exceptions.

There are two sorts of proposition involving generic reference as argument: either something is predicated of the whole class referred to, or something is predicated of each member of the class. These two readings available under the heading of generic reference are known as the **collective reading** and the **distributed reading**, respectively. Sentences (16), (17), and (18) have different affinities for these two uses. Sentence (16) strongly prefers the collective reading:

(26) The tiger is extinct.
(27) The tiger is a widely distributed species.

It will accept distributive use under certain conditions (which are at present not clear):

(28) ??I like watching the tiger.

Sentence (17) will accept only distributive uses:

(29) *A tiger is extinct.
(30) *A tiger is widely distributed.
(31) A tiger has a long tail.
(32) I like watching a tiger.

(Notice that this last sentence is singular, that is to say, it expresses enjoyment of watching a single tiger. This is why it will not accept distributive plural uses (i.e. those where the basic fact involves individuals, not the species, but a plurality of individuals is necessary):

(33) The computer has revolutionized business practices.
(34) Computers have revolutionized business practices.
(35) *A computer has revolutionized business practices.)

Sentences of the form of (18) will accept either use:

(36) Tigers are extinct.
(37) Tigers are widely distributed.
(38) I like watching tigers.

(Notice that the last sentence is not plural, that is to say, the plurality does not fall under the scope of *like watching*—one can with perfect propriety reply: *Good, here's one for you.*)

15.1.4 Non-referential uses of referring expressions

It is as well to note that although the expression *a tiger* in many of its uses can be used in the act of indefinite reference, it is not always so used, as for instance in (39):

(39) This animal is a tiger.

Most analysts agree that this sentence does not state that there is a tiger that this animal is identical with. For instance, it does not make sense to ask *Which tiger is it?* It seems clear that *a tiger* here stands for a set of properties which are being predicated of *this animal*. This enables us to give a satisfying account of (one) reading of *John is a complete politician*, namely, that John has all the properties which are characteristic of (prototypical) politicians.

15.2 Definite reference

We shall henceforward concentrate on definite reference, which is arguably the prototypical type of reference.

15.2.1 Types of definite referring expression

The following types of expression are definite referring expressions in English:

(i) noun phrase with definite determiners: the book, this book, that book, my book, your book, his book, her book, our book, their book;
(ii) personal pronouns: I, you, he, she, it, us, they;
(iii) proper names: John, Mary, Paris, *Gone with the Wind*, *Middlemarch*, Notre Dame, Parsifal, Guernica;
(iv) certain locative adverbs: here, there, yonder;
(v) certain temporal adverbs: now, then, yesterday, next Xmas, (certain verb tenses).

Definiteness can also be argued to be present in some unexpected places. Consider the difference between the following two sentences:

(40) Mary's watching.
(41) Mary's reading.

There are several features which these two sentences have in common. Neither verb makes sense without there being something which plays the role of direct object, or patient of the action: one can't read or watch, without reading or watching ***something***. Furthermore, in neither case is the patient of the action explicitly mentioned. However, there is a crucial difference between them, and that is, that the hearer is required to recover (from the context) a specific direct object for *watch*, but not for *read*. We shall borrow Matthews's term and say that there is a **latent** direct object in (40). The evidence for this is as follows.

(i) 'Reading' counts as an autonomous activity. 'Watching' does not. Imagine someone (A) standing outside the closed door of a room, speaking to (B) who is inside the room:

(42) A: What are you doing?
B: I'm reading
B: ?I'm watching.

The reason B's second answer is odd is that A is not in a position to recover the 'missing' direct object.

(ii) *Watch* gives rise to an identity constraint in verb-phrase anaphora, whereas *read* does not:

(43) John is reading; so is Bill.
(44) Mary is watching; so is Sue.

For (44) to be normal, Mary and Sue have to be watching the same thing (which could, of course, be the same television programme on two widely separated television sets); there is no need for John and Bill in (43) to be reading the same thing.

The use of a relative adjective like *tall* can be argued to involve covert reference to a reference value for underlying variable property. Thus, *Mary is tall* means something like "Mary's height is greater than X to a noteworthy extent", where X is the reference value for height.

The use of an ambiguous word such as *bank* likewise involves a kind of definiteness: in, for example, *We finally reached the bank*, the speaker intends one specific sense out of the possibilities to be operative, and intends that the hearer be able to identify the same sense, its identity being crucial to the message.

Except in the case of zero referring expressions, it is not possible to convey pure definiteness, and even in such cases, the search space for the intended referent is heavily constrained by selectional restrictions and so on; that is to say, it is virtually always the case that some sort of extra help is given to the hearer in selecting the intended referent(s), and this is typically overtly encoded. So, for instance, *the book* indicates that the intended referent falls within the denotation of *book* (i.e. is an instance of the concept BOOK), *he* indicates that the referent is singular, human, male, and neither speaker nor hearer in the current speech situation, *John* constrains the search to those who bear that name, and so on. The types of 'help' that speakers give to hearers can be roughly grouped under three headings: describing (e.g. "human, male", "book", etc.), pointing (e.g. *that book* is relatively distant from speaker), and naming. These are not, of course, mutually exclusive; a given expression may incorporate more than one of these. We shall now examine separately and in greater detail, three central types of definite expression: noun phrases with the definite article, proper names, and deictic expressions.

15.2.2 Definite descriptions (noun phrases with definite article)

It has been sometimes claimed that the way definite descriptions work is to provide sufficient information to distinguish the referent from all other possible referents, that is, to render it unique (presumably in the universe). This is not of course ruled out: if someone refers to *the boil on my nose*, and there is clearly only one boil on the speaker's nose, then that illustrious object has been distinguished from all other objects in the universe. But this cannot be a general truth about definite descriptions. Consider the following three instances:

(45) A: Have you seen *Pride and Prejudice*?
B: No, but I've read ***the book***.

The emphasized noun phrase refers successfully, but the only descriptive information offered is that the referent belongs to the class of books, and there are millions of these in existence.

(46) A: (in restaurant) I didn't want custard on my pie.
B: You should have told ***the waitress***.

(47) A: (at breakfast in hotel on holiday in Durham) What shall we do today?
B: I think we should go and see ***the cathedral***.

In none of these cases is enough information given overtly within the definite

noun phrase to uniquely distinguish the intended referent, yet they all refer successfully. How is this possible? Of course, in each of the above cases, the hearer ends up in possession of enough information to characterize the referent uniquely. The question is really, what principles govern the amount of information the speaker has to provide explicitly? Sometimes, this may be quite a lot:

(48) Could you send me the small blue book near the right-hand end of the second shelf from the bottom of the bookshelves in my bedroom?

In (45), (46), and (47), the amount of information is quite limited (even so, it is perhaps more than strictly necessary in some cases: e.g. in (45), *I've read it* would probably do), but at least in some cases it is necessary. So, for instance, *the building* would probably not suffice for (47). What we shall say, is that the job of the speaker is to give enough information to uniquely specify the referent within some limited domain. Then, provided that the hearer can identify the relevant domain, the information given will suffice. So, for instance, in (45), the hearer merely needs to identify a book pertaining to something that has just been mentioned; in (46), there are thousands of waitresses in the world, but only one relevant to the current immediate situation that A and B find themselves in; a similar explanation is valid for (47), except that the situation is a broader and less immediate one. This is all very well, but merely pushes the problem back one stage: how does the hearer identify the relevant domain within which the description offered uniquely characterizes the referent? The process goes something like this. The hearer makes an ordered search through possible domains, roughly in the order: (i) immediately preceding discourse (more strictly, within short-term memory), (ii) immediate situation (currently available to senses), (iii) broader situation, (iv) memory/general knowledge. We need to assume that these are in decreasing order of accessibility (in terms of amount of cognitive work needed to activate them). So, if a qualifying referent is found in the first domain, then that is taken as the intended referent (if there is more than one qualifying referent in the first domain, the speaker has failed to refer successfully). If there is no qualifying referent in the first domain, the hearer then searches the next most accessible domain, and so on, until he finds a suitable potential referent. This account (adapted from Cruse (1980)) is broadly compatible with a relevance theoretical (RT) account (see Chapter 17).

15.2.3 Proper names

Proper names, too, have given rise to a great deal of discussion, especially within the philosophy of language. There are two diametrically opposed extreme positions with regard to proper names. One of these says that proper names have no meaning whatsoever: this is usually expressed by saying that they have extension, but no intension. That is to say, they are unlike, for

instance, *the dog*, which can be used to refer to canines in the extralinguistic world by virtue of the intension, that is, the semantic content, of *dog*. Whereas a proper name like John can be used to refer to an individual referent, it does not do so by virtue of its semantic content, but by virtue of some other property, namely, that it is borne by the referent as a name. Imagine we have a batch of identical boxes which we may want to designate individually at some time. The most convenient way would be to stick a numbered label on each of them: we could then talk about *Box 235* and so on. It is clear that the numbers do not constitute in any way descriptions of the boxes, and have no ***essential*** connection with their respective boxes. On the view of proper names currently under examination, proper names are no more meaningful than the numbers on the boxes. They function to individuate members of large sets of similar entities, to distinguish which by means of descriptions would be either cumbersome, if sufficient details were known, or impossible, if they are not known. Hence, we find proper names used particularly for people and places.

The opposite view of proper names from the above is that proper names function as abbreviated descriptions, that is, they stand for the sum of the properties that distinguish the bearer from all other referents, or, to put it another way, they get their meaning by association, not with generic concepts, in the way that common nouns like *dog* do, but with individual concepts. Thus, just as we say *It's a dog* entails *It's an animal*, and this is ultimately a consequence of the properties of the concepts DOG and ANIMAL, in reference to the present writer, we would also say *It's Alan* entails *It's a man*, because of the relation between the individual concept ALAN CRUSE and the generic concept MAN. It might be objected here that there are many individuals who bear the name *Alan*, and hence the entailment does not hold. However, there is more than one concept DOG (viz. the part of an old-fashioned fireplace where vessels are placed), and hence, by this argument, the former entailment does not hold, either. But there is no reason why ambiguity should invalidate entailment, as long as a determinate sense is intended on the occasion of use. On this view, the only difference between the *dog* case and the *Alan* case is the greater degree of homonymy in the latter. (Notice that in a use such as *There were three Alans in the room*, the word *Alan* is not being used as a proper noun, that is to say, there is no activation of associated individual concepts; *Alan* functions in such cases as a common noun meaning "person bearing the name *Alan*".)

Here we have two apparently irreconcilable views. In fact, it will be argued here that both are (partially) correct. Let us first look at objections to each of the views. A standard argument against the second view, that proper names are abbreviated descriptions, is that the continuing use of proper names for reference is immune to changing conceptions of the nature of the referent: proper names have stable referential properties. We may, for instance, discover that someone we have come to think of as a gypsy princess called Toni turns out to be a Welshman: we can on such a discovery say, without a hint of contradiction, *My friend Toni isn't a gypsy princess, but a Welsh ex-miner*

(notice we don't say *He's not Toni after all* nor *Toni doesn't exist any more* nor even *Toni has changed*). How is this possible, if proper names stand for an individual concept? We shall return to this in a moment.

There are also arguments against the proposal that proper names are devoid of meaning. One is that there must be an associated set of properties of some kind, which are in some way defining, or at least distinctive, otherwise one would never be able to say *No, that's not John, that's Bill.* (Notice, that even after the traumatic discovery of the previous paragraph, one would still not be in a position to say *That's not Toni*: it is, on the other hand, inconceivable that the name would persist if EVERY property changed.) Another argument, or at least pertinent observation, is that many common nouns have a similar property of denotational stability in the face of modifications in the concept. These are the so-called **natural-kind** terms, like *water*, *gold*, *tiger*, and so forth. We shall at some time have to integrate these into our picture. A different line of argument is to point out that, for instance, it would be odd to christen a girl *John*, or *The Old Mill*, or even *Littlehampton*, nor would we expect a boy to be called *Daffodil*, or a country to be called *Mary*. We also say things like: *He doesn't look at all like a Cecil.* Why do we do this if (a) names have no semantic properties and (b) we expect to be understood?

We seem to faced with a welter of apparently contradictory facts. Yet a satisfying account of proper-name-hood should accommodate them all without strain. Let us consider in more detail how proper names work, and enquire why all languages seem to have them, and what distinctive function they serve. The question can first be considered in the light of the three ways a speaker aids a hearer in selecting the appropriate referent. It will be remembered that three main ways were postulated: describing, naming, and pointing. How does naming help the hearer? The case of naming is not fundamentally different from the case of describing: a speaker gives enough descriptive information to render the referent unique in some relevant domain. Something similar is true of the use of proper names: the speaker uses a proper name when only one referent within the most relevant domain bears it; in other words, the name renders the referent unique within the domain. In a definite description, it is the descriptive information that performs the act of selection. Searle (1969) makes a point of declaring that "bears the name *John*" is not an adequate paraphrase of the meaning of *John*. And in many important ways this is true. However, it is by means of this aspect of its meaning that a proper name refers to or selects its referent. It is clear that in most circumstances, referring by means of a proper name is much more economical than referring by means of description. In most everyday domains, there is only one John: another way of referring, however, would be necessary at a congress of Johns. It is probably an advantage, too, that proper names are, as it were, reusable. Speakers normally have a limited inventory of possible proper names (at least for people). It would be uneconomical to have a different name for everyone one knows.

Searle also stresses the importance of the fact that a proper name must be

associated with a set of properties—with an individual concept of some sort, in our terms. Otherwise it would not be possible to use a proper name consistently, that is, by referring to the same individual on each occasion of use: we must have some way of recognizing that individual. The importance of the associated individual concept, however, goes even beyond that: in the act of expressing a proposition using a proper name in argument position, it is the individual concept that forms the true argument of which something is predicated. Notice, too, that a sentence like *Even John thinks that the story must be true* relies on the association of certain properties with *John*. It is also true, however, that we must not lose sight of the fact that changing an individual concept does not entail a change of name: the concepts associated with proper names are, in a sense, always 'interim', and liable to modification at any time. Again, this is unlike descriptions. Searle puts this forward as another functional virtue that proper names possess: their flexibility. It is useful to have ways of referring that are not tied to particular constant conceptual properties. It enables us to refer successfully to entities about which we know very little. A similar functional virtue attaches to natural-kind terms. It might be proposed that these are particularly adapted to entities whose essences are mysterious. (It is a moot point whether, for instance, STALLION and HORSE are different sorts of concept, or whether they are basically the same sort of concept, but they are attached to the words *stallion* and *horse* in different ways.)

In conclusion, we need to think a little more about the conceptual preferences of certain proper names. Are these of the same order as the reluctance to attribute the ability to sing to a dog, or to apply the term *aunt* to a girl of three, or *bachelor* to a priest? (They clearly do not involve logically necessary properties.) None of these seems to be an appropriate model, because each of them can be accounted for by reference to the concept denoted by the word. The properties of proper names we are referring to persist across all the homonymous manifestations of the terms, and thus cannot be explained by reference to the associated (individual) concepts. Are there any other models that might be more apposite? Possibly. In Chapter 7, section 7.1.2, it was claimed that the difference between, for instance, *horse* and *nag* was not to be attributed to the fact that different concepts were denoted by the two words, but to semantic properties attaching to the words themselves. If such properties are possible for common nouns, why should they not also be possible for proper names? Such a proposal would further undermine the notion that proper names are meaningless, but would not seriously impinge on the more central aspects of proper name use and theorizing. Of course, the same problem would arise here as with common nouns and word-specific properties, namely, the nature of the connection between word and property, bearing in mind that word-specific properties are in the last analysis also conceptual, or at least mediated by the conceptual system.

15.3 Deixis

Deixis means different things to different people. For Bühler (1934), any expression which located a referent in space or time was a deictic expression. Thus, for him, *The cat sat on the mat* contained a deictic locative expression, namely, *on the mat* (the sentence also contains a tense marker, which is usually considered to be deictic). Later scholars have mostly restricted the term deixis to cases where the referent is located using the current speech event or one or more of its participants as reference points. In the sentence *The cat sat on the mat*, the cat is located with respect to the mat: the mat is thus the reference point, and the speech event plays no role. In the sentence *That cat sat on the mat*, however, the cat is located not only with respect to the mat, but also with respect to the speaker, *that* indicating (probably) that the cat was relatively distant from the speaker. A point of disagreement concerns the deictic status of the definite article. Some scholars consider it to be deictic, because the current context of situation is involved in referent identification. Others exclude the definite article, because it does not locate the referent on any specific parameter. We shall, at least at first, include only expressions which truly locate a referent with respect to (some aspect of) the current speech situation. We therefore include personal pronouns, but exclude the definite article. Our key diagnostic criterion for deictic expressions will be the sensitivity of their use in designating a given referent to certain speech-situational parameters, particularly location in space and time relative to the speaker, and participatory status. Thus, someone referring to a book held by another person would say *that book*, but the holder of the book, referring to the same book, would say *this book*; referring to 8 July on 7 July, one would say *tomorrow*, but referring to the same day on 9 July, one would say *yesterday*; a speaker refers to himself as *I*, but his hearer, referring to the same person, would say *you*. We shall initially recognize five main types of deixis: **person deixis**, **spatial deixis**, **temporal deixis**, **social deixis**, and **discourse deixis**.

15.3.1 Person deixis

Person deixis involves basically the speaker, known as the **first person**, the addressee, known as the **second person**, and other significant participants in the speech situation, neither speaker nor hearer; these are known as **third person**. All of these, at least in English, come in singular and plural form and several are marked for case. (See table p. 320.)

In many languages, pronoun usage encodes social deixis (see below). Notice that the third person singular forms also encode gender. It is important to realize that the occurrence of gender in these forms is not deictic, that is to say, it is not sensitive to aspects of the speech situation. In other words, not all the meaning of a **deictic expression** is deictic in nature.

	Singular	Plural
1st person	I/me	we/us
2nd person	you	you
3rd person	he/him, she/her, it	they/them

A couple of remarks are worth making on the subject of plural forms of personal pronouns. First of all, there is a kind of dominance relation holding among the terms: first person dominates second and third, and second person dominates third. This manifests itself in the following way. If the group designated includes the first person, then a first person plural pronoun must be used, even if there is only one first person and thousands of second and/or third persons. Similarly, if there is no first person in the group designated, but at least one second person, then a second person pronoun is needed. Only if neither first person nor second person is present can third person pronouns be used.

The second point concerns the **representative** vs. **true** use of the plural pronouns. The word *we* is rarely spoken by a plurality of persons: there is normally a single speaker. This speaker represents the group to which he or she refers. On the other hand, *they* usually designates a plurality of present referents. Representative use is possible, but is more uncommon (e.g. in pointing to a single person and saying *They are going to Greece for their holidays*). In the second person, the two possibilities, of representative and true use, are more or less equally likely.

15.3.2 Spatial deixis

Spatial deixis manifests itself principally in the form of locative adverbs such as *here* and *there*, and demonstratives/determiners such as *this* and *that*. English has a relatively impoverished spatial deictic system, with only two terms, usually labelled **proximal** and **distal**. Many languages have three or more terms. The most common types of three-term system subdivide the distal category. There are two main ways of doing this. The first involves a **distal/remote** distinction. (English at one time had such a system, with three terms *here*, *there*, and *yonder*.) Spanish has such a system. The other type of three-term system does not strictly depend on distance, but is closely related to the person system, that is to say, the terms can be glossed "near to me" (= *here*), "near to you", and "not near to either you or me" (= third person). Older analyses of Turkish proposed this analysis. It is nowadays not considered correct, however. One suggestion as to the true nature of the Turkish spatial deictics is that within the distal category there is a **gestural/symbolic** distinction (see below). Deictic systems with more than three terms incorporate such notions as 'visible'/'invisible', 'below the line of sight'/'above the line of sight', and so on.

Let us return now to English (although many of the observations will be more generally valid). The proximal term *here* means something like "region relatively close to the speaker", and *there* means "relatively distant from the speaker". It is important to realize, however, that 'relative closeness' is contextually determined. *Here* may represent an area less than the square metre on which the speaker is standing, or it could be something much vaster, such as *Here in our local galaxy cluster*. This is another species of definiteness: *here* is meaningless unless the hearer can locate the dividing line (in terms of distance) between *here* and *there*. (Paradoxically, there is no limit to how far away *here* can extend.)

The spatial deictics show a similar sort of dominance relation to the personal pronouns. We can illustrate this with *this* and *that*. The point is that the combination of *this book* and *that book* must be collectively referred to as *these books*, not *those books*. This encourages us to think of *this* as a **first person deictic**. (There is a small amount of evidence that *that* is ambiguous between second person and third person, in that *those* prefers to be either one or the other. I can refer to (i) *those books that you have* and (ii) *those books that John has*. If I subsequently say *Those books are very valuable*, there is a strong preference for interpreting this as either (i) or (ii), but not both together, unless you and John can be united in a joint second-person reference.)

15.3.3 Temporal deixis

Temporal deictics function to locate points or intervals on the time axis, using (ultimately) the moment of utterance as a reference point. There are thus three major divisions of the time axis: (i) before the moment of utterance, (ii) at the time of utterance, (iii) after the time of utterance. The most basic temporal deictics in English are *now* and *then*. *Now* is in some ways a kind of temporal *here*, and displays the same capacity for indefinite extension. That is, it can refer to a precise instant: *Press the button—NOW!*; or it can accommodate a wide swathe of time: *The solar system is now in a relatively stable phase* (notice, however, that the phenomenon of dominance is absent from temporal deictics, as is the association with first person). *Then* points away from the present, but is indifferent as to direction, which is normally indicated contextually (*We were happy then*; *OK, I'll see you then*).

Temporal deictics depend heavily on calendric notions, if we understand that term to subsume both clock and calendar. For instance, *today*, *yesterday*, and *tomorrow*, designate, respectively, "the period of 24 hours beginning at 12 o'clock midnight which includes the time of utterance", "the period of 24 hours which precedes the one including the time of utterance" and "the period of 24 hours which follows the one including the time of utterance". Notice that these terms' meanings include both deictic information (past, present, or future) and non-deictic information ("period of 24 hours beginning . . .", etc.). Only the 24-hour period has lexicalized deictics. For parallel references to

other periods, we must use the terms *this*, *last*, and *next*. With these, there are complications (and uncertainties) according to whether the time period is referred to by means of a proper name or not. Consider, first, cases where a proper name is not used. Expressions such as *this week*, *last week*, and *next week*, *this month*, *last month*, and *next month*, *this year*, *last year*, and *next year* are all interpreted calendrically, that is to say, to take the example of *week*, *last week* means "the period of seven days beginning on Sunday (or Monday) preceding the corresponding period which includes the time of utterance" (a non-calendric interpretation would be "the period of seven days preceding the time of utterance"). Notice that *Mary is here for a week/month/year* is not normally interpreted calendrically; *Mary is here for the next week/month/year*, according to my intuitions, can be either calendric or not.

If the proper name of a period of time is used, additional restrictions come into play. Take the names of days, first. The lexical items *today*, *yesterday*, and *tomorrow* have priority, so that, for instance *this Wednesday* cannot be uttered on Tuesday, Wednesday, or Thursday. *Last Wednesday* cannot be uttered on Thursday to refer to the previous day, but may be used to refer to the Wednesday of the preceding week. Speakers disagree as to whether a reference to, say, Monday, said on the Wednesday of the same week, should be *this Monday* or *last Monday*; a parallel disagreement applies to a reference, said on the same day, to the following Saturday—some would say *this Saturday*, others *next Saturday*. In referring to months, *this July* means "the July falling within the calendric year which includes the time of utterance", with the exception that one does not normally say (with exceptions to be noted in a moment) *this July* if one is speaking in July. With months, there is a similar uncertainty concerning the meanings of *last* and *next* as with named days.

It is of course possible, and quite normal, to say, for instance, *This July is the hottest I have ever known*, when one is still within the period designated by *this July*. However, it is important to realize that the *this* in this usage is not a temporal *this*, that is to say, it does not belong to the contrast set which includes *last* and *next*. In fact, it is an extended use of the spatial *this*, and contrasts with *That July was the hottest I have ever known*. It is therefore not a specifically temporal deictic.

It has already been mentioned that verb tense represents a type of deixis. This will not be dealt with here; it is discussed in Chapter 14.

15.3.4 Social deixis

Social deixis is exemplified by certain uses of the so-called TV (*tu/vous*) pronouns in many languages. It will be illustrated here using examples from French. Arguments will be presented that not all the usages of TV pronouns fall properly under the heading of deixis. One which incontrovertibly does is where relative social status of speaker and hearer is signalled. There are three basic possibilities involving two communicants A and B: (i) A addresses B

with *tu*, B addresses A with *vous*; (ii) A addresses B with *vous*, B addresses A with *tu*; (iii) A and B both use the same form (either *tu* or *vous*). The basic parameter here is social status: *tu* points downwards along the scale of social status with the speaker's position as reference point, *vous* points upwards, while symmetrical use signals social equality.

Turning now to instances of symmetrical usage of TV pronouns, let us enquire briefly into the factors which determine whether *tu* or *vous* is used, and whether such usage can properly be regarded as deixis. One factor is usually described by some such term as 'social distance': *tu* indicates intimacy, *vous* indicates lack of intimacy, or distance. It is tempting to draw a parallel here with the proximal and distal terms in spatial deixis, and say that *tu* is proximal and *vous* distal. I shall suggest two reasons why such a parallel should not be drawn. The first is that there is no validity in an argument from reverse metaphor. That is, just because the [+intimate/–intimate] distinction would make a satisfying metaphorical extension from the [proximal/distal] distinction of spatial deixis, it does not follow that that is what it is, especially if the forms used give no support to the derivation. In the present case, there is no spatial content in literal uses of *tu* and *vous* to support such a derivation. The second reason is that the dominance relations between [+intimate] and [–intimate] are the wrong way round. Recall that *here* dominates *there*: in the case of TV pronouns used to signal intimacy (or lack of it), V dominates T. It is hard to demonstrate this in French, because there is no distinct intimate plural form, as there is in, for instance, German. But it can be shown. Imagine a group of people appointing one of their number as a spokesperson to address some individual. Suppose that the person chosen would naturally say *tu* to the person being addressed. Suppose further that the group contains individuals who would naturally say *vous* to the person being addressed. What form does the spokesperson choose? French native intuitions unhesitatingly opt for *vous*.

As a clue to another factor affecting the choice between T and V consider the following situation. A husband and wife jointly front a news programme on TV. When they are on the air, they address one another as *vous*; off-camera, of course, they use *tu*. Clearly neither relative social status nor intimacy can explain this. The deciding factor seems to be the formality or informality of the situation. It is at least arguable that this cannot be laid at the door of deixis at all.

15.3.5 Discourse deixis

Discourse deixis refers to such matters as the use of *this* to point to future discourse elements, that is, things which are about to be said, as in *Listen to this, it will kill you!*, and *that* to point to past discourse elements, as in *That was not a very nice thing to say*. In a similar spirit, the *hereby* of an explicit performative sentence could be said to point to current discourse: *Notice is hereby served that if payment is further delayed, appropriate legal action will be taken.*

It is sometimes claimed that certain sentence adverbs, such as *therefore* and *furthermore*, include an element of discourse deixis in their meaning, as they require the recovery of a piece of previous discourse to be understood. *Therefore* and *furthermore* could be glossed: "It follows from that" and "In addition to that", respectively, (where *that* is a discourse deictic). A distinction can be made between discourse deixis and anaphora, although the two are obviously related. Anaphora picks up a previous reference to an extralinguistic entity and repeats it. In *John entered the room. He looked tired, he* refers to the same person that *John* refers to, but it does not strictly refer to the word *John* itself. It must be admitted that in reference to a case like *therefore* the distinction between discourse deixis and anaphora becomes somewhat blurred.

15.3.6 Psychological use of spatial deixis

It may be presumed that spatial deixis is the prototypical variety, and is certainly the source for much metaphoric generalization. A relatively simple extension is into what Langacker calls 'abstract space'. This is exemplified by such usages as: *Here the argument runs into difficulties, What do you think of this idea of mine/that idea of George's?* Ideas and arguments do not literally occupy space, but it is easy to think of them as if they did. This use of deixis sometimes seems to invalidate the generalization just given above regarding discourse deixis, namely, that *this* points forwards in discourse: *2 + 2 = 4. The truth of this proposition is guaranteed by mathematical logic.* We would have to say, here, that *this* is not discourse deictic (otherwise we would be obliged to use *that*), but means something like "the proposition we have in the forefront of our minds".

Another extended use of spatial deixis is to signal emotive distancing or closeness:

(49) A: Here comes Jane.
B: I can't stand that woman.

(50) This beautiful city of ours.

15.3.7 Gestural and symbolic deixis

Some uses of deictics require for their interpretation continuous monitoring of relevant aspects of the speech situation: in the clearest cases, the hearer has to be able to see the speaker and their gestures:

(51) Put one over there and the other one here.
(52) This is the finger that hurts, not that one.
(53) Press the button when I give the word —***now***!
(54) I want three volunteers: you, you, and you.

These are examples of **gestural deixis**. In other cases, such minute monitoring

of the speech situation is not necessary, and in general, the relevant parameters for the deictic interpretation are established over relatively long periods of a conversation/discourse. This is called **symbolic** deixis:

(55) (people at an exhibition) Isn't it interesting!
(56) Isn't this weather gorgeous?
(57) I've lived in this town for twenty years.
(58) Those foreigners are always whinging.

In general, the difference between these would seem to be a matter of degree. However, there is one significant consequence of the distinction, and that is that it is only in the case of gestural use that the place denoted by *here* need not include the location of the speaker (e.g. *Will you please sign here, sir?*).

15.3.8 Deictic vs. non-deictic uses of locative expressions

It is sometimes claimed that certain locative expressions can be used either deictically or non-deictically. An example is the following:

(59) Mary lives in the house opposite the church.
(60) Mary lives in the house opposite.

The claim is that *opposite* is used non-deictically in (59), but deictically in (60) where it is interpreted as "the house opposite the speaker". However, this claim is at least disputable. An alternative explanation is that in (60), *opposite* has a definite zero complement (like the latent direct object in *Mary's watching*). The definite zero complement must be inferred contextually, that is, if it is not made explicit, one must always enquire *opposite what?* In some situations, the most relevant complement will be the speaker, as in (60), but this is not necessarily the case:

(61) Go along this road until you come to a church. Mary lives in the house opposite.

In (61), the most relevant complement is *the church*. In other words, there is no need to invoke deixis in such cases; they are explained by general principles of definiteness. A slightly more complex example involves expressions like *in front of*. Many objects have a 'canonical' front and back: persons, buildings, vehicles, and so on. Other objects do not have a canonical front and back: a tree, a dustbin, a lamppost. If an object X does not have a canonical front and back, the expression *in front of X* is claimed to mean generally "situated somewhere on an imaginary line between X and speaker". If an object has a canonical front and back, then *in front of X* is ambiguous, and means either "at or near the canonical front of X" or "situated somewhere on an imaginary line between X and speaker". The former reading is claimed to be non-deictic, and the latter reading deictic. However, the same type of objection can be made as with the so-called deictic reading of *opposite*. That is to say, the

so-called deictic reading of *in front of X* does not necessarily mean "situated somewhere on an imaginary line between X and speaker", but "situated somewhere on an imaginary line between X and some definite reference point to be inferred from context". Examples where the speaker is not the reference point include the following:

(62) Follow my instructions carefully. Walk slowly towards the tree. You will find the box about one metre in front of the tree.

(63) Tell John to follow the instructions carefully. He must walk slowly towards the tree. He will find the box one metre in front of the tree.

Again, no recourse to a special notion of deixis is called for, simply the principles governing definite reference. It is interesting to speculate whether all deixis can be explained away in this fashion. (For example, we might gloss the meaning of *I* as simply "the speaker", leaving the principles of relevance to select the utterer of *I* as overwhelmingly the most relevant in the vast majority of circumstances.)

Discussion questions and exercises

1. Identify instances of implicit definite reference points, latent elements, etc. in the following:

   (i) I would recommend the other route.
   (ii) Mary will ring up and see if there's still time.
   (iii) Turn left at the next traffic lights.
   (iv) That's rather a lot, isn't it?
   (v) The last sit-in was much better.

2. Point out all the instances of deixis in the following, indicating what type is involved:

   (i) I understood that there would be an opportunity to meet her there later that week, and that I would be responsible for bringing the documents. At least, that's what John said.
   (ii) Come out from behind there at once, Smith!
   (iii) I met this chap at the concert, and we got talking. He said that this Xmas had been the worst he had ever spent. I'm meeting him again tomorrow.

3. Decide which of the following sentences have normal interpretations, and which have none. For those that have, specify any necessary conditions (e.g. the relative location of participants). On the basis of these data, give a concise specification of the deictic properties of **bring** and **take**.

(i) Take it here.
(ii) Bring it there.
(iii) I will bring it to you.
(iv) I will take it to you.
(v) I will bring it to John.
(vi) I will take it to John.
(vii) You will take it to me.
(viii) You will bring it to me.
(ix) You will bring it to John.
(x) You will take it to John.
(xi) John will bring it to you.
(xii) John will take it to you.
(xiii) John will bring it to Mary.
(xiv) John will take it to Mary.
(xv) John told me he would bring it to you.
(xvi) John told me he would take it to you.
(xvii) Did John tell you he would bring it to me?
(xviii) Did John tell you he would take it to me?
(xix) John told me he would bring it to Mary.
(xx) John told me he would take it to Mary.

4. Comment on the use of the **bold** items in the following:

(i) The visitors will arrive at Edinburgh Waverley Station at 3.00 p.m. **Here** they will be met by our representative. (Assume the message originated in London.)
(ii) Jackson rubbed his hands with satisfaction: he was **now** in possession of all the facts.
(iii) I have been informed about your insubordination this morning. **This** is the third such incident this week.
(iv) What's all **this** about you leaving next week?

Suggestions for further reading

For illuminating discussions of reference and its varieties, and definite reference in particular, see Searle (1969), Givón (1984), Chesterman (1991).

Further reading on deixis could usefully begin with Chapter 2 of Levinson (1983). See also Anderson and Keenan (1985).

CHAPTER 16

Speech acts

16.1 Locutionary, perlocutionary, and illocutionary acts 331

16.2 Illocutionary acts 333

16.3 Classifying speech acts 342

16.4 Conditions for the successful performance of speech acts 343

Discussion questions and exercises 345

Suggestions for further reading 345

CHAPTER 16

Speech acts

16.1 Locutionary, perlocutionary, and illocutionary acts

Communication is not just a matter of expressing propositions. A 'naked' proposition, as we saw in Chapter 1, cannot communicate anything at all. To communicate we must express propositions with a particular **illocutionary force**, and in so doing we perform particular kinds of action such as stating, promising, warning, and so on, which have come to be called **speech acts**. It is, however, important to distinguish between three sorts of things that one is doing in the course of producing an utterance. These are usually distinguished by the terms **locutionary acts**, **perlocutionary acts**, and **illocutionary acts**.

16.1.1 Locutionary acts

Locutionary acts were explained by Austin (1962) as follows:

> The utterance of certain noises . . . certain words in a certain construction, and the utterance of them with a certain sense and a certain reference.

Notice that this conflates a number of distinguishable 'acts'; Lyons sets these out as follows:

(a) produce an utterance inscription;
(b) compose a sentence;
(c) contextualize.

The first of these refers to the physical act of speaking, that is, producing a certain type of noise (or, in the case of written language, a set of written symbols). In principle, a parrot could do this. The second refers to the act of composing a string of words conforming to the grammar of some language (more or less well). (Searle (1969) groups these two together as performing an **utterance act**.) The third itself has two components. First, many sentences contain either lexical or grammatical ambiguities. Normally only one of the possible readings is 'intended': the speaker's intention in this regard forms part of the specification of the locutionary act being performed. The second

component is that any definite referring expressions in an uttered sentence normally have extralinguistic referents intended by the speaker. The assignation of these, too, forms part of the locutionary act. It can be seen, therefore, that if the sentence uttered is declarative in form, then performing a locutionary act includes the expression of one or more propositions. (Searle refers to **propositional acts**.) As far as is at present known, parrots cannot perform (b) or (c).

16.1.2 Perlocutionary acts

Perlocutionary acts are acts performed by means of language, using language as a tool. The elements which define the act are external to the locutionary act. Take the act of persuading someone to do something, or getting them to believe that something is the case. In order to persuade someone to do something, one normally must speak to them. But the speaking, even accompanied by appropriate intentions and so on, does not of itself constitute the act of persuasion. For that, the person being persuaded has to do what the speaker is urging. The same is true of the act of cheering someone up: this may well be accomplished through language, in which case it is a perlocutionary act, but even then the act does not consist in saying certain things in a certain way, but in having a certain effect, which in principle could have been produced in some other way.

16.1.3 Illocutionary acts

Illocutionary acts are acts which are internal to the locutionary act, in the sense that, if the contextual conditions are appropriate (see below), once the locutionary act has been performed, so has the illocutionary act. Take the act of promising. If someone says to another *I promise to buy you a ring* they have, by simply saying these words, performed the act of promising. Notice that it makes sense to say: *I tried to persuade her to come, but I failed*, or: *I tried to cheer him up, but failed*, but it makes no sense to say: *I tried to promise to come, but I failed*, except in the sense that one failed to utter the words, that is, to perform the locutionary act.

The same illocutionary act can be performed via different locutionary acts: for instance *I saw Jane today* and *I saw your wife today* (on the assumption, of course, that the addressee's wife is called Jane). Furthermore, the same locutionary act can realize different illocutionary acts: for instance, *I'll be there* can function as a promise, prediction, or warning, and so on. It is also the case that a locutionary act can be performed without an illocutionary act thereby being performed (although Searle, for instance, denies this). For instance, in classes in elementary logic, propositions such as *All men are mortal* are often 'entertained' without anything being expressed beyond the bare proposition. The focus of the present chapter is on illocutionary acts.

16.2 Illocutionary acts

16.2.1 Implicit and explicit illocutionary force

The illocutionary act aimed at by producing an utterance is known as the **illocutionary force** of the utterance. There is no communication without illocutionary force. How does a speaker convey, or a hearer understand, the illocutionary force of an utterance? We can first of all distinguish between **explicit** and **implicit** illocutionary force. In the former case, there is a specific linguistic signal whose function is to encode illocutionary force. We can distinguish two types, lexical and grammatical. The lexical type are illustrated by the following:

I promise you I will leave in five minutes.
I warn you I shall leave in five minutes.
I beg you not to leave so soon.
I thank you for staying.

The verbs *promise*, *warn*, *beg*, *thank* are known as **performative verbs**: they function specifically to encode illocutionary force. The grammatical type is illustrated by the following:

You wrote the article.
Did you write the article?
Write the article!

In these cases it is the grammatical form that encodes the illocutionary force.

According to what has just been said, it would appear that illocutionary force is always explicit. In the sense that every utterance encodes some indication of illocutionary force, this is probably true. However, the illocutionary force of an utterance is not always fully specified linguistically: what is not so specified is implicit. There are two main ways in which the effective force of an utterance may deviate from the overtly expressed force. First of all, it may differ in strength. For instance, the difference between a statement and an emphatic assertion is one of strength. A declarative sentence simply encodes the force of a statement: where it functions as an emphatic assertion, the difference may well be implicit, and must be recovered on the basis of context. The second way in which the effective force of an utterance may differ from the overtly expressed force is when it performs a different illocutionary act. For instance, *You will leave immediately* has declarative form, that is, it encodes the force of a statement; but it could well be used to issue a command. In the latter type of case, it is common to speak of **indirect speech acts**.

16.2.2 Explicit performativity

16.2.2.1 Performative verbs

Performative verbs, that is, those verbs one of whose functions is to signal specific speech acts, have certain peculiar properties which set them apart from non-performative verbs. First of all, they can generally be recognized by the fact that they can occur normally with *hereby* (we are talking here about semantic normality, that is, lack of anomaly; the result may well be somewhat stilted):

(1) I hereby undertake to carry out faithfully the duties of Royal Egg-Sexer.
(2) I hereby declare the bridge open.
(3) I hereby command you to surrender.

This use of *hereby* is not possible with non-performative verbs of speaking:

(4) *I hereby persuade you to accompany me.
(5) *I hereby recount the history of my family.
(6) *I hereby tell the truth.

Performative verbs can be used either performatively or descriptively; in the latter use they are no different from non-performative verbs:

(7) John is always promising to do things, but he never does them.
(8) He ordered them to leave the premises.
(9) Who is going to christen the baby?
(10) He went round congratulating everyone.

Notice that in such descriptive uses of performative verbs, *hereby* is ruled out:

(11) *John is always hereby promising to do things.
(12) *He hereby ordered them to leave the premises.

The performative use of performative verbs is extremely restricted grammatically. They must be in the simple present tense. They may be active or passive; if active, then they must also be in the first person. Consider, first, active uses. Notice the following contrasts:

(13) I (hereby) promise to pay you next week.
I (*hereby) promised to pay him the following week.

(14) I hereby declare John Smith the duly elected Member for this constituency.
I have (*hereby) declared John Smith the duly elected Member for this constituency.

(15) I hereby warn you that legal action will be taken.
I am (?hereby) warning you that legal action will be taken.

Similar contrasts are possible with passive uses:

(16) Passengers are (hereby) requested not to smoke.
Passengers were (*hereby) requested not to smoke.

(17) You are (hereby) warned to leave immediately.
They will be (*hereby) warned to leave immediately.
They are at this moment being (*hereby) warned to leave.

Notice that there is no grammatical restriction on descriptive use, that is to say, the use of a performative verb in, say, present simple first person active form is not necessarily a performative use:

(18) A: Are you clear about what you have to do?
B: Yes, I (*hereby) christen the baby Jonathan, then I (*hereby) congratulate the parents and then I (*hereby) confess that I am the baby's father and (*hereby) promise never to reveal the fact.

The same is true of passive uses:

(19) Passengers are (*hereby) regularly requested not to smoke.

Performative verbs are thus ambiguous in certain of their forms, and context is needed to disambiguate them. (Unresolved ambiguities are vanishingly rare.)

Performative verbs used performatively are often held to be non-truth conditional (although there are alternative claims). Some cases seem clear enough. If someone says *I warn you to stay away from her!* it doesn't make much sense to reply *That's not true.* (Notice that in reply to *I warned you to stay away from her*, a reply of *That's not true* would be perfectly normal.) Similarly with *I congratulate you on your promotion.* Other cases are not so clear. For instance, it does seem to make sense to reply *That's not true* to *I confess that I took the money.* However, it still can be claimed that it is not the veracity of the fact that a confession is being made that is being called into question, but the truth of the proposition that forms the content of the confession. This can perhaps be seen more clearly in the following case:

(20) A: I predict that the world will end tomorrow.
B: That's not true.

Here, B might be claimed not to be challenging the fact that A is making a prediction, but is denying the truth of what he is predicting. However, we need to be clearer about what is happening here. Take the case of *I confess. . .* If someone says something, then it is either true or false that they are making a confession. Therefore it does not make sense to say that *I confess. . .* cannot be assessed for truth value. However, confession consists in saying certain words (although ***sincere*** confession obviously demands more), so the truth of the proposition that A is confessing is a necessary consequence of A's uttering appropriate words, among which are the words *I confess. . .* In other words, the

reason we cannot say *That's not true* to someone who says *I confess. . .*, is that it is necessarily true, like *Bachelors are unmarried.*

Something more needs to be said, however, about why it is acceptable to say *That's not true* in response to *I predict the world will end tomorrow*, but not in response to *I congratulate you on your promotion*, or *I warn you to leave immediately*. Actually, two reasons are involved here. First of all, one can only deny the truth of an expressed proposition; if the utterance in question does not actually express a proposition (other than the necessarily true performative part) then one cannot deny its truth. This is the case with *I warn you to leave*. If the utterance does express a proposition whose truth is contingent rather than necessary, the normality of saying *That's not true* depends on the relative salience of the performative part of the meaning and the propositional part. For instance, in the case of *I warn you the roads are slippery*, the important part of the meaning (for most hearers) is that the roads are slippery, not that the speaker is delivering a warning. On the other hand, in *I bet you £500 that I can get Mary to go to bed with me*, the nature of the performative act is crucial. It is therefore a matter of salience, and graded normality. Of course, it must also be borne in mind that there is a difference between saying *I warn you the roads are slippery* and *The roads are slippery* (even when uttered with the intention of warning the hearer): in the former case the speaker is constraining the hearer's interpretation, by making the intentions more explicit.

16.2.2.2 Grammatical performativity

Most languages have grammatical ways of indicating the illocutionary force of an utterance (this is not intended to be an exhaustive list):

(21) John is brave.
(22) Is John brave?
(23) Be brave, John!
(24) What bravery!

These grammatical forms perform the same sort of function that performative verbs do. Thus, the first three sentences above have an obvious relation to the following:

(25) I (hereby) state that John is brave.
(26) I (hereby) enquire whether John is brave.
(27) I (hereby) urge John to be brave.

(Interestingly, the fourth has no performative verb equivalent: *??I hereby exclaim. . .* This point will be further elaborated below.)

However, the range of choice of forms is much more limited than is the case with performative verbs, and hence the meanings are much less specific. It is therefore not possible, in general, to paraphrase the grammatical forms precisely in terms of explicit performative verbs. Let us examine more closely the four types illustrated.

Declaratives

Sentence (21) is in declarative form. Now, obviously, a sentence in declarative form can have a wide range of illocutionary force. Something like *He's leaving* can function to inform someone of the fact, to ask whether it is true (normally with appropriate intonation), as a promise, or a threat, or a command, or even a congratulation. Because of this wide range, doubts have been expressed as to whether declarative form encodes any sort of speech act at all (in fact the doubts in some quarters extend to interrogatives and imperatives). Austin's original treatment drew a distinction between what he called **performative sentences** and **constatives**, and declaratives fell into the latter category. Later he decided that declaratives, too, were performatives, and that there was no difference in principle between *John is brave* and *I (hereby) state that John is brave*, except that in the latter case the performative verb was explicit. It is also worth remembering that declarative sentence form has often been regarded as in some sense the 'basic' sentence form (as in early versions of transformational grammar), and it is easy to go from this to regarding it as a 'neutral' form, from which all others are 'derived'. It is therefore not surprising that it has a wide range of applicability. This notion of basicness has a parallel in lexical meanings. Compare the colour name *red* with, say, *orange*. *Red* has a wide range of 'extended' uses, as in *red hair*, *red earth*, *red wine*, many of which are not objectively red at all. *Orange*, on the other hand, cannot be used so freely: something described as *orange* must have a colour much closer to the prototype. However, *red* also has a clear prototype. This phenomenon is quite widespread. Take *circle* and *pentagon*. If someone says: *The mourners stood in a circle around the grave*, the circle may be very approximate indeed. But if someone says: *The mourners stood in a pentagon round the grave*, the disposition of the mourners is much more constrained. It is in this sense, perhaps, that the declarative sentence form can be viewed as basic. Being 'basic', it can be extended in ways that other forms cannot. But it none the less has a much more restricted, non-extended range of interpretations. And in its prototypical manifestations, it commits the speaker to the truth of the expressed proposition, and thus belongs to the same family of illocutionary meanings as *assert*, *state*, *declare*, *claim*, etc. The various performative verbs mentioned can be regarded as specifications of the meaning of the straight declarative prototype. (The use of a performative verb also has the effect of highlighting the performative aspect of the sentence: with all grammatical performatives, the performative meaning is relatively backgrounded, but this is especially the case with declaratives.) It would be a mistake, however, to believe that every declarative, to be understood, must be 'translated' into a sentence containing one of the overt performatives. (This is no more true than a claim that, for instance, *It's red* cannot be understood unless the precise named shade of red, e.g. *scarlet*, *crimson*, *maroon*, *brick red*, can be recovered.) An alternative view is that the declarative form does nothing but express the proposition, and that any performative force arises in the form of implicatures. This approach, how-

ever, ignores the fact of the prototypical nature of what might be called assertiveness.

Interrogatives

All interrogatives, at least in their prototypical uses, express ignorance on some point, and aim at eliciting a response from a hearer which will remove the ignorance. There are two sorts of question. The first sort effectively specify a proposition and express ignorance as to its truth: these are the so-called ***Yes/ No* questions**, because they can be so answered. So, for instance, *Is John brave?* presents the proposition *John is brave* and aims at eliciting a response which indicates whether that proposition is true or not. The other sort present an incomplete proposition, and aim at eliciting a response which completes the skeleton proposition in such a way that the resulting proposition is true. So, for instance, the question *What time is it?* presents the skeleton proposition *The time is X*, and aims at eliciting a response that provides a value for *X* which makes the complete proposition true. Interrogatives (of both types), too, have a wide range of non-prototypical uses, but in their prototypical uses, they fall into the same sort of semantic area as performative verbs such as *ask*, *enquire*, *demand to know*, and so on. But again, they are not, in every instance of use, reducible to one of the overt performatives.

Interrogatives are sometimes held to be a type of imperative. Thus, the meaning of *Is John brave?* might be paraphrased "Say *Yes* if the proposition JOHN IS BRAVE is true and *No* if it is false". Likewise, the meaning of *What is the time?* can be paraphrased "Give me a value for X such that the proposition THE TIME IS X is true". These paraphrases are obviously imperative in nature, and equally clearly, capture directly at least some of the meaning of the corresponding interrogatives. This analysis gives a good account of examination questions. These have the function of instructing candidates to produce a quantity of linguistic output under certain semantic (and secondarily syntactic, etc.) constraints. Notice the absolute equivalence between *What are the reasons for. . .?* and *State the reasons for. . .* in an exam context. Notice also that a form such as *State the reasons for. . .* will still be regarded as an examination QUESTION. Another interesting observation is the parallelism between *Open the door, please* and *What is the time, please?*

However, the imperative analysis deals less successfully with cases like *Now where did I leave my wallet?*, said when one is alone. It might be argued that the speaker in such a case is addressing the question to an imaginary hearer, and ordering him to give an answer. But this does not seem intuitively correct: such questions are not usually accompanied by such images. Lyons (1977) suggests that in such cases one is not **asking** a question, but merely **posing** it, and that posing a question is expressing doubt or ignorance. Lyons also points to the fact that if someone says *No!* in answer to a command, one is refusing to carry out the desired action, but if one says *No* in answer to *Is John here?*, one is not refusing to answer the question, but is actually answering the question.

It is necessary to make a distinction between saying that questions are a type of imperative, and saying that questions have an imperative-type component to their meaning. There is also a distinction between saying this and saying that questions prototypically have an imperative-like component. (The latter is what will be claimed here.) Notice that the strong imperative analysis omits any mention of an expression of ignorance. Such analyses rely on this being supplied inferentially in the contexts in which it occurs; likewise with the expression of a desire for the ignorance to be removed.

An alternative analysis on the lines of the imperative analysis is to say that what a question ***really*** means is an expression of ignorance, leaving the imperative component to be supplied inferentially in the contexts which call for it. This analysis handles the *Where did I put my wallet?* case, but deals less well with the examination case.

It is argued here that none of these reductive analyses account satisfactorily for the overwhelmingly strong intuition that the ***real*** meaning of a question, its prototype, includes at least the imperative component, the desire for the removal of ignorance, and the expression of ignorance. With this complex as central, it is easy to see other, non-prototypical readings clustering round it, forming a family resemblance structure with varying degrees of resemblance.

Imperatives

Imperatives resemble declaratives and interrogatives in that there is a prototypical use, whose main component is to get someone to do something, as with *Shut that door!*, and a cluster of non-prototypical uses, such as *Take another step, and I'll shoot*, which manifestly does not aim at eliciting the action represented by the verb in the imperative, but rather the opposite. The negative force of this use of the imperative shows up in the (relative) normality of:

(28) Take another step and I'll shoot. And don't move your hand, either.

Once again, the prototypical meaning of the grammatical imperative lies in the same area as that of a set of explicit performatives, such as *order*, *command*, *enjoin*, *beg*, *beseech*, *request*, and so on, but as usual, is not synonymous with any of them.

Some analyses of imperatives (for instance, Palmer (1986: 29–30)) argue that the strong directive force observable in, say, a military command, is not a property of the imperative as such, but arises from the recognized authority of the speaker. Palmer points to the fact that 'Come in!' in response to a knock on the door is not strongly directive, but is in fact a granting of permission. He suggests that the basic meaning of the imperative is the expression of a generally favourable attitude to the action indicated (if a higher-ranking military person expresses a favourable attitude to some action, a lower-ranking addressee will infer that he or she had jolly well better do it!). However, this is not entirely convincing. If someone says, 'Peel those potatoes!' the directive force is not at all dependent on the authority of the speaker (although the

felicity of the command is). The directive force is, however, dependent on whether the action is more likely to benefit the speaker or the hearer (see the discussion of the 'cost-benefit' scale in the next chapter). It is arguable that the prototypical use of the imperative is to elicit actions which are beneficial to the speaker: cases like 'Come in!' in answer to a knock on the door, or 'Have a nice holiday!', on this view would not be prototypical uses.

With the three grammatical performatives we have looked at so far, the following characteristics are observable:

(i) They all have a range of uses which goes well beyond that of any explicit performative.
(ii) Their meanings are not identical with that of any explicit performative.
(iii) Their prototypical meanings are at the same time superordinate to, and more 'basic' than, the meanings of related performative verbs.

Exclamations

Curiously, exclamations cannot be performed by any performative verbs, although there are verbs with meanings describing such actions:

(29) What a lovely day it is!
*I hereby exclaim what a lovely day it is.
(I exclaimed what a lovely day it was.)

It seems that one does not exclaim by saying the word *exclaim*: one exclaims by calling something out in a loud voice:

(30) ?'How boring it all is', exclaimed John in a barely perceptible whisper.

The word *exclaim* therefore does not encode an illocutionary act. It is too loaded with manner meaning, like *whisper*:

(31) ?I hereby whisper that you mustn't do that in the presence of the Queen.

What, then, is one doing with the exclamative form? Is it a speech act? Notice that it is truth conditional:

(32) A: What a lovely day it is!
B: Is it hell!

But it is not the primary purpose of an exclamation to inform:

(33) A: Tell me about your day.
B: *What a lovely day I've had.

The encapsulated information seems to be presupposed (although one can enter the house after a day at the beach, and say *What a lovely day I've had* as a way of informing the occupants of the fact that one has had a lovely day. However, this can usually be done with presuppositions). All that is expressed is a psychological attitude to the fact. Intuitively, it is not performativizable, but it is still a mystery why not.

16.2.3 The 'performative hypothesis'

There are certain types of utterance whose properties seem to suggest that even implicit performatives have a 'hidden' or underlying explicit performative verb. This is the essence of the **performative hypothesis**, according to which every implicit performative has a 'deep' structure something like:

I (hereby) V_p you (that) S

where V_p is a performative verb, and **I (hereby) V_p you (that)** is optionally deletable without change of meaning. The claimed advantages of this proposal are that certain otherwise puzzling phenomena receive a natural explanation.

16.2.3.1 Reflexives:

(34) The letter was addressed to John and myself.
(35) People like yourself should be given every assistance.
(36) ?The letter was addressed to herself.

On the face of it, there is no antecedent for the reflexive pronoun in (34) and (35) (notice the ungrammaticality of (36)), but if there is an underlying performative verb with a first person subject and second person indirect object, then the mystery is explained.

16.2.3.2 Adverbs

(37) Frankly, I couldn't care less.
(38) What's the time, because I don't want to miss my train?

At first sight, it is not clear what *frankly* in (37) and the *because*-clause in (38) modify; however, the natural interpretation of these suggests that it is the performative verb in each case: "I tell you frankly that I couldn't care less"; "I ask you what the time is, because I don't want to miss my train".

Attractive though it might seem, this analysis runs into serious difficulties, and is now out of favour. Two of the problems may be mentioned. Consider sentences (39) and (40):

(39) I hereby state that I am innocent.
(40) I am innocent.

By the performative hypothesis, these should mean the same and therefore should have identical truth conditions. But even if we admit that (39) has a truth condition (which is denied by many) it is true irrespective of whether the speaker is innocent or not; this cannot be the case with (40).

More problems occur with adverbs. For instance, there seems no reason, under the performative hypothesis, why *hereby* is not allowed with implicit performatives:

(41) *Hereby what is the time?/*Hereby it is three o'clock.

(42) I hereby ask you what the time is.

Also the interpretation of many adverbs seems to require the (underlying) presence of verbs not proposed in the performative hypothesis:

(43) Honestly, who do you think will win?

This does not mean "I ask you honestly. . .", but "Tell me honestly. . .".

16.3 Classifying speech acts

Performative verbs fall fairly naturally under a small number of headings. It is useful to group them in this way, as it enables us to gain a picture of the range of functions that these verbs perform. The classification we shall illustrate below is due to Searle. It is not a perfect taxonomy, as it is in many cases possible to place verbs under more than one heading, that is to say, the categories are not mutually exclusive. But it enables us to take a synoptic view.

16.3.1 Assertives

Assertives commit the speaker to the truth of the expressed proposition:

state, suggest, boast, complain, claim, report, warn (that)

Notice that *boast* and *complain* also express an attitude to the proposition expressed other than a belief in its truth.

16.3.2 Directives

Directives have the intention of eliciting some sort of action on the part of the hearer:

order, command, request, beg, beseech, advise (to), warn (to), recommend, ask, ask (to)

16.3.3 Commissives

Commissives commit the speaker to some future action:

promise, vow, offer, undertake, contract, threaten

16.3.4 Expressives

Expressives make known the speaker's psychological attitude to a presupposed state of affairs:

thank, congratulate, condole, praise, blame, forgive, pardon

What seems to distinguish these from *boast* and *complain* is that the attitude

expressed by the latter is primarily an attitude towards the state of affairs (or the proposition). In the case of Searle's expressives, the attitude is more towards the persons involved. These do form an intuitively satisfying set, and *boast* and *complain* intuitively do not belong here.

16.3.5 Declaratives

Declaratives are said to bring about a change in reality: that is to say, the world is in some way no longer the same after they have been said. Now in an obvious sense this is true of all the performative verbs: after someone has congratulated someone, for instance, a new world comes into being in which that congratulation has taken place. What is special about declaratives? The point about these is, first, that they cause a change in the world over and above the fact that they have been carried out. This, however, is again true of all the other verbs, but notice that in the case, say, of *congratulate*, such effects would be perlocutionary, whereas in the case of declaratives they are illocutionary. The second point is that they standardly encode such changes. So, if someone says *I resign*, then thereafter they no longer hold the post they originally held, with all that that entails.

resign, dismiss, divorce (in Islam), *christen, name, open* (e.g. an exhibition), *excommunicate, sentence* (in court), *consecrate, bid* (at auction), *declare* (at cricket)

There is a finite number of explicit performative verbs in English (several hundred), but there is no reason to believe that there is a theoretically finite set of possible speech acts.

16.4 Conditions for the successful performance of speech acts

There are normally contextual conditions which must be fulfilled before a speech act can be said to have been properly performed. These are usually called **happiness conditions** or **felicity conditions**. Some of these are of course conditions on any sort of linguistic communication, such as the fact that speaker and hearer understand one another (usually speak the same language), can hear one another, and so on. The following conditions are more germane to the present chapter and are worth spelling out (after Searle).

16.4.1 Preparatory conditions

Preparatory conditions do not define the speech act, but are necessary in the sense that if they do not hold, the act has not been carried out (it is said to have **misfired**). In the case of declarative speech acts, the person performing the act must have authority to do it, and must do it in appropriate circum-

stances and with appropriate actions. For instance, it is not enough for someone to break a bottle of champagne on the bows of a ship, and say *I name this ship **Venus***, for the ship either to acquire an official name, or to change its name. A proper ceremony must be enacted, with officially recognized participants. The same is true of christening a baby. Even in the case of resigning from a job or position, just saying the words *I resign*, at breakfast, say, does not constitute a resignation: there are proper ways of resigning and channels for communicating such a decision. In the case of a promise, the hearer must prefer the promised action's accomplishment to its non-accomplishment, and the speaker must have reason to believe that the eventuality promised will not happen in the normal course of events. For a command, the speaker must be in authority over the hearer, must believe that the desired action has not already been carried out, and that it is possible for the hearer to carry it out. And so on.

16.4.2 Sincerity conditions

For sincerity conditions to be fulfilled, the person performing the act must have appropriate beliefs or feelings. For instance, in performing an act of asserting, the speaker must believe the proposition they are expressing; when thanking someone, one ought to have feelings of gratitude; when making a promise, one should sincerely intend to carry it out, and so on.

If the sincerity conditions are not met, the act is actually performed, but there is said to be an **abuse**.

16.4.3 Essential conditions

Essential conditions basically define the act being carried out. Thus, for a promise, the speaker must intend his utterance to put him under an obligation to carry out the act which corresponds to its propositional content. For a request, the speaker must intend that the utterance count as an attempt to get the hearer to do what is requested; for a statement, the hearer must intend that the utterance count as a guarantee of the truth of the statement; for a question, the hearer must intend that the utterance count as an attempt to elicit the appropriate answer from the hearer, and so on. If the essential conditions are not met, the act has not really been carried out.

16.4.4 Other conditions

Prototypically, the hearer should recognize the speaker's intention to perform the illocutionary act in question in uttering the words in question. This is called **uptake**. Uptake must be distinguished from acceptance: the fact that one refuses to accept, say, an apology or a resignation does not mean that the speaker's intention has not been recognized. Generally, uptake does not seem to be a necessary condition for speech acts, but there are doubtful cases. Take

the case of boasting. Does someone boast if nobody who hears the utterance thinks it's a boast? There are indications that it is still a boast. First, it is anomalous to say: *?John tried to boast, but everyone thought he was just stating the facts.* Second, one can hear a statement and subsequently find out that someone was boasting: *He told me he had just lost £10,000—I didn't realize at the time that he was boasting.*

Ideally, the speaker's actions subsequent to the utterance should be consistent with the purport of the speech act carried out. Thus, someone who makes a promise should carry out the promised action; someone who orders someone else to do something should not be angry if they subsequently do it; after asking a question, one should give time for an answer to be given; someone who names a ship should not thereafter refer to it by a different name, etc. These inappropriate actions do not destroy the validity of the speech act, but they none the less indicate that something is amiss. They may be termed **breaches of commitment**.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. Which of the following verbs are performatives?

bet (consider both meanings)
pray (in the religious sense)
admire
interrogate
deplore
regret
celebrate

2. Thinking of locutionary, illocutionary and perlocutionary acts (and their components), consider what (a) a parrot, and (b) a computer could reasonably be expected to be able to do.
3. Which of the following performative verbs can be classified under more than one of Searle's headings?

complain warn confess bemoan

Suggestions for further reading

For the 'Austin–Searle' version of speech act theory see Austin (1962) and Searle (1969). A good survey of various approaches to speech acts (but not including Leech or relevance theory) is Chapter 5 of Levinson (1983). For a

discussion of grammatical performativity, see Palmer (1986: 1.4) The views of Leech (who rejects the Austin–Searle position) can be found in Leech (1983). The outlines of a relevance-theoretical account are given in Chapter 6 of Blakemore (1992).

CHAPTER 17

Implicatures

17.1 Conversational implicatures 349
17.2 Grice's conversational maxims 355
17.3 Politeness: principles and maxims 361
17.4 Relevance theory 368
Discussion questions and exercises 377
Suggestions for further reading 378

CHAPTER 17

Implicatures

17.1 Conversational implicatures

We have already encountered conversational implicatures in Chapter 2, where they were briefly characterized as propositions or assumptions not encoded, completely or incompletely, in what is actually said. Recall the following example:

(1) A: Am I in time for supper?
B: I've cleared the table.

Here it is obviously B's intention to convey the proposition that A is too late for supper, but this has to be worked out by the hearer. In this chapter we take a closer look at conversational implicatures and proposals for explaining how they arise. We begin by considering how they might be defined.

17.1.1 How to recognize conversational implicatures

The following are amongst the criteria which have been proposed to distinguish conversational implicatures from other semantic/pragmatic phenomena with which they might be confused. These criteria are not entirely logically independent from one another.

17.1.1.1 Context dependence

An expression with a single meaning (i.e. expressing the same proposition) can give rise to different conversational implicatures in different contexts.

(2) A: Have you cleared the table and washed the dishes?
B: I've cleared the table.

(3) A: Am I in time for supper?
B: I've cleared the table.

The purpose of this criterion is to distinguish conversational implicatures from, on the one hand, entailments, and on the other hand, what have been called **conventional implicatures**. Take entailments first. There is no context in which (4) does not entail (5):

(4) John killed the wasp.
(5) The wasp died.

According to the criterion (of context dependence), therefore, (5) is not a conversational implicature of (4). *Conventional implicatures* is the name given by some to non-truth-conditional aspects of meaning which are conventionally attached to particular linguistic forms. For instance, the meaning which distinguishes *but* from *and* is of this nature, as is also the difference between *I haven't cleared the table* and *I haven't cleared the table yet*, and between *John killed the wasp* and *It was John who killed the wasp*. These differences are part of the meaning of certain linguistic forms, and if these forms are used without the intention of carrying the meaning, then they are being misused.

17.1.1.2 Defeasibility/cancellability

Conversational implicatures can be cancelled by additional material without contradiction or anomaly.

(6) A: Did the Minister attend the meeting and sign the agreement?
B(1): The Minister attended the meeting.
B(2): The Minister attended the meeting; a statement will be issued later with regard to the agreement.

B's first answer as it stands creates quite a strong presumption that the Minister did not sign the agreement. However, the additional material in B(2) suppresses the implicature: we are no longer entitled, or invited, to conclude that the agreement was not signed. In the case of a conventional implicature, subsequent inconsistent material simply gives rise to anomaly:

(7) ?John hasn't arrived yet: I know for a fact he's not coming.

Although defeasibility or cancellability is one of the standard criteria for CI, it is none the less questionable. The reason is that adding material changes the context: there is no way of suppressing the implicature without doing this. In other words, this criterion adds nothing that is not covered by the criterion of context dependence.

17.1.1.3 Non-detachability

The same propositional content in the same context will always give rise to the same conversational implicature, in whatever form it is expressed (that is to say, the implicature is tied to meaning, and not to form):

(8) A: Have you cleared the table and washed the dishes?
B: I've taken all the things off the table.

This is not the case with conventional implicatures. In the following, (9) implicates (10), but (11), which is usually considered to be propositionally identical

with (9), does not implicate (10). In other words, the implicature (10) is tied to the lexical item *manage*:

(9) John didn't manage to walk as far as the crossroads.
(10) John attempted to walk as far as the crossroads.
(11) John didn't walk as far as the crossroads.

17.1.1.4 Calculability

A conversational implicature must be calculable, using statable general principles, on the basis of conventional meaning together with contextual information.

The nature of the calculation will be discussed below. This criterion serves to distinguish conversational implicatures from special arrangements whereby, for instance, two people agree (arbitrarily) that whenever one of them says X, they actually mean Y. For instance, a husband and wife might fix it between them that if one of them says *Have you seen anything of Clive recently?* it will mean "Let's leave in fifteen minutes". This will not be calculable, by general principles, from the conventional meaning of the utterance together with contextual information.

17.1.2 Implicatures, 'saying', and contradictability

While speakers are to a certain extent held responsible for their implicatures, the degree of responsibility is generally less than for the content of explicature. There seems to be a difference between telling an outright lie, and conveying a misleading implicature. Consider the following again:

(12) A: Has John cleared the table and washed the dishes?
B: He's cleared the table.

Suppose that (a) A and B both know that John has washed the dishes, and (b) A is fairly certain that B knows (that is to say, we can rule out the implicature that B actually does not know whether John has washed the dishes or not). Suppose, further, that A is subjecting B to some sort of test. Under these circumstances, none of the following responses on the part of A would be appropriate:

(13) Yes, he did. (i.e. did wash the dishes)
(14) You said John hadn't washed the dishes.
(15) That's a lie—John did wash the dishes.

Sentence (13) shows that an implicature cannot be the intended source for the recovery of ellipted material, as can the same information expressed explicitly:

(16) B: He has cleared the table, but he hasn't washed the dishes.
A: Yes, he has.

Sentence (14) shows that B cannot be held to have ***said*** that John hadn't

washed the dishes, but it would be appropriate to say *You implied that John hadn't washed the dishes*. Sentence (15) shows that B cannot be held to have told a lie. It seems that the most B can be accused of is being misleading. Notice, however, that unexpressed parts of explicatures can constitute lying:

(17) A: What time is the train for London?
B: 2.30.

Suppose that B knew the train was at 2.15 and wanted A to miss it. All the following are then possible retorts:

(18) No, it isn't.
(19) You said it was at 2.30.
(20) You told a lie.

even though, in one sense, B did not actually ***say*** that the train for London was at 2.30.

This criterion can be adapted to distinguish implicated commands and questions, too. The following illustrates how it might work for commands. Suppose that B receives a cheque for £200, and A issues the following command:

(21) Put it into the bank.

In normal circumstances, this can be taken to implicate:

(22) (Put it into the bank and) leave it there.

Suppose, now, that B puts the cheque into the bank, but then immediately withdraws the money from the cash-dispensing machine. The following would seem to be the case:

(i) A did not actually TELL B to put the money into the bank and leave it.
(ii) B has not strictly disobeyed A.

17.1.3 The relation of conversational implicatures to propositions expressed

Relevance theorists explain the difference between the implicit parts of the explicature of an utterance and the implicatures of the utterance as follows. Let us assume we are talking about declarative sentences, so the presumption is that some proposition is being expressed. However, in many, in fact, probably in the majority of cases, the proposition or propositions which constitute the explicature are not fully encoded in explicit linguistic form: the information conveyed by the overt linguistic form of the utterance needs to be supplemented by processes of completion and/or enrichment. (The proposed mechanism underlying this process of enrichment is essentially the same as that which gives rise to the generation of implicatures; this will be dealt with below.) The process can be illustrated as follows:

(23) A: What time is your train?
B: 10.30.

To retrieve B's explicature, we need first of all to fill out his utterance to something like:

(24) My train leaves at 10.30.

This is closer to a propositional form and we can call the process which leads to it **completion**. But more is needed than this. Sentence (24) contains the definite referring expressions *my train* and *10.30* and before the expressed proposition can be identified, referents in the extralinguistic world must be assigned to these expressions. The expression *my train* refers to some specific rail service, and *10.30* refers to a specific time (either a.m. or p.m.) on a specific day. Supplying this extra information involves **enrichment**.

Now, according to relevance theorists, none of the above involves implicatures: implicatures are inferred assumptions which cannot be directly derived from overt linguistic form by completion or enrichment. Consider the following example from Blakemore (1992):

(25) A: Did I get invited to the conference?
B: Your paper was too long.
(26) Speaker A did not get invited to the conference.

According to Blakemore, (26) is an implicature because there is no connection between it and the linguistic properties of B's reply in (25), that is to say, as I understand it, that (26) cannot be derived from B's reply in (25) by completion or enrichment. Presumably Grice's (1975) example illustrates the same point:

(27) A: (stranded motorist) I've run out of petrol.
B: (passer-by) There's a garage just round the corner.
(28) The garage sells petrol.

17.1.4 Some problems

If we compare the three types of criteria, it seems, first, that the first set will not discriminate between true implicatures and implicit elements of the explicature, at least as these are defined in relevance theory, since these are context sensitive, non-detachable, and calculable. (It is not clear how to apply the test of defeasibility, but since it was shown above that this falls under the criterion of context sensitivity anyway, perhaps we can disregard it.) With regard to the relevance-theoretical distinctions one might wonder if the stated criterion is adequate to explain their own examples. Take the case of (25) and (26). Why don't we say that B's answer in (25) must be enriched/completed to (29):

(29) You didn't get invited to the conference because your paper was too long.

Similarly, B's answer in (27) could be enriched/completed as in (30):

(30) There's a garage that sells petrol just round the corner.

The difficulty is that it is not clear exactly how much enrichment is allowed for elements of explicature; it looks as though, in the absence of some other criterion, there is a danger that an arbitrary cut-off point will have to be applied. Notice, however, that the latter two cases do not satisfy the second criterion:

(31) A: Did I get invited to the conference?
B: Your paper was too long.
A: That's a lie. (can only mean that the paper was not too long, not that the speaker believes he was invited to the conference)

(32) A: I'm out of petrol.
B: There's a garage just around the corner.
A: *No, it doesn't, it's only for repairs.

Whether this criterion is adequate on its own is not at present clear. However, it does seem that it would make a useful addition to the armoury of criteria for separating explicatures and implicatures.

17.1.5 Approaches to explanation

Assuming that we now have some idea as to what implicatures are, a natural question is how to explain their generation. Implicatures clearly play an important part in communication, and equally clearly, there is a great deal of consensus as to what the implicatures of particular situated utterances are. There must therefore exist a principled mechanism (or mechanisms) which licenses a set of inferences, given an utterance and its setting. It is this mechanism, and various proposals as to its nature, which form the main topic of the rest of this chapter.

There are two main lines of contention among those for whom this area of meaning is a major concern. The first is between those who see the rules involved in the generation of implicatures as no different in principle from those involved in computing semantic representations of explicatures on the basis of lexical entries and grammar, except that they make reference to features of context. On this view, messages are coded in their entirety, and communication is a matter of encoding and decoding according to a (admittedly very extensive) set of rules whose observance guarantees a successful outcome. (This is known as the **coding hypothesis**.) The alternative view restricts the coding mechanism, with its strict, explicit algorithms, to the explicature, and explains implicatures by a much more fluid mechanism, governed by more general principles capable of responding to totally new situations. On the second view, there is no set of rules whose observance will guarantee success: success is simply not guaranteed, but the system works well enough in practice.

The second line of contention is between what might be called maxim-based accounts and relevance-based accounts. Maxim-based accounts propound a

general principle, and a set of more specific maxims. Implicatures are explained as the result of the resolution of conflicts between specific maxims in the light of the general principle. Relevance-based accounts essentially dispense with the maxims, claiming that a satisfactory general principle can handle everything.

We shall begin by looking at Grice's maxim-based approach, then at additions proposed by Leech. Finally, we shall consider Sperber and Wilson's relevance-based approach.

17.2 Grice's conversational maxims

17.2.1 The co-operative principle

One of the most influential accounts of implicature is that of Grice. Grice framed his account as an account of conversations; it can be extended in obvious ways to other communicative situations, but we shall confine ourselves for the sake of economy to conversations. Let us think in terms of a prototypical conversation. Such a conversation is not a random succession of unrelated utterances produced alternately by participants: a prototypical conversation has something in the nature of a general purpose or direction, and the contributions of the participants are intelligibly related both to one another and to the overall aim of the conversation. By participating in a conversation, a speaker implicitly signals that they agree to co-operate in the joint activity, to abide by the rules, as it were. Grice's version of what a conversationalist implicitly endorses (by accepting to take part in the conversation) runs as follows:

(i) Make your conversational contribution such as is required, at the stage at which it occurs, by the accepted purpose or direction of the talk exchange in which you are engaged.

This principle is elaborated by means of a set of maxims, which spell out what it means to co-operate in a conversational way.

17.2.1.1 The maxim of quality

The maxim of quality is concerned with truth telling, and has two parts:

(i) Do not say what you believe to be false.
(ii) Do not say that for which you lack adequate evidence.

One could argue that the second sub-maxim entails the first: there will obviously not be adequate evidence for a false statement. We can paraphrase this maxim as *Do not make unsupported statements.*

It may strike some that in real life, this maxim is honoured more in the breach than the observance. However, a moment's reflection should convince

anyone that without a default truth-telling presumption of some sort, that is, unless we can count on at least a tendency for utterances to correspond to states of affairs, language would be unlearnable and unworkable. This does not necessarily mean that Grice's formulation is the optimum one. We shall return to this point in due course.

17.2.1.2 The maxim of quantity

The maxim of quantity is concerned with the amount of information (taken in its broadest sense) an utterance conveys.

(i) Make your contribution as informative as is required for the current purposes of the exchange in which you are engaged.
(ii) Do not make your contribution more informative than is required.

Imagine a conversation between Mother and Daughter:

(33) M: What did you have for lunch today?
(34) D: Baked beans on toast.
(35) D: ?Food.
(36) D: ?I had 87 warmed-up baked beans (although eight of them were slightly crushed) served on a slice of toast 12.7 cm. by 10.3 cm. which had been unevenly toasted. . .

(34) is a 'normal' answer; (35) gives too little information; (36) gives too much.

17.2.1.3 The maxim of relation

The maxim is very simple:

Be relevant.

The point of this maxim is that it is not sufficient for a statement to be true for it to constitute an acceptable conversational contribution:

(37) A: Have you seen Mary today?
B: ?I'm breathing.

Notice that this maxim is implicated in the Maxim of Quantity, which could easily be reformulated as in Levinson (1983: 106, fn.):

[Make] the strongest statement that can be relevantly made.

Here, *the strongest relevant claim* is not materially different from *as much information as is required.* The close relationships among the three maxims of Quantity, Quality, and Relation have led some scholars to combine them into a single maxim. For instance, Levinson's version could easily be extended to '[Make] the strongest statement that can be relevantly made that is justifiable by your evidence.' Here, *justifiable by your evidence* corresponds to the Maxim of Quality. The relative 'strength' of two statements can be judged by the entailment relations between them: the stronger of the two entails the weaker. Hence, *John captured a badger* is stronger than *Somebody caught an animal.*

The Maxim of Relation can be understood on the everyday interpretation of the notion of relevance. But so much hinges on it, that it really ought to be more explicitly defined. Leech's version will suffice for the time being:

'An utterance U is relevant to a speech situation to the extent that U can be interpreted as contributing to the conversational goals of S or H.'

Relevance theorists have their own version, which will be outlined below.

17.2.1.4 The maxim of manner

The maxim of manner has four components:

(i) Avoid obscurity
(ii) Avoid ambiguity.
(iii) Avoid unnecessary prolixity.
(iv) Be orderly.

It is generally regarded as being less important than the others. It is largely self-explanatory, except that:

(i) *ambiguity*, of course, means "ambiguity in context": it is virtually impossible to avoid potential ambiguity;
(ii) not everybody knows what *prolixity* means! The *Concise Oxford Dictionary* has "lengthy, tediously wordy";
(iii) the orderliness Grice had in mind was recounting events in the order that they occurred (if temporal relations are not explicitly signalled). A well-known infringement of this sub-maxim is:

(38) The lone ranger rode off into the sunset and jumped on his horse.

(Of course, there is nothing wrong with: *The lone ranger rode off into the sunset after jumping on his horse*—well, not ***much*** wrong with it.)

17.2.2 The nature of the maxims

A number of points need to be made about the nature of the maxims. The first is that they are not rules, after the fashion of grammatical rules. They are much more flexible, more like guidelines. Infringing a rule of grammar leads to an ill-formed utterance; the maxims can be creatively infringed, frequently conflict with one another, and are to be followed by and large, to the best of one's ability.

Grice is at pains to emphasize that the maxims are not culture-bound conventions like table manners: they are rationally based, and would hence be expected to be observable in any human society. In fact, Grice claims that similar maxims govern any co-operative activity. So, for instance, if workman A asks fellow workman B to pass him a chisel, B does not hand over a saw (maxim of quality), give two chisels (maxim of quantity), hand over a saw when none has been requested or seems necessary (maxim of relation), nor

does he indicate the location of the chisel by means of a riddle (maxim of manner). This does not entail, however, that there are no cultural differences to be observed. One way in which cultures can differ is in the relative importance allotted to the maxims. For instance, a strict adherence to the maxim of quality may lead to no information at all being given. In some cultures, this may come across as rudeness, and to avoid this result, it may be preferable to provide fictitious information in order to make up a seemly response.

17.2.3 How implicatures arise

It is now time to consider the question of how implicatures arise. In Grice's system, there are two main mechanisms. The first, which gives rise to what are sometimes called **standard implicatures**, requires the assumption that the speaker is doing their best to follow the co-operative principle, even though the result may not be the best, from the point of view of the hearer. The second mechanism involves a deliberate **flouting** of the maxims, which is intended to be perceived as deliberate by the hearer, but at the same time as none the less intending a sincere communication, that is to say, without abandonment of the co-operative principle. Let us look first of all at the first type.

17.2.3.1 Standard implicatures

In some cases, a single maxim seems sufficient to explain an implicature. Examples of this are easiest to find with the maxim of relation. One such is Grice's own example (already quoted: repeated here for convenience):

(39) A: (stranded motorist) I've run out of petrol.
B: (passer-by) There's a garage just round the corner.

On the assumption that the speaker is obeying the relation maxim, B's reply in (39) implicates that the garage both sells petrol and is open, to the best of the speaker's knowledge; if neither of these were the case, the utterance would not be relevant in this context. Another example might be the implicatures of questions in various contexts. Let us assume that the conventional force of an interrogative is to induce the hearer to produce an utterance with certain aspects of its content specified (as we saw in Chapter 16, this is not the only possible interpretation of interrogatives). A likely implicature of *What's the time?*, on the assumption that the speaker is observing the maxim, would be that the speaker did not know what the time was. However, in the context of an exam, it is not a plausible implicature of *What are the reasons for the decline of the Roman Empire?* that the utterer does not know the answer. It is more likely that they wish to assess the quality of the hearer's answer.

In most cases (probably), more than one maxim is involved. A number of implicature types can be attributed to Levinson's conflated maxim (expanded and repeated for convenience):

[Make] the strongest statement that can be relevantly made that is justifiable by your evidence.

Consider the following:

(40) A: Where's the corkscrew?
B: It's either in the top drawer in the kitchen or it's fallen behind the piano.

The information given here is not really enough to satisfy the questioner, but if we suppose that B is doing his best to follow the co-operative principle, then we must conclude that something is preventing him from giving more. A likely possibility is that he doesn't actually know any more than he says, and to say more would violate the last clause of the (conflated) maxim.

Another related type of implicature goes under the generic heading of **scalar implicature**. For instance:

(41) A: Have you read any of Hardy's novels?
B: I've read some of them.

B's reply implicates that he has not read all of them. If he had, in fact, read all of them, in the context of the question this would have been (a) relevant information, and (b) stronger than what was said, and the maxim would require it to have been given. Since the stronger statement was not made, there is an implicature that something prevents it. In this case, the most likely possibility is that it would not be true. In the following case, B would be seriously misleading the police officer (although perhaps not actually telling a lie) if he had in addition drunk five double whiskies:

(42) A (police officer): How much have you had to drink, sir?
B (motorist): A half pint of lager, officer.

The implicature is that no relevant, true, stronger statement could be made, that is, B's alcohol intake was limited to half a pint of lager.

Yet another type of case explicable (partly) by Levinson's maxim is the following:

(43) A: What do you think of Mr X's candidacy for the post of Professor of Brain Surgery?
B: Well, he's an excellent golfer, and a damn nice chap.

The implicature here is that surgical skill and experience do not figure amongst Mr X's qualities, otherwise they would be mentioned. However, to explicitly point out their lack would be insulting. It could be argued that the co-operative principle cannot wholly account for this, and a politeness principle is needed. This will be taken up below.

An example involving the maxims of relation and manner is the following:

(44) In order to obtain a ticket, take up a position with the feet no more than 50 cm. from the base of the machine, bending slightly from the waist

towards the machine. Take a 20p coin, holding it vertically between thumb and forefinger. Insert the coin carefully into the slot indicated, and release it when inserted more than half-way. The ticket will appear in the lower left-hand slot of the machine.

(45) To obtain a ticket, insert a 20p coin into the machine.

Under normal circumstances, (44) is far more detailed than is required ((45) would be enough), and thus apparently infringes the 'avoid unnecessary prolixity' injunction. However, assuming the speaker is obeying the co-operative principle, and is not given to verbosity, a possible reason for going against the relation maxim is that what is, at first sight, redundant information is, in fact, relevant, and hence a likely implicature is that the situation is not normal, and the instructions must be followed to the letter, otherwise unpleasant consequences (or some such) may ensue.

17.2.3.2 Flouting the maxims

The other way in which implicatures arise is through deliberate flouting of the maxims in circumstances in which (a) it is obvious to the hearer that the maxims are being flouted, (b) it is obvious to the hearer that the speaker intends the hearer to be aware that the maxims are being flouted, and (c) there are no signs that the speaker is opting out of the co-operative principle. The hearer is thus given a signal that the utterances are not to be taken at face value, and that some sort of extra processing is called for. A weakness of these proposals is that no explanation or motivation is provided with respect to the exact nature of the extra processing. Any of the maxims may be violated in this benign way.

The maxim of quality

(46) The mushroom omelette wants his coffee with.

(47) I married a rat.

(48) It'll cost the earth, but what the hell!

In their most likely contexts of use, none of the above sentences is likely to be literally true, but equally, none of them is likely to mislead a hearer. In each case some additional interpretive process will be brought into play. In the first example, the interpretive process will be a metonymic one, and the understood message will be that the person who ordered a mushroom omelette wants his coffee served with the omelette, rather than afterwards. In the second example, the interpretive process will be a metaphoric one. In the third example, the implicatures are not so obvious, but hyperbole of this kind can implicate a relaxed, informal relationship with interlocutors.

The maxim of quantity

(49) Boys will be boys.

At first pass this gives no information at all. At second pass, we interpret the first *boys* in a subtly different way from the second *boys*. The first includes all boys, even those we thought had been tamed and could be relied on for good behaviour. The second is predicative, and presents certain stereotypic properties of boys as being innate and unavoidable.

(50) It must be somewhere.

Of course, it must be somewhere! Completely pointless? Not quite: it implicates that a more determined search will be likely to result in success.

(51) Mother: What did you do?
Daughter: (with exaggerated patience, elaborates a long list of totally uninteresting details)

This represents the inverse of the two previous examples, in that here, too much information is given. The implicature is that the mother is too damn curious, and overworried about her daughter's doings.

The maxim of relation

(52) A: I say, did you hear about Mary's . . .
B: Yes, well, it rained nearly the whole time we were there.

This is an obviously irrelevant comment. Assume that A and B are having a conversation about a colleague, Mary. Mary approaches them, seen by B but not by A. The implicature is: *Watch out! Here comes Mary!*

The maxim of manner

(53) A: I'll look after Samantha for you, don't worry. We'll have a lovely time. Won't we, Sam?
B: Great, but if you don't mind, don't offer her any post-prandial concoctions involving supercooled oxide of hydrogen. It usually gives rise to convulsive nausea.

The implicature arising from this unnecessary prolixity is obviously that B does not want Samantha to know what she is saying.

17.3. Politeness: principles and maxims

17.3.1 The politeness principle

There is no doubt that the co-operative principle can go some way towards explaining the generation of implicatures. But one class of implicature which receives no account under this heading concerns implicatures of politeness. For this, Leech has proposed an independent pragmatic principle, to function alongside the co-operative principle, which he calls the politeness principle.

Before we discuss this principle and its maxims, some discussion of politeness is in order. Politeness is, first and foremost, a matter of what is said, and not a matter of what is thought or believed. Leech expresses the politeness principle thus:

(I) Minimize the expression of impolite beliefs.

This is not an ideal formulation, as politeness does not essentially concern beliefs. However, it does have the merit of throwing the weight on to ***expression***. Let us rephrase the principle as follows:

(II) Choose expressions which minimally belittle the hearer's status.

The sorts of thing which may be thought to belittle the hearer's status (or, alternatively expressed, "cause the minimum loss of face to the hearer") are:

- Treating the hearer as subservient to one's will, by desiring the hearer to do something which will cost effort, or restrict freedom, etc.
- Saying bad things about the hearer or people or things related to the hearer.
- Expressing pleasure at the hearer's misfortunes.
- Disagreeing with the hearer, thus denigrating the hearer's thoughts.
- Praising oneself, or dwelling on one's good fortune, or superiority.

The purpose of politeness is the maintenance of harmonious and smooth social relations in the face of the necessity to convey belittling messages. Of course, the nature of reality, social, psychological, and physical, constrains the scope for politeness: if our world is to 'work', we must respect this reality. We can think of the co-operative principle as a restraining influence on the politeness principle.

It is worth while distinguishing between **positive** and **negative politeness**. Negative politeness mitigates the effect of belittling expressions:

(54) Help me to move this piano.
(55) You couldn't possibly give me a hand with this piano, could you?

Positive politeness emphasizes the hearer's positive status:

(56) Thank you, that was extremely helpful.

Generally speaking, we are more concerned, as social beings, with negative politeness, as breakdowns in social harmony are much more likely as a result of the expression of belittling thoughts. Another dichotomy in politeness phenomena is between speaker-related and hearer-related effects. Generally, speaker-oriented politeness involves self-belittlement, as any aggrandizement of self implies a relative belittling of the hearer. As a general rule, hearer-oriented politeness is more salient and more crucial.

Certain language expressions are specialized for polite use, such as *please* and *thank you*. But the greater part of politeness comes across in the form of

implicatures. The overall mechanism Leech proposes for the generation of implicatures via the politeness principle is similar to that proposed by Grice for the co-operative principle. Each principle, is accompanied by a set of more specific maxims.

17.3.1.1 The tact maxim

The tact maxim is oriented towards the hearer and has positive and negative sub-maxims:

Minimize cost to the hearer.
Maximize benefit to the hearer.

The operation of this maxim can be clearly seen in the context of impositives, that is, utterances which have the function of getting the hearer to do something (the term *impositive* includes commands, requests, beseechments, etc.). We can roughly order impositives in terms of the cost to the hearer, greatest cost first:

Lend me your wife.
Wash the dishes.
Pass the salt.
Say *Ah!*
Have another sandwich.
Have a nice weekend.

We can think of this as a continuous (**cost-benefit**) scale, although, of course, there is a switch-over, somewhere in the middle of the list, from cost to benefit. How does the tact maxim work? Well, it is obvious that the linguistic form of the impositive is not going to affect the real cost or benefit to the hearer: what the maxim means is that in order to get a hearer to do something which involves a cost, a polite speaker will cast his utterance in a form which softens the effect of the impositive. Conversely, to get the hearer to do something to his benefit, a polite speaker will strengthen the impositive. What is meant by softening, or weakening an impositive is, essentially, making it easier for the hearer to refuse. This can be done by increasing optionality or by increasing indirectness. These two factors cannot necessarily be clearly separated. For instance, (57) is more polite than (58), and (59) is even more polite:

(57) Could you wash the dishes?
(58) Wash the dishes!
(59) I was wondering if you could possibly wash the dishes.

Sentence (57) does not directly encode an imposition; its literal force is to enquire about the hearer's ability to perform the task, and leaves the impositive force to implicature. It is therefore more indirect than (58). Implicatures are inherently weaker than explicatures, so the impositive force is weaker, and a refusal by the hearer would be less impolite. Sentence (59) is even more

indirect, as it does not, literally, even ask a question, but merely voices the speaker's internal musings.

Looking at impositives which correspond to a benefit to the hearer, we may first note that (60) is definitely not more polite than (61):

(60) I was wondering if you could possibly enjoy your holiday.
(61) Enjoy your holiday!

For impositives beneficial to the hearer, the situation is reversed, and the stronger impositives are the more polite. Sentence (60) is actually rather rude: it suggests that the hearer is a habitually gloomy, complaining type.

Notice that the politeness in the cases discussed does not inhere in the linguistic forms: there is nothing inherently polite in *I was wondering if you could possibly V*. Politeness is an implicature arising from a three-way interaction between explicature, the context, and the politeness principle.

17.3.1.2 The generosity maxim

The generosity maxim is a sister to the tact maxim, and is oriented towards costs and benefits to the speaker:

Minimize benefit to self.
Maximize cost to self.

This maxim works in a way parallel to that of the tact maxim, except that the effects are reversed. So, for instance, offers to do something which involves benefit to her hearer, but cost to the speaker must be made as directly as possible, for politeness. Hence, (62) is more polite than (63):

(62) Let me wash the dishes.
(63) I was wondering if I could possibly wash the dishes.

On the other hand, politeness demands that requests for benefit to the speaker be weakened:

(64) I want to borrow your car.
(65) Could I possibly borrow your car?

17.3.1.3 The praise maxim

The maxims of praise and modesty form another natural duo, concerned, in this case, with the expression of positive or negative opinions about speaker or hearer. The maxim of praise is oriented towards the hearer, and goes as follows:

Minimize dispraise of the hearer.
Maximize praise of the hearer.

As usual, negative politeness is the more crucial, hence the first sub-maxim is the more likely to be brought into play. The effect is to tone down any criticism or unfavourable comment:

(66) A: Do you like my new dress?
B: *No.
Well, yes, but it's not my favourite.

(67) A: Oh! I've been so thoughtless.
B: *Yes, haven't you?
Not at all—think nothing of it.

The effect of the second sub-maxim is to exaggerate praise:

(68) Thank you ***so*** much for inviting us. We had an absolutely ***wonderful*** time!

17.3.1.4 The modesty maxim

The modesty maxim is the natural partner of the previous one, being oriented towards the speaker, with the relevant 'values' reversed:

Minimize praise of self.
Maximize dispraise of self.

Praising oneself is inherently impolite, so negative politeness here is a matter of toning down self-congratulation:

(69) A: You did brilliantly!
B: *Yes, didn't I?
Well, I thought I didn't do too badly.

Positive politeness under this heading, that is, exaggerating protestations of worthlessness, tends in the direction of grovelling:

(70) Your Majesty, I am a mere worm, a disgusting toad, a dog's turd, and I deserve no forgiveness! I throw myself at Your Majesty's feet!

It is perhaps worth pointing out here the paradoxical fact that implicatures of politeness only arise when it is clear to the hearer that the speaker's utterance is not completely sincere. If someone does something very well and one tells them so, although such praise is, in a sense, inherently polite, and is enjoined by the maxim, it does not seem satisfactory to say that there is an ***implicature*** of politeness. The implicature is paradoxical because it indicates that the speaker's opinion is in reality less complimentary, or more critical, as the case may be, and this is, of course, less polite. In other words, the message *I am being polite* is itself impolite, although indirectly and therefore weakly. This kind of paradox runs through all politeness phenomena (see Leech for more detailed exemplification and discussion).

17.3.1.5 The agreement maxim

The final two maxims do not form a pair. This is not, as Leech claims, because they do not involve bipolar scales (at least one of them does), but because they are inherently relational in a way that the others are not. That is to say, agreement is a relation between the opinions of the speaker and those of the hearer.

One cannot contrast an orientation towards self with an orientation towards hearer, as with praise, and benefit/cost: it does not matter whether agreement forms a bipolar scale or not (one could argue about agreement (i.e. whether disagreement is zero agreement, or whether there is a midpoint zero of 'no contact', with agreement and disagreement as polar extremes), but sympathy/antipathy (see next maxim) definitely is bipolar, with a central "indifference" representing zero between the two extremes). This maxim is simply:

Minimize disagreement with the hearer.
Maximize agreement with the hearer.

The sub-maxims are not clearly distinct. A typical strategy is to begin with partial agreement before expressing disagreement:

(71) A: She should be sacked immediately. We can't tolerate unpunctuality.
B: *I disagree.
I agree with the general principle, but in this case there are mitigating circumstances.

17.3.1.6 The sympathy maxim

Sympathy is again a matter of a relation between speaker and hearer, and cannot, therefore, be differentially speaker- or hearer-oriented:

Maximize sympathy (expression of positive feelings) towards the hearer.
Minimize antipathy (expression of negative feelings) towards the hearer.

As Leech points out, this maxim renders congratulations and commiserations or condolences inherently polite acts. However, once again, it seems we can speak of implicatures of politeness only if a discrepancy can be intuited between what the speaker says and what he or she feels.

17.3.1.7 The consideration maxim

Leech presents the consideration maxim as a separate principle (the Pollyanna Principle), with, in my opinion, very little justification, as it works just like the other maxims:

Minimize the hearer's discomfort/displeasure.
Maximize the hearer's comfort/pleasure.

Negative politeness under this maxim involves the softening, by various devices, of references to painful, distressing, embarrassing or shocking events, facts, or things, etc. For instance, if someone's husband has recently died, it is more polite to say *I was sorry to hear about your husband* than *I was sorry to hear about your husband's death*, as the latter highlights the distressing event to a greater degree. Another typical manifestation of this sub-maxim is euphemism, where indirectness of various kinds is employed to avoid mention of

words likely to cause offence. The following examples use a despecifying strategy:

(72) She has a lovely figure.
*She has beautiful breasts.

(73) He exposed his parts.
*He exposed his penis.

The following example uses a kind of frozen metonymy (at one time one had to put a penny in the door of a public toilet to get in):

(74) Hang on a minute, I need to spend a penny.
*Hang on a minute, I need to piss.

The converse sub-maxim, concerned with positive politeness, requires one, for instance, to be more specific when referring to things the thought of which is likely to give the hearer pleasure. Thus, if the hearer's daughter, Jennifer, has just won an Oscar, then (75) is more polite than (76):

(75) That was great news about Jennifer's Oscar.
(76) That was great news about Jennifer.

17.3.2 Miscellaneous principles

Leech proposes two more principles, independent of both the politeness principle and the co-operative principle. We shall not propose additional principles, but follow the Gricean example and speak instead of deliberate flouting of the principle of politeness. There are two basic possibilities here; one can be superficially polite, but patently insincere, leading to rudeness by implicature, or one can be superficially rude, but patently insincere, leading to politeness by implicature. The insincerity must be indeed patent, for the trick to work, and the strategy carries a certain risk that one might be taken at one's word. Leech groups the following sort of example under what he calls the **irony principle**:

(77) You're a fine friend! (with appropriate intonation)
(78) Do help yourself! (to someone who helps himself unjustifiably, without invitation)
(79) Well, thank you very much! (someone parks his car in front of your drive, so you can't get out)

The opposite sort of case comes under Leech's **banter principle** (actually both involve a type of irony):

(80) Look what the cat's just brought in.
(81) You stupid bitch! (to a close friend who's just done something daft)

The implicature here is that the relationship is so solid that politeness is not necessary, and this is, of course, a polite implicature.

17.3.3 General discussion

Like the co-operative principle, the politeness principle is intended to be universal, that is, not culture dependent, in its application. However, probably even more than the maxims of conversation, the politeness maxims are given different relative weightings in different cultures, with the result that politeness phenomena in speech can have a very different superficial appearance, and a knowledge of the maxims is no guarantee that one can avoid solecisms. The relative weighting of co-operative as against politeness maxims also varies. For instance, a British hostess will probably take a compliment on her cooking something like this:

(82) Guest: Oh, Jane, that was a delicious meal.
Jane: Thank you. I'm glad you enjoyed it.

However, a Japanese hostess in a similar situation (so it is reported) is obliged by politeness rules to deny any merit whatsoever in her efforts to entertain, so that quite long 'arguments' can ensue, with the guest praising the meal and the hostess denigrating it. This can be explained by the high weighting given to the modesty maxim in Japanese culture (and the relatively low weighting to the quality maxim, since it is unlikely that the Japanese hostess actually believes her meal to have been worthless). (The rules have, I understand, been different at an earlier period in certain sections of British society, where the guest's comment in (82) would have been taken as an insult. The reason is that it would have been understood as the expression of a newsworthy proposition, that is, something unexpected! This presumably has something to do with the status of the maxim of relevance.)

17.4 Relevance theory

We have so far been discussing implicatures on the assumption that human linguistic communication is governed by a set of more or less independent maxims, and we have looked at two more or less self-consistent sets, each set subsumable under a very general principle. Let us concentrate on the Gricean maxims for a while: Leech's maxims have an important, but rather different job to do—let us say they are less to do with 'content' than with 'manner'. At several points in the discussion of the Gricean maxims it was noted that the maxim of relation had to be implicated in the interpretation of a particular maxim. For instance, the maxim of quantity boiled down to something like *maximize relevant information*, and the *avoid prolixity* sub-maxim needed to be interpreted as *don't be irrelevantly verbose*. In fact all the maxims can be disregarded, provided some relevant message can be inferred. This suggests that perhaps some reduction in the complexity of the system is possible: perhaps the only maxim that really matters, the only one that cannot be broken, is the

maxim of relation. In other words, it looks as though the only requirement for bona fide communicative utterances might be that they should be maximally relevant on all salient parameters. This is the basis of relevance theory.

Relevance theory makes the following criticisms of the Gricean approach:

(i) Implicatures are derived by combining explicature and context, but it is assumed that context is unproblematic and 'given'. But how do hearers select the relevant features of context?
(ii) No definition of relevance is offered.
(iii) The methods of deriving implicatures are inexplicit and ad hoc
(iv) The notion of "flouting the maxims" is paradoxical, when in every case a relevant message ensues. If relevance is the key, perhaps the notion of flouting can be dispensed with.

17.4.1 The principle of relevance

In relevance theory, the co-operative principle is replaced by the principle of relevance, and this in turn is claimed to make the separate maxims redundant. The principle of relevance may be expressed (without too much distortion) as follows:

(IV) Every bona fide act of linguistic communication automatically carries with it, by the mere fact of its being executed, the utterer's belief in its optimal relevance.

In other words, by saying something (in the normal course of human interaction) one is telling the hearer(s) not only that one thinks that what one says is worth the time and effort it will take to process it, but also that no more easily processed utterance would give the same result.

The degree of relevance of a communicated fact is governed by two factors:

(i) Contextual effects: the more of these there are, the greater the relevance of a particular fact. Contextual effects are such things as:
    (a) adding new information;
    (b) strengthening old information;
    (c) weakening old information;
    (d) cancelling old information.
    A new fact which is totally unconnected with anything already known is probably not worth processing. A new fact which, taken together with old information, allows many new inferences, is probably worth processing.
(ii) Processing effort: the less effort it takes to recover a fact, the greater the relevance of the fact. In particular, the following general points can be noted:
    (a) More salient facts take less effort to access than less salient facts.
    (b) Direct inferences take less effort than indirect inferences.

17.4.2 The problem of context

The proper context for the interpretation of an utterance is not given in advance; it is chosen by the hearer. The correct context is the set of assumptions which yields adequate contextual effects compared with effort required when combined with new information contained in the utterance.

The speaker has the prime responsibility in communication: the speaker assumes certain facts about the hearer's knowledge and its organization, in particular, the relative accessibility of facts. The speaker produces an utterance which will enable the hearer to make the correct inferences with minimum expenditure of cognitive effort.

The hearer's role is more passive. The hearer tries possible contexts in order of accessibility, and the first one to yield relevant inferences commensurate with the effort expended up to that point is the one intended by the speaker.

17.4.3 Explicature and under-specification

In relevance theory, the **explicature** of an utterance consists of all the propositions that are explicitly communicated by the speaker through that utterance. Obviously, some of the speaker's intentions are encoded in the linguistic forms used. However, not everything that is explicitly communicated is linguistically encoded; some of it has to be inferred by a relevance-driven process like that which gives rise to implicatures. We can distinguish four aspects of explicature where recourse to inference, guided by relevance, is required.

17.4.3.1 Disambiguation

Normal language is full of potential ambiguities, but these are only rarely noticed, because they are disambiguated by context. This disambiguation process is relevance driven. Each of the following sentences contains at least one ambiguous word, but none of them is intuitively ambiguous, even out of context. In (83) and (84), the disambiguating information is at least partially given in the sentence, although relevance plays a part in both cases. In (83), the presence of *cheek* in the sentence predisposes us to select the reading "small dark spot on the skin" for *mole*, largely because the cognitive effort involved in creating a plausible scenario in which that particular proposition played a part, is significantly less than that required to construct a scenario in which a furry animal or an industrial spy was involved. Less effort entails greater relevance, hence that is the reading selected. In (84), the "small dark spot" reading of *mole* is ruled out as anomalous, but the relative difficulty of scenario construction for "industrial spy" as compared with "furry animal" ensures that the former is selected. Sentence (85) contains nothing specific to bias the interpretation towards a financial bank, but it is none the less the case that it is easier to envisage a scene where a financial bank is involved, than one where the bank of a river is involved. This is because our memories contain

records of frequently encountered scenarios which can relatively easily be retrieved.

(83) She has a mole on her left cheek.
(84) They managed to place a mole in the rival organization.
(85) I can't see you now, I've got to go to the bank.

17.4.3.2 Reference assignment

A second important role for inference in the construction of an explicature is in the identification of the referents of definite referring expressions. Obviously, context is crucial here. As an illustration, consider (86) (slightly adapted from Blakemore):

(86) A: I'll make the salad dressing.
B: The oil's on the top shelf.
A: I can't see it.

We shall ignore the problem of identifying the referent for *the salad dressing* and move to the question of the referent of *the oil*. No oil has been mentioned up to that point, so which oil are we talking about? Relevance requires us to maximize contextual effects, and one way of doing this is to integrate an utterance with previous discourse. In the present instance, this can be done by retrieving an item of knowledge from memory to the effect that one of the ingredients of salad dressing is oil. This is known as **bridging** and is a common discourse-processing device. In this way, an integration is accomplished, with satisfactory inferential consequences, by identifying the referent of *oil* with the oil needed to make the salad dressing. This is possible without any more contextual information.

But suppose, now, that A and B are in B's garage at the time of the utterance, and A is about to do some work on B's car. This context raises the possibility of an alternative referent for *oil*, namely engine oil. But notice that the referent of *oil* most likely would not change in the new context as described: this suggests that making connections with previous discourse has some kind of priority over making connections with immediate context—one may surmise that this is because it is more easily accessed. But then think of what would happen if A was actually working on the car, had the bonnet lid up, and the oil filler cap off, and A was looking around, scratching his head. Surely then we would interpret *oil* as *engine oil*? There must therefore be some point at which the salience (ease of access) of "engine oil" overtakes that of "salad oil", that is, when immediate situational context takes precedence over previous discourse. It seems that immediate context has to be very salient to suppress previous discourse. Clearly, too, previous discourse becomes less accessible the further back in time it is relative to the production of the definite referring expression, and presumably the easier it is for situational context to prevail.

What happens if there is no referent either in previous discourse or in immediate context (and none can be inferred by bridging)? In such a case it is possible to use general knowledge, as in (87):

(87) (Tourists A and B are having breakfast in a London hotel; the hotel has no tower, none has been mentioned, none is visible from where they are sitting)
A: What shall we do today?
B: Let's visit the Tower. (N.B. speech has no capital letters!)

From the above considerations it seems we can state an order of preference for domains wherein a referent might be found, and this is probably the order in which they are searched:

Previous discourse > Immediate situation > Stored knowledge

Clearly the processes of referent identification are complex and subtle, and the above discussion has no more than scratched the surface of the problem.

17.4.3.3 Enrichment

An important part of the process of constructing the explicature of an utterance is the recovery of missing components of the expressed propositions by **enrichment**. This involves fleshing out skeletal propositions, but not radically changing them (this notion is not entirely clear). Two varieties of enrichment can be distinguished: recovering ellipted elements and resolving semantic incompleteness. The first of these is straightforward enough:

(88) A: When you've finished the dishes will you post these letters?
B: I will.

Obviously, what B 'really means' is *I will post those letters when I've finished the dishes*. Any assessment of the truth value of B's utterance will take this as read. The missing portion can be reconstructed by grammatical rules.

The resolution of semantic incompleteness is less straightforward, at least in some cases, but the general idea is convincing enough. Usually, the missing information cannot be grammatically specified. The following are relatively clear examples:

(89) That one is too big.

Here we need to recover the standard against which size is being assessed: too big for what? Without this, the statement is virtually meaningless. Such examples are legion. Take (90) compared with (91):

(90) The petrol tank exploded some time after the impact.
(91) Her first suicide attempt occurred some time after her divorce.

Even if we take *some* to mean "relatively great", it seems likely to be interpreted in quite different terms in the two sentences: probably, in (90) it is to be

taken as referring to minutes or even seconds, and in (91) as years. Sentence (92) is presumably to be taken as meaning that the speaker has brushed their teeth on the day of speaking, and not, for instance, at some point in their life; in (93), on the other hand, the latter interpretation could well be the speaker's intention.

(92) I've brushed my teeth.
(93) I've seen the Northern Lights.

Notice that if the last time the speaker of (92) had brushed their teeth was the day before, then *No, you haven't* would be a perfectly reasonable retort. Finally, in this connection, consider (94):

(94) The plate was hot and he dropped it.

According to Blakemore's account, the explicature here will contain information to the effect that the hotness of the plate was the cause of its being dropped. This is supported by the normality of *That's not the reason—he was drunk* as a subsequent comment.

17.4.3.4 Higher-order explicatures

According to relevance theory theorists, the specification of communicated speech acts will be part of explicature but not that of non-communicated speech acts. So, for instance, if (95) represents a bet, then that must be recovered and incorporated as part of the explicature:

(95) Jane will leave the room before John arrives.

On the other hand, whether (96) is intended as a warning or not will be a matter of implicatures:

(96) The plates are hot.

17.4.4 Implicatures

17.4.4.1 Implicature vs. explicature

The following is a sketch of the relevance-theoretical position; it sticks closely to Sperber and Wilson, and Blakemore. Sentence (98) can be regarded as the full form of what was intended by B in (97):

(97) A: Why wasn't I invited to the conference?
B: Your paper is too long.
(98) The article the hearer has written is too long to fit into a standard time-slot for the conference.

Notice that *your paper* has been disambiguated, and the reference length for *too long* has been supplied. Getting this additional information requires the use of inference based on contextual information (including general

knowledge about the organization of conferences) together with the principle of relevance. But (98) has a close relationship with the linguistic form of (97B): it represents an enrichment of (97B). (Sentence 98) is therefore part of the explicature of (97B). Consider, now, (99) and (100):

(**99**) A: Did I get invited to the conference?
B: Your paper was too long.
(**100**) A did not get invited to the conference.

Here, A will infer (100) from B's answer in (99), after accessing stored knowledge such as (101):

(**101**) If one's paper is too long for the conference one will not be invited.

Proposition (100), says Blakemore, cannot be regarded as an enrichment of B's utterance in (99), since there is no relationship between the linguistic form of B's utterance and assumption (100). She points out that (100) can only be inferred once the fully enriched form of B's utterance (i.e. (98)) has been retrieved. Hence (100) is not part of the explicature of (99B), but is an implicature.

Suppose someone were to ask why A does not infer (102):

(**102**) Nigel will not attend the conference.

Neither (102) nor (100) follows logically from (98); (100) follows only when taken together with (101), an item of knowledge presumably stored in A's memory. But maybe A also has access to (103):

(**103**) If your paper is too long for the conference, you will not be invited.
If you are not invited to the conference, there will be no papers on pragmatics.
If there are no papers on pragmatics at the conference, then Nigel will not attend.

Why should A assume that (100) is B's intended message, rather than (102)? The reasoning goes something like this:

(i) The principle of relevance entitles the hearer to expect that they can obtain adequate contextual effects for a minimum cost in processing.
(ii) The more items of knowledge that need to be recovered, either from memory or current situation, and the less accessible they are, the greater the processing effort.
(iii) A was able to obtain adequate effects with one easily accessible item of knowledge, and is therefore entitled to conclude that no further cognitive work was required, and to accept this as the whole of B's intended message.

The question must then be asked why B did not simply say (104) in answer to A's question in (99):

(104) No, you were not invited.

After all, (99B) requires more processing effort than (104) would have done. As Sperber and Wilson point out (1986: 197): 'it follows from the principle of relevance that the surplus of information given in an indirect answer must achieve some relevance in its own right.'. That is to say, (99B) must produce more contextual effects than (104) would have done, and these must be sufficient to justify the extra effort that the speaker requires of the hearer. In this case, a reason is given for the refusal of the paper, and this could, for instance, forestall an anticipated follow-up question.

17.4.4.2 Implicated premises and implicated conclusions

Recall the following exchange:

(105) A: Am I in time for supper?
B: I've cleared the table.

B's reply does not directly answer A's question, but it enables A to recover information about mealtime scenarios and B's willingness to be put to a lot of extra trouble, which presumably includes at least some of the items in (106):

(106) When the table is cleared, there is no food, etc. on the table.
For someone to have supper, food, etc. must be put on the table.
Putting food on the table will require effort on someone's part.
Someone who has just cleared the table will resent having to put it back.

B's reply in (105) and (106) taken together yield (107):

(107) A is too late for supper.

The propositions in (106) are **implicated premises** of B's reply in (105); (106) is an **implicated conclusion**. All implicatures fall into one of these categories. Implicated premises are part of the context that the hearer must construct in order to recover the implicated conclusion which is the main point of the utterance. Sentence (106) plays the same role in the derivation of (106) that bridging implicatures play in identifying referents.

17.4.4.3 Strong implicatures and weak implicatures

Consider example (108) (the examples in this section are taken from Sperber and Wilson (1986: 194–8)):

(108) Peter: Would you drive a Mercedes?
Mary: I wouldn't drive ANY expensive car.

What is explicitly conveyed in Mary's utterance does not directly answer Peter's question; however, Mary might reasonably assume that Peter can retrieve the information in (109) from his general knowledge:

(**109**) A Mercedes is an expensive car

and using this as context (implicated premise), will derive the implicature (110):

(**110**) Mary wouldn't drive a Mercedes.

Sentences (109) and (110) are **strong** (i.e. fully determinate) **implicatures**, for the following reasons:

(i) Mary expects their exact logical form to be recovered.
(ii) Mary is responsible for their truth. If Peter previously thought that Mercedes were cheap, or merely suspected that they were expensive, then Mary's reply in (108) would provide as much disconfirmation of the former or strengthening of the latter as an explicit statement.

By the principle of relevance, (110) cannot be all Mary wishes to communicate. However, the extra implicatures do not necessarily form a determinate set. Implicatures vary in strength, and it is not possible to set a determinate value below which they are not intended by the speaker.

For instance, Peter might add (111) and (112) to the context, and derive (113) and (114):

(**111**) A Rolls Royce is an expensive car.
(**112**) A Cadillac is an expensive car.
(**113**) Mary wouldn't drive a Rolls Royce.
(**114**) Mary wouldn't drive a Cadillac.

Or he might add (115) to the context and derive (116):

(**115**) People who refuse to drive expensive cars disapprove of displays of wealth.
(**116**) Mary disapproves of displays of wealth.

What about (117)? Can we be sure that everyone would class a BMW as an expensive car?

(**117**) Mary wouldn't drive a BMW.

Or, going further, would it be legitimate for Peter to use (118) to derive (119)?

(**118**) People who would not drive an expensive car would not go on a cruise, either.
(**119**) Mary would not go on a cruise.

Sentences (114), (116), (117), and (119) seem to be progressively weaker implicatures. The weaker the implicature, the less responsibility the speaker takes for their truth, i.e. the more they are the responsibility of the hearer. To quote Sperber and Wilson (1986: 199):

The strongest possible implicatures are those fully determinate premises or conclusions. . .which must actually be supplied if the interpretation is to be consistent with the principle of relevance, and for which the speaker takes full responsibility. Strong implicatures are those premises and conclusions. . .which the hearer is strongly encouraged but not actually forced to supply. The weaker the encouragement, and the wider the range of possibilities among which the hearer can choose, the weaker the implicatures. Eventually. . .a point is reached at which the hearer receives no encouragement at all to supply any particular premise and conclusion, and he takes the entire responsibility for supplying them himself.

Sperber and Wilson suggest that 'poetic effects' are explicable in terms of richness of weak implicatures. There are many other ramifications of relevance theory—probably the most thoroughly worked-out theory of pragmatics currently available—which there is no space here to explore.

Discussion questions and exercises

1. By selecting suitable utterances for A, show how B's utterance can give rise to six different implicatures:

A:
B: Her black dress cost £500.

2. Each of the following conversational fragments is to some degree odd. To what extent can the oddness be explained by reference to Grice's co-operative principle and/or Leech's politeness principle?

(a) A: Have you seen Peter today?
B: Well, if I didn't deny seeing him I wouldn't be telling a lie.
(b) A: Are you there?
B: No, I'm here.
(c) A: What did you do yesterday?
B: I had a swim, changed into my swimming trunks, and went to the beach.
(d) A: Thank you for your help, you've been most kind.
B: Yes, I have.
(e) A: Can you tell me where Mr Smith's office is?
B: Yes, not here.
(f) A: We're off to Mallorca tomorrow.
B: I was wondering if you wouldn't mind enjoying your holiday.
(g) A: Would you like some coffee?
B: Mary's a beautiful dancer.
(h) A: Would you like some more dessert, or coffee, perhaps?
B: I'd like to go to the lavatory.
(i) A: Thank you for a wonderful evening. The meal was delicious.
B: No, it wasn't.
A: Yes, really, we enjoyed it enormously.

B: It was disgusting, and I was pathetic.

(j) A: Has the postman been?
B: He leant his bicycle against the fence, opened the gate, strode briskly down the path, stopped to stroke the cat, reached into his bag, pulled out a bundle of letters and pushed them through our letter-box.

3. Classify the propositions in brackets in each of the following as (i) an entailment from the explicature, (ii) a conventional implicature, (iii) part of explicature by enrichment, (iv) a conversational implicature, or (v) only possible by an *ad hoc* agreement between A and B:

(a) A: What happened to the rat?
B: John killed it.
("The rat is dead")

(b) A: Where's the corkscrew?
B: It's either in the top drawer in the kitchen, or it's fallen behind the piano.
("B doesn't know the exact location of the corkscrew")

(c) A: What's Bill's new house like?
B: The garden's beautiful.
("Bill's new house has a garden")

(d) A: Did you bring the photos?
B: I left them on the kitchen table.
("It's time to leave")

(e) A: Did you speak to John about the CD?
B: It wasn't John that borrowed it.
("Somebody borrowed the CD")

Suggestions for further reading

The seminal writings on the topic, namely Grice (1975), are a must. The commentary in Levinson (1983) provides amplification and discusses some of the trickier points. Grice's intellectual heirs are of two main sorts. The so-called 'Neo-Griceans' seek to refine his system and remedy perceived weak points. The main proponents of this approach are Horn and Levinson, and their views can be sampled in Horn (1984) and Levinson (1989). Leech (1983) uses a Grice-like approach to explain implicatures of politeness, which he claims are overlooked by the standard Gricean account. A more radical challenge is provided by relevance theory. The source text for this is Sperber and Wilson (1986); a simpler introduction is Blakemore (1992), but it is probably worth the extra effort to go straight for Sperber and Wilson.

Conclusion

We have now completed our survey of the landscape of meaning in language. Having acquired a basic conceptual toolkit for semantic analysis, we have looked in some detail at the principal bearers of meaning in language, namely words, at their meanings, their interrelations, how they combine, how new meanings are created, in both the short term and the long term, and how grammar contributes to (indeed, is vital to) the assembling of complex meaning structures.

Of course language is not a self-sufficient, hermetically sealed system. It has to make contact with the world in which we live, one way or another. We have accordingly looked at principles and mechanisms of reference. We have also taken note of the fact that what people say typically encodes only part of their intended message, and we have looked at the principles which enable hearers to 'flesh out' the encoded meaning to yield a much richer message.

The survey has necessarily left many details and complications unexplored, but at least we have over-flown the entire terrain, and picked out the principal landmarks.

We started out by relating the notion of meaning in language to the wider one of communication. It is important to emphasize that all the complexities and richness we have observed in connection with meaning phenomena exist/have evolved because they are essential to a communication medium which is efficient and flexible and has unlimited expressive power.

All systematic aspects of meaning contribute to efficiency in storage and use: recurrent sense relations, patterns of sense extension, compositional principles. Pragmatic principles which allow many message components to be inferred rather than being overtly encoded ensure economy in use by reducing the length of utterances.

Flexibility is ensured by the fact that new meanings can be either created in response to the fleeting demands of a particular situation (nonce readings), or permanently laid down for long-term use in response to large-scale changes in the physical, social, or conceptual environment.

A recursive syntax, together with principles of compositionality, is essential to a communication medium which has universal expressive power. Probably

few messages, if any, in the real world are conveyed without any loss occurring between the speaker's intention and the hearer's apprehension. However, the design of human language allows us to approach as nearly as is necessary to any point or area in semantic space.

Is the study of meaning in language of any practical utility? Well, yes, at least potentially. For instance, everyone concerned with the teaching of language can benefit from, on the one hand, being made aware of aspects of meaning of which they formerly only had a subliminal knowledge, and on the other hand, by acquiring an arsenal of descriptive concepts and techniques which lend discipline and precision to thinking.

A field of endeavour where lexical semantics is of potential utility is the making of dictionaries. The theoretical concerns of lexical semantics impinge on the practical concerns of lexicography at a number of points. One is in establishing criteria for sense division—at present a somewhat hit-or-miss affair, as can be seen by comparing different dictionaries. Another is in the ordering of material in articles so as to highlight relationships. Others include: the structure of definitions, establishing criteria for deciding what collocational information to include, the discrimination of near-synonyms (something current dictionaries are rather bad at), and so on.

As a final example, mention might be made of a field whose promise is yet to be realized, and that is the electronic processing of language, whether for the purpose of machine translation, designing 'intelligent' robots capable of responding to ordinary language commands, and systems whereby humans can interrogate large databases in ordinary language and receive answers likewise. Progress is unlikely on any of these fronts without a deep knowledge of how meaning works in normal human interaction, even if, in the end, successful automated systems are not merely copies of human models.

The current state of knowledge about meaning phenomena is very patchy: some areas are relatively well charted compared with others. But in all domains, serious black holes of ignorance abound. Many of the fields of uncertainty involve very fundamental issues: for instance:

- How best to represent the semantic properties of a word? Should we aim for some sort of core meaning, from which variations in context can be predicted? (No one has yet come up with a satisfactory way of doing this, although as a programme it has its attractions.) Or should we accept that any such 'core' is merely an attempted distillation from a chaotic mass of memory traces of actual usage, which is never wholly successful?
- Are there such things as conceptual primitives, semantic atoms? If so, what are they like, and, indeed, what are they? Is the task like the human genome project—almost unimaginably complex, but in principle feasible, given time and money, or is it fundamentally flawed?
- Progress has undoubtedly been made in the understanding of metaphor

and metonymy, yet the true secret of what makes a successful metaphor or metonym seems still to elude the grasp of researchers.

- The constraints on the possible meanings of words seem to be only partially understood.
- I have no doubt that relevance is one of the key concepts of pragmatics, but in spite of the efforts of relevance theorists, for my money, the bird of relevance is still flying free in the bush.
- Finally, in this (somewhat selective) inventory of knowledge gaps, very little has been established regarding the most fundamental question of all: how does language connect up with the things and events in the world around us? How does the whole system work?

It sometimes seems that everyone has been as it were paddling at the edge of the ocean. However, this is perhaps overly pessimistic: progress has undoubtedly been made, and will continue to be made—and the enterprise is a worthwhile one.

Answers to questions

Chapter 2: Logical matters

1. Arguments and predicates

yawn	one-place
steal	three-place (*X stole Y from Z*)
thank	three-place (*X thanked Y for Z*)
pay	four-place (*A paid B C for D*)
be tall	one-place
be taller than	two-place
meet	two-place
put	three-place (*X put Y somewhere*)
imagine	two-place (one place may be occupied by a proposition, as in *A imagined X stealing Y from Z*)
day-dream	one-place
cost	syntactically three-place, but arguably four-place semantically, like *buy*, *sell*, *pay*, etc.
understand	two-place
explain	three-place (in *John explained the problem*, there is an implicit audience for John's explanation)

2. Sentence, statement, utterance, and proposition

X was inaudible.	utterance
X was uninformative.	statement, utterance (a proposition only becomes (potentially) informative when we know whether it is true or false: in itself, it tells us nothing; a statement comes with the 'epistemic commitment' of the speaker)
X was false.	statement, utterance, proposition
X was in a foreign accent.	utterance
X was ungrammatical.	sentence, statement, utterance
X was insincere.	statement, utterance

3. Propositional and non-propositional meaning

(i) Non-propositional. The desired action is the same for both, but there is a difference in expressive meaning.

(ii) One answer is that these are propositionally identical, because the context of *cheaper* indicates that *get* is to be interpreted as "buy". However, it is not totally out of the question that *get* is used to mean "steal", and *cheaper* refers to the cost of getting to Gregg's, in which case the difference would be propositional.

(iii) Intuitions differ here. For some, the only difference is in the attitude expressed, which is non-propositional. For others, there is no contradiction in saying *John's thin, but he's not skinny*, which suggests that *skinny* not only expresses an attitude, but also denotes a higher degree of thinness, in which case there are both propositional and non-propositional differences.

(iv) Propositional. Sentence (a) perhaps expresses disrespect for the writings, but passes no judgement; sentence (b) passes a negative judgement, and can be contradicted with *It wasn't garbage.*

(v) Propositional, even if both are interpreted to refer to time. The start of a race is a more precisely delimited time than the beginning, so (b) could be true and (a) false.

(vi) Non-propositional. There is no conceivable circumstance in which one could be true and the other false. *Yet* expresses some sort of expectation, but non-propositionally.

(vii) Non-propositional. The difference is one of register.

4. Entailments

(i) No entailment. A cat may lose a leg without ceasing to be a cat.

(ii) (a) entails (b).

(iii) (a) entails (b).

(iv) No entailment. On the assumption that *quadruped* denotes an animal which **in its well-formed state** has four legs, a cat which lost a leg would not thereby lose its status as a quadruped.

(v) (a) entails (b), but only if we take *animal* to mean "belongs to the animal kingdom". In the more everyday sense of *animal* which contrasts with *fish*, *bird*, *insect*, etc., there is no entailment.

(vi) (a) entails (b) (with the same proviso as in (v)).

(vii) Here we encounter two problems. The first concerns the status of 'cyberpets': are they pets? If the answer is 'yes', then presumably there is no entailment. But even if the answer is 'no', there is still the problem of dead pets. If *living* means "belongs to the realm of organic matter" (or some such—it is actually quite difficult to formulate), and we exclude cyberpets, then we can say that (a) entails (b).

(viii) (a) entails (b), but only if X belongs to the realm of entities of which "dead" and "alive" can properly be predicated. *The table is not dead* does not entail *The table is alive.*

(ix) First we have to decide whether (a) means that X has given up the habit, or has just put out a cigarette. There is a possibility of entailment only in the first case. But even that is arguable, because there are people who give up smoking several

times during their life. Strictly speaking, all that is entailed is that there was at least one period when X did not smoke.

(x) If Z is something like French, or Mathematics, then, alas, there is no entailment. But curiously, if Z is expressed as an infinitive, as in *John taught Bill to swim*, then according to my intuitions, there is entailment.

(xi) At first sight, (a) seems to entail (b), but this ignores the possibility of resurrection. Strictly, all that is entailed is that there was a period when Y became not alive.

(xii) In normal use, *watch* presupposes a changing stimulus, so we *watch* a game, but *look at* a painting. However, the mere expectation of change is sufficient to license the use of *watch*, so there is no entailment.

5. Relations between propositions

(i) Contradiction.

(ii) Contrariety (John may be indifferent).

(iii) Contradiction, assuming that normal presuppositions are satisfied, e.g. that Mary understands the statement, and has an opinion about it; otherwise, contrariety.

(iv) These are converses (and are equivalent).

(v) Contradiction (barring resurrection for wasps).

(vi) If we interpret *bachelor* as meaning "marriageable man who is not married" (thereby excluding three-year-old boys and the Pope), then there is no logical relation. If, on the other hand, *bachelor* simply means "unmarried male person", then (a) and (b) are equivalent.

6. Logical relations

parent of	Intransitive; asymmetrical.
ancestor of	Transitive; asymmetrical.
brother of	Transitive; non-symmetrical (if A is B's brother, B might be A's sister).
related to	Transitive (for blood relations; for relations by marriage things are not so clear—is one's brother in-law's cousin a relation?).
sibling of	Transitive; symmetrical.
friend of	Non-transitive; symmetrical.
near to	Non-transitive (if A is at the limit of what can be described as *near to* B, and C is similarly disposed with respect to B, but in the other direction from A, then A may not be near enough to C to count); symmetrical.
to the right of	Transitive (assuming a constant reference point); asymmetrical.
far from	Non-transitive; symmetrical.
resembles	Non-transitive; in some sense symmetrical from the strictly logical point of view, but notice that while it might be acceptable to say *My brother resembles Julius Caesar*, it would be decidedly odd to say *Julius Caesar resembles my brother*.

Chapter 3: Types and dimensions of meaning

1. Types of anomaly

(i) Dissonance; notice that substitution of *not as bad as* for *better than* removes the anomaly (for discussion, see Chapter 9, section 9.2.2.3).
(ii) There are two anomalies here. *What happened tomorrow* involves a dissonance; *a bad disaster* illustrates pleonasm (all disasters are bad; notice that substitution of *bad* with *terrible* removes the pleonasm, because some disasters are worse than others).
(iii) The anomaly can be cured either by substituting *conceal* with the near-synonymous *hide*, or by adding a closed-set item, namely *yourself*; it is therefore grammatical in nature.
(iv) Zeugma; plays on two readings of *dog*—"member of canine species"/"male of canine species".
(v) Improbability.

2. Degrees of necessity

(i) Improbable.
(ii) Expected.
(iii) Expected.
(iv) Impossible.
(v) Natural necessity.
(vi) Logically necessary.
(vii) Possible.
(viii) Canonically necessary.

3. Presuppositions

(i) Lesley is a woman.
(ii) Lesley plays the clarinet.
(iii) Lesley is an undergraduate.
(iv) Lesley has caused a lot of trouble.
(v) Somebody wrote the letter.
(vi) Lesley was ill; Lesley serves on the committee.

4. Dimensions of descriptive meaning

(i) Specificity.
(ii) Quality.
(iii) Intensity.
(iv) Vagueness.
(v) Viewpoint.

5. Dimensions of non-descriptive meaning

(i) Expressive meaning (surprise?).

(ii) Evoked meaning: style.
(iii) Evoked meaning: field.
(iv) Expressive meaning (intensity of desire; politeness); evoked meaning (register: style).

Chapter 4: Compositionality

1. Modes of combination

a forged passport	negational
a dead cat	Boolean
long eyelashes	relative
a clever footballer	indirect/relative (ambiguous)
a high price	relative
artificial cream	negational
a former Miss World	negational
a black hat	Boolean
a brilliant pianist	indirect/relative (ambiguous)
a poor singer	indirect/relative (ambiguous)
a small planet	relative
a striped dress	Boolean

2. Conventionalized expressions

(i) *You have to hand it to him*: frozen metaphor
he's got guts: compositional: non-default reading of *guts*.
(ii) Frozen metaphor (drawn from tennis).
(iii) Idiom.
(iv) Compositional: cliché.
(v) Idiom.
(vi) Frozen metaphor.
(vii) Idiom.
(viii) Compositional: collocation — non-default reading of *loaf*.
(ix) Compositional: cliché.
(x) *He swallowed it*: collocation — non-default reading of *swallow*.
lock, stock, and barrel: for those who know that these are parts of a rifle, frozen metaphor; for most of us, idiom.
(xi) Idiom.
(xii) Cliché.

3. Semantic constituents

A full answer is not possible here. The following are some suggestions:

(i) Fully meaningful:
(a) *dislike*, *disapprove* (*like* and *dislike*, *approve* and *disapprove*, are closest to antonyms — see Chapter 9);

(b) *dismount, disembark* (*mount* and *dismount* are reversives);
(c) *discolour, displace* (*discolour* means something like "cause to become wrong in respect of colour"; *displace* (on one reading) means "cause to become wrong in respect of place")
(d) (a case can perhaps be made for *disconfirm* and *dispossess*, but neither meaning is recurrent).

(ii) For most words beginning with *dis-* the prefix is not independently meaningful:
(a) *disgust, dismay, disgruntle, disturb, disport, discover, disconcert,* etc.

4. Active zones

(i) Father's hand; son's buttocks.
(ii) Petrol tank.
(iii) Ambiguous: frames or lenses.
(iv) Unambiguous: lenses.
(v) Handle.
(vi) Blade.
(vii) The carrying out of operations.
(viii) The drinking of it.

Chapter 6: Contextual variability

1. Distinctness of readings

(i) Homonymous senses (these are etymologically related, but I imagine few speakers of current English can intuit a relationship).
(ii) Polysemous senses.
(iii) Different perspectives.
(iv) Different facets.
(v) Subsenses.
(vi) Polysemous senses.
(vii) Polysemous senses; (autohyponymy: (b) is hyponymous to (a)).
(viii) Contextual modulation.
(ix) Different facets.
(x) A difficult case: these may well be local senses on a sense spectrum.

2. How many senses?

This is quite a difficult exercise, and illustrates the problems of 'real-life' lexicography. My analysis would be as follows, but there is room for disagreement.

There seem to be two basic meanings of *collect*:

(A) "bring scattered or distributed items together in one place";
(B) "pick up and take away".

A straightforward example of (A) is: (d); (e) is a straightforward metaphorical

extension; (b) and (i) are distinct specializations (in (i), the direct object (presumably *money*) is incorporated into the meaning of the verb).

Examples of (B) are: (c), (f), (j), (k), and (n). The instances in (l) and (o) are presumably metaphorical extensions of this sense (in neither case do the recipients literally 'pick up' anything).

Readings (a) and (g) are obviously related (although distinct by our criteria), and differ from (A) and (B) in that *book* designates a location in both cases. There is an intuitive connection between these and (h), but this has to be considered separate, as there is no transitive version (**The notice board collects students*).

We have not yet accounted for (m). There is a possible connection with (A) (*They survived by collecting mushrooms from the fields and rainwater in a bucket*); but there is also a possible relation to (a)/(g) (*Rainwater collects in the bucket*). My vote would go to the former solution, but the matter is far from clear-cut.

Chapter 7: Word meanings and concepts

1. Plain words

money, tickle, funny, surprised, doctor, vandal.

3. Basic-level categories

The following would be basic level for me:
SANDAL SEAGULL DAISY GRASS BULLDOZER BUS SUGAR
DELI(CATESSEN) SUPERMARKET PETROL STATION TOWN HALL MOTORWAY
ROAD PARK CANAL POLICE STATION WINE MILK
(It is true that in one of the senses of *road* a motorway is a kind of road, but the default reading of *road* is one that excludes motorways.)

Chapter 8: Paradigmatic sense relations of inclusion and identity

1. Taxonymy

The following are related by taxonymy:

poodle:dog
cottage:house
hailstone:precipitation
boot:footwear
icing sugar:sugar

2. Meronymy

Readers will have to give their own answers to this. My judgements would be as follows:

(a) prototypical examples
belt:buckle; jacket:lapel; fork:prong; candle:wick; door:hinge
(b) non-prototypical examples
shoe:lace; hand:vein; beard:hair; finger:tip;
(c) borderline
building:façade; bread:crumb; omelette:egg; colander:hole; potato:peelings
(d) non-examples
bottle:cap; hot-water bottle:water; bed:sheet; cassette-player:cassette

The non-examples all seem to lack the feature of integrality. The borderline cases are not sufficiently congruent in some respect. I am less sure about the non-prototypical examples: *lace* is not sufficiently necessary for *shoe*; *hand* and *vein* are non-congruent with respect to type; the *tip* of a *finger* is perhaps not sufficiently distinct; perhaps prototypical parts need to be different from their sister-parts, and that is why *beard:hair* is not prototypical.

3. Synonyms

(a) There are no absolute synonyms; all are at least near-synonyms. I would put *brave*, *courageous*, *gallant*, and *plucky* together in a group of propositional synonyms, since it seems paradoxical to assert any one and deny another. *Heroic* and *valiant* differ from the members of the first group in degree, and therefore are not propositionally synonymous with them, since one can say *He was brave (etc), but not heroic* but not *?He was heroic, but not brave*. Probably *heroic* and *valiant* differ in degree, too, with the former denoting the higher degree of the quality. *Bold* and *daring* should probably be separated from the rest because the others express a degree of approval of the action qualified, hence the oddness of *?a brave/courageous/etc. robbery*; also, *daring* indicates a higher degree of fearlessness than *bold*.

Within the group of propositional synonyms, there are none the less differences. For instance, a prototypical courageous act has a moral dimension, and requires awareness of wider issues, hence it is odd to describe a child or a dog as courageous, although they may be brave; bravery is prototypically displayed in the face of physical danger or suffering. *Gallant* is usually used of persons engaged in battle (as is *valiant*); *intrepid* is more at home in non-combatant situations (according to my intuitions, one can be brave without being intrepid, the latter indicating a lack of fear, rather than the ability to overcome fear); *plucky* expresses condescension towards the referent, but according to my intuitions is not propositionally distinct.
(b) Most dictionaries are rather bad at discriminating near-synonyms.

Chapter 9: Paradigmatic relations of exclusion and opposition

1. Types of opposition

(i) Complementaries.
(ii) Incompatibles.
(iii) Co-meronymy.
(iv) Complementaries.
(v) Reversives.
(vi) Antipodals.
(vii) Antonyms.
(viii) Converses.
(ix) Incompatibles.
(x) Antonyms (on the assumption that (a) one can have a neutral stance and (b) there are degrees of approval and disapproval).

2. Antonyms

far:*near*	polar
beneficial:*harmful*	equipollent
happy:*sad*	equipollent
brilliant:*stupid*	implicit superlatives
deep:*shallow*	polar
advantageous:*disadvantageous*	equipollent
fat:*thin*	(for the majority of my students these are equipollent)
happy:*unhappy*	referring to an emotional state, overlapping in the sense of "happy/unhappy with something", privative
satisfied:*unsatisfied*	privative
comfortable:*uncomfortable*	intuitions differ: for me, they are privatives
polite:*rude*	overlapping
easy:*difficult*	polar
thick:*thin*	polar
rough:*calm*	privative (*calm* denotes the absence of waves)

Chapter 10: Word fields

There is no 'correct answer' here, but working through the sets will dispel any notion that vocabularies oblige us by falling into neat, well-structured fields. Structuring is present, but mostly in smallish fragments, and there is quite a lot of messiness.

(A) The following words must be added to the set: *tableware*, *glassware*, *table linen*, *crockery*, *cutlery*, *condiments*. Mostly, this set is not problematic. There is a problem, however, of how to place the likes of *breadboard*, *table mat*, *napkin ring*, and so on. Also, assuming a cake-slice is an item of cutlery, does it fall under *knife*?

(B) There are several problems with this set. One is the lack of superordinate terms, for instance, for clothes that are prototypically worn indoors on everyday occasions, like jacket, trousers, shirt, sweater, skirt, and so on; also for clothes normally worn outdoors, such as overcoat, anorak, etc. Another difficulty is the fact that the branches of the hierarchy have a tendency to intersect. For instance, *vest* can fall under *underwear* and *sportswear*, *sweater* under *knitwear* and *'ordinary wear'*, *outdoor wear* and *sportswear* overlap, but not completely, and so on. This is because the superordinate terms embody different classificatory principles which are not necessarily mutually exclusive (*sportswear*: purpose; *nightwear/slumberwear*: time; *underwear*: position relative to body, and so on). Men's and women's clothes partially overlap (but we have no superordinate terms for them). Some items double as 'free-standing' items and parts of an ensemble (e.g. *suit* and *jacket*).

(C) In this set, taxonomic relations (like *dictionary:book*) must be carefully distinguished from part–whole relations (like *page:book*). Even so, there is a problem of intersecting branches: for instance *page* will come under several headings. Do we say that different subsenses are involved? Account must also be taken of facets.

Chapter 11: Extensions of meaning

2. Examples of non-literal use

(i)	*a nearly overwhelming desire*	hyperbole
(ii)	*a quick bowl of soup*	metonymy
	kick into high gear	metaphor
	the principals in the cast	metaphor
(iii)	*a fruitless attempt*	metaphor
	to cut into the heat	metaphor
(iv)	*room 323 is not answering*	metonymy
(v)	*staring out at the night*	metonymy
(vi)	*the yawning three-storey drop*	metaphor
	kick in	metaphor
(vii)	*his name was being withheld*	metaphor
	withheld from the local papers	metonymy
(viii)	*I could practically hear . . .*	hyperbole
	hear Mac squinting	metonymy (his voice betrayed an emotion which typically makes a person squint)
(ix)	*July . . . is an unsettling affair*	metonymy
(x)	*my sleep-smudged face*	metaphor (viewing sleep as a substance)
(xi)	*she's probably in the book*	metonymy
(xii)	*mortgaged to the eyeballs*	metaphor (debt is a liquid—which can drown a person)
	wasn't worth a cent	hyperbole

(xiii)	*the day [was] all heat and bugs*	metonymy
	ear-splitting regularity	hyperbole (also metonymy? — regularity doesn't split ears)
(xiv)	*have me switched over*	metonymy
(xv)	*pleated with erosion*	metaphor
	the hills rose up	metonymy
	the heaving gray Pacific	metaphor

Chapter 12: Syntagmatic relations

1. Contextual selection

(i) *Going to* has as selectional preference "location". *Club* is ambiguous ("blunt instrument"/"place of entertainment"), but only one reading is a philonym of *going to; bank* is also ambiguous, but both readings are philonyms of *go to*. Selection is therefore by discourse coherence.

(ii) *Book* has several readings, "record a sporting offence", "reserve a place at a restaurant, theatre, etc.", "engage a performer". Neither of the first two has its selectional preferences satisfied by any reading of what follows. However, one of the readings of *turn* satisfies the preferences of the third reading of *book*; there is thus a species of mutual selection. Finally, only one of the readings of *right* has its selectional preferences satisfied by the sense of *turn* compatible with *book*.

(iii) *Gain several pounds* is only two-ways ambiguous, although both *gain* ("earn/win"; "put on") and *pounds* ("money"; "weight") are ambiguous. This is because for each reading of *gain*, only one reading of *pound* satisfies it, so the pairs are mutually selecting. In the case of *wear an ensemble* there is only one pair of philonyms, namely *wear* = "carry on body" and *ensemble* = "set of clothes", the reading "group of musicians" for *ensemble* being excluded by semantic clash. The reading "put on weight" for *gain several pounds* is selected because of the greater accessibility of a plausible scenario in which the whole sentence might be used.

2. Degree of clash

(i) Inappropriateness.
(ii) Incongruity.
(iii) Inappropriateness.
(iv) Paradox (can be normalized by substituting a different period of time).
(v) Incongruity.

3. Selectional restrictions

a record X	score, price, distance, temperature, speed: requires some variable property that can be calibrated on a numerical scale (notice that *record kindness/politeness/hardness* are slightly odd).

a sad X ?X is sad	woman, teacher, class: requires a human being, or group of human beings (*?The horse is sad*), who has enough maturity to grasp a situation (*?The baby is sad*). film, book, poem, song, event: requires something which expresses, describes or denotes a state of affairs.
a leisurely X	meal, tour, walk round the park, cycle ride, shopping trip: human activity, usually involving moving about; voluntary; can be performed for enjoyment; speed variable without interfering with purpose.
Can you lend me X?	your car, a fiver, a pen, a tie, some sugar: inanimate; useful; control transferable temporarily; can be restored unchanged or replaced with same.

Chapter 13: Lexical decomposition

None of the following suggested analyses is fully satisfactory, and for each there are (at least) equally good alternatives:

skirt	object clothing worn by women on lower part of body attached at waist legs not individually covered normally visible
book	object serves as locus of text has many pages bound together has cover not part of an indefinite series appearing at regular intervals
cottage	object dwelling small permanent stone or brick
teaspoon	object implement cutlery with cup-shaped concavity at one end for adding sugar and stirring tea in cup
violin	object musical instrument

	stringed
	played with bow
	lowest note: G below middle C
dream	process
	mental
	during sleep
	experience unreal events
kiss (v.)	action
	physical
	intentional
	apply lips to something
	functions as conventional signal

Chapter 14: Grammatical semantics

1. Number

cattle	Singular in form, plural concord: *These cattle are. . .*; unhappy when explicitly counted, except with classifier: *?seven cattle, seven head of cattle*; no singular use.
oats	Plural concord: *These oats are. . .*, but (for me) more normal to express quantities with *much* than with *many*: *How much/?many oats does that sack contain?* *This feed has too much/?many oats in it.* Singular form has a distributive meaning: *This is an excellent oat for acid soil.*
scissors	Plural in form and concord: *These scissors are. . .*; singular reference (so-called **pluralia tanta**); needs classifier for counting: *one/two pair(s) of scissors.*
iron filings	Plural in form, concord and reference: *these iron filings are. . .*; odd in singular: *?an iron filing*, but no obvious classifier.

2. Tenses

When John had eaten, Bill switched off the lights.
When John was eating, Bill switched off the lights.
When John was about to eat, Bill switched off the lights.
When John has eaten, Bill switches off the lights.
When John is eating, Bill switches off the lights.
When John is about to eat, Bill switches off the lights.
When John has eaten, Bill will switch off the lights.
When John is eating, Bill will switch off the lights.
When John is about to eat, Bill will switch off the lights.

3. Aspects

resemble	simple form:	stative
	no progressive	
die	simple form:	perfective
	progressive:	approaching end-point of process
think of . . . as	simple form:	actual (*We think of you as our leader*)
	progressive:	potential (*We are thinking of you as our leader*)
guess (v. i.)	simple form:	habitual
	progressive:	in progress on particular occasion
	(*Does he know?*	*No, he just guesses*
		No, he's just guessing)
look happy	simple form:	(relatively) permanent
	progressive:	(relatively) temporary
exaggerate	(as *guess*)	
command	simple form:	performative; if non-performative,habitual
	progressive:	emphasizes a previous performative
graduate	(as *die*)	
feel (cold)	(as *look happy*)	
explode	simple form:	perfective, single event (*The bomb exploded*)
	progressive:	series of events (*The bombs are exploding*)

4. Case roles

(a)	**John:**	agentive
	the squirrel	objective
(b)	**on the table**	locative (goal)
(c)	**You**	agentive (*Go and taste that wine*)
		dative (experiencer) (*I can taste the wine in this sauce*)
(d)	**the river**	locative (path)
(e)	**a hole**	factitive
	it	objective
(f)	**London**	locative (source)
(g)	**The storm**	instrument (or force)
(h)	**John**	dative (beneficiary)

5. Modals

it is probable that	median
it is possible that	low
it is unlikely that	low
it is certain that	high

6. Levin and Hovav Rappaport's classes

clear-type	drain
wipe-type	sweep, scrub, unload
remove-type	erase, extract

7. Negpols

Negative items: *hardly, seldom, far from, free from, beware of, avoid*

Chapter 15: Reference and deixis

1. Implicit reference points

(i)	*recommend*	for what purpose?
	other	than what?
	route from	where to where? (cf. *road*, which has no inherent latent complements)
(ii)	*ring up*	who or what? (cf. *Mary is telephoning* does not have a latent direct object)
	time	for what?
(iii)	*left*	requires an implicit orientation to be identified
	next	after what?
(iv)	*rather a lot*	needs an implicit reference point—compared with what?
(v)	*the last*	requires identification of *this sit-in*, or some such
	better	than what? The one after? The one before? Something else?
		in what respect?
		from whose point of view? (For instance, from the point of view of the participants, a better sit-in is probably one that more people joined, and that was more disruptive.)

2. Deixis

(i)	*I, her*	person deixis
	understood	temporal deixis (past tense)
	meet her *there*	spatial deixis (symbolic)
	that week	extended spatial deixis
	bringing	spatial deixis
	that's what . . .	discourse deixis
	said	temporal deixis (past tense)
(ii)	*Come* out	spatial deixis
	there	spatial deixis (gestural?—the distinction is sometimes hard to apply)
	at once	temporal deixis (gestural)
(iii)	*I, we, he,* etc.	person deixis
	this Xmas	temporal deixis (symbolic)
	met, got, said, etc.	temporal deixis (tense)
	tomorrow	temporal deixis (symbolic)

3. Bring and take

For me, the normal sentences are: (iii), (v), (vi), (viii), (ix), (x), (xi), (xiii), (xiv), (xv), (xvi), (xvii), (xviii), (xix), (xx).

The rule appears to be that in direct speech, *bring* requires motion towards speaker or hearer, or someone/something in vicinity of speaker or hearer, otherwise *take* is used. In indirect speech, it appears that the deictic centre may be either the reporting speaker or the original speaker. (Note that these remarks may not be valid for all readers' usage.)

4. Non-prototypical uses of deictics

(i) The deictic centre is projected to 'the visitors' (notice that they are not the addressees).
(ii) The deictic centre is projected on to *Jackson*.
(iii) If this was discourse deixis, one would expect *that*. Perhaps this is a psychological use of spatial deixis, implying that the matter touches the speaker personally.
(iv) Similar to (iii)?

Chapter 16: Speech acts

1. Performative verbs

bet	as in *I bet you £50 she refuses* but not as in *I bet he drinks Carling Black Label*
pray	as in *We pray thee O God that thou wilt deliver us*
deplore	
celebrate	as in *We celebrate our team's splendid victory!* but not as in *We celebrate Xmas at home*

2. Locutionary acts, etc.

(a) parrot — Produce an utterance inscription (but not compose it, or contextualize it);
No true illocutionary act possible (although a parrot might possibly intend to attract attention by producing a bit of language, but that would not function by virtue of its meaning);
There may be perlocutionary effects.
(Note that there are reports of parrots using language meaningfully; if these reports are true, the above will have to be revised!)

(b) computer — Clearly, a sufficiently sophisticated computer could do everything. (Most everyday computer messages, though, like *You are running out of memory* and *Save large clipboard?* are not composed.)

3. Classifying performative verbs

complain	assertive (according to Searle) directive? (aims to elicit some action, but this is not normally specified) expressive (expresses an attitude to a state of affairs)
warn to	directive (according to Searle)

warn that	assertive (according to Searle) directive? (aims to elicit some action, but this is not normally specified)
confess	assertive (committed to truth of confession) expressive (expresses contrition) declarative? (in the context of a police interrogation, a confession is to some extent ritualized, and could be said to 'change reality')
bemoan	expressive assertive? (speaker is committed to truth of state of affairs bemoaned)

Chapter 17: Implicatures

1. Six implicatures

Everyone will have their own answers to this. Here are a few suggestions (the implicatures vary in strength):

(i) She doesn't spend much on clothes.
(Implicature: "Yes, she does spend a lot on clothes.")
(ii) I don't know if she has anything left from the £500 she won at bingo.
(Implicature: "She has nothing left from the £500 she won at bingo.")
(iii) Does she still push drugs?
(Implicature: "She still pushes drugs.")

2. Anomalies

(a) Infringes the maxim of manner: Avoid obscurity.
Avoid unnecessary prolixity.
(b) Infringes the maxim of manner: Be orderly.
(c) Infringes the modesty maxim.
(d) Infringes the maxim of quantity (gives too little information).
(e) Infringes the tact maxim by being indirect when directness would be polite.
(f) Infringes the maxim of relation
(g) Infringes the consideration maxim.
(h) Excessive adherence to modesty maxim (not really explained by the maxim itself).
(i) Infringes the Maxim of Manner: Avoid unnecessary prolixity.

3. Classifying propositions

(a) Entailment.
(b) Conversational implicature.
(c) Part of explicature by enrichment.
(d) *Ad hoc* arrangement.
(e) Conventional implicature (part of meaning of syntactic construction).

References

ALLAN, KEITH (1986), *Linguistic Meaning*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul.

ALLWOOD, J., ANDERSON, L.-G., and Dahl, Ö. (1977), *Logic in Linguistics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

ANDERSON, E. S. (1978), 'Lexical universals of body-part terminology'. in J. H. Greenberg, C. H. Ferguson, and E. A. Moravscik (eds.), *Universals of Human Language*, Vol. 3: *Word Structure*. Stanford: Stanford University Press, 335–68.

ANDERSON, STEPHEN, and KEENAN, EDWARD (1985), 'Deixis', In T. Shopen (ed.), *Language Typology and Syntactic Description* III: *Grammatical Categories and the Lexicon*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 259–308.

ARGYLE, M. (1972), *The Psychology of Interpersonal Behaviour* (2nd edn.). London: Penguin.

ASHER, R. E., and SIMPSON, J. M. Y. (eds.) (1994), *The Encyclopedia of Language and Linguistics*. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

AUSTIN, J. L. (1962), *How to Do Things with Words*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

BACH, E., and HARMS, R. T. (eds.) (1968), *Universals in Linguistic Theory*. New York: Holt Rinehart.

BALDINGER, KURT (1980) *Semantic Theory: Towards a Modern Semantics*, translated by W. C. Brown and edited by R. Wright. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.

BARTSCH, RENATE (forthcoming), 'Kompositionalität und ihre Grenzen', in D. A. Cruse, *et al.* (eds.) (forthcoming), Ch. 78.

BEATTIE, G. W. (1983), *Talk: An Analysis of Speech and Non-verbal Behaviour*. Milton Keynes: Open University Press.

BERLIN, BRENT (1978), 'Ethnobiological classification', in E. H. Rosch and B. Lloyd (eds.), *Cognition and Categorization*. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

—— BREEDLOVE, D. E. and RAVEN, P. H. (1973), 'General principles of classification and nomenclature in folk biology'. *American Anthropologist* 75, 214–42.

—— and KAY, PAUL (1969), *Basic Color Terms: Their Universality and Evolution*. Berkeley: University of California Press.

BLACK, MAX (1962), *Models and Metaphors: Studies in Language and Philosophy*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press.

—— (1979), 'More about metaphor', in A. Ortony (ed.) (1979), 19–45.

BLAKEMORE, DIANE (1992), *Understanding Utterances: An Introduction to Pragmatics*. Oxford: Blackwell.

BOLINGER, DWIGHT (1965), 'The atomization of meaning', *Language* 41, 555–73.

BROWN, C. H. (1976), 'General principles of human anatomical partonomy and

speculations on the growth of partonomic nomenclature', *American Ethnologist* 3, 3, 400–24.

—— (1995), 'Lexical acculturation and ethnobiology: Utilitarianism versus intellectualism'. *Journal of Linguistic Anthropology* 5, 51–64.

BROWN, C. H. (forthcoming *a*), 'Paradigmatic relations of inclusion and identity I: Hyponymy', in D. A. Cruse *et al.* (eds.) (forthcoming), ch. 47.

—— (forthcoming *b*), 'Paradigmatic relations of inclusion and identity II: Meronymy', in D. A. Cruse *et al.* (eds.) (forthcoming), ch. 47.

—— KOLAR, J., TORREY, B. J., TRUONG-QUANG, T., and VOLKMAN, P. (1976) 'Some general principles of biological and non-biological folk classification'. *American Ethnologist* 3, 73–85.

BÜHLER, K. (1934), *Sprachtheorie*. Jena: Fischer.

CANN, RONNIE (1993), *Formal Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

—— (forthcoming), 'Descriptive models for sense relations III: Formal Semantics', in *Handbook of Lexicology*. Berlin: De Gruyter.

CARTER, A. (1984), *Nights at the Circus*. London: Chatto & Windus, The Hogarth Press.

CHAFFIN, ROGER (1992), 'The concept of a semantic relation', in E. F. Kittay and A. J. Lehrer (eds.) (1992) 253–88.

CHANNELL, JOANNA (1994), *Vague Language*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

CHESTERMAN, ANDREW (1991), *On Definiteness: A Study with Special Reference to English and Finnish*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

CHOMSKY, NOAM (1965), *Aspects of the Theory of Syntax*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

—— (1976), *Reflections on Language*. London: Temple Smith.

CLARK, H. H. (1996) *Using Language*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

COLE, P., and MORGAN, J. L. (eds.) (1975), *Syntax and Semantics* Vol. 3: *Speech Acts*. New York: Academic Press.

—— and SADOCK, J. M. (eds.) (1977), *Syntax and Semantics*, Vol. 8: *Grammatical Relations*. New York: Academic Press.

COMRIE, B. (1985), *Tense*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

CORNWELL, PATRICIA (1997), *Hornet's Nest*. London: Warner Books.

COSERIU, E. (1975), 'Vers une typologie des champs lexicaux', *Cahiers de Lexicologie*, 27, 30–51.

CROFT, W. A. (1993) 'The role of domains in the interpretation of metaphors and metonymies', *Cognitive Linguistics* 4, 335–370.

CRUSE, D. A. (1980), 'Review of J. A. Hawkins, *Definiteness and Indefiniteness*', *Journal of Linguistics* 16, 308–16.

—— (1986), *Lexical Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

—— (1990), 'Prototype theory and lexical semantics', in S. L. Tsohatzidis (ed.), *Meanings and Prototypes: Studies in Linguistic Categorization*. London: Routledge, 382–402.

—— (1992*a*) 'Antonymy revisited: Some thoughts on the relation between words and concepts', in E. F. Kittay and A. J. Lehrer (eds.) (1992), 289–306.

—— (1992*b*), 'Monosemy vs. polysemy. Review article on Ruhl (1989)', *Linguistics* 30, 577–99.

—— (1992*c*), 'Cognitive linguistics and word meaning: Taylor on linguistic

categorization. Review article on J. R. Taylor, *Linguistic Categorization: Prototypes in Linguistic Theory*', *Journal of Linguistics* 28, 165–83.

—— (1992*d*), 'Presupposition', in *Encyclopedia of Artificial Intelligence*, 2nd edn. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1194–1201.

—— (1994*a*), 'Number and number systems', in R. E. Asher and J. M. Y. Simpson (eds.) (1994), 2857–61.

—— (1994*b*), 'Prototype theory and lexical relations', *Rivista di Linguistica* 6.2, 167–88.

—— (1995), 'Polysemy and related phenomena from a cognitive linguistic viewpoint', in P. St. Dizier and E. Viegas (eds.), *Computational Lexical Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 33–49.

—— (forthcoming *a*), 'Descriptive models for sense relations II: Cognitive semantics', in D. A. Cruse *et al.* (eds.) (forthcoming), ch. 74.

—— (forthcoming *b*), 'Paradigmatic relations of exclusion and opposition III: Reversivity', in D. A. Cruse *et al.* (eds.) (forthcoming), ch. 69.

—— (forthcoming *c*), 'Dimensions of meaning II: Descriptive aspects', in D. A. Cruse *et al.* (eds.) (forthcoming), ch. 47.

—— and Togia, Pagona (1995), 'Towards a cognitive model of antonymy', *Lexicology* 1.95, 113–41.

—— Hundsnurscher, F., Job, M., and Lutzeier, P.-R. (eds.) (forthcoming), *Handbook of Lexicology*. Berlin: De Gruyter.

Dahl, Östen (1985), *Tense and Aspect Systems*. Oxford: Blackwell.

Deane, P. D. (1996), 'On Jackendoff's conceptual semantics'. *Cognitive Linguistics* 7.1, 35–92.

Dillon, G. L. (1979), *Introduction to Contemporary Linguistic Semantics*. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston.

Dirven, René (1985), 'Metaphor as a basic means for extending the lexicon', in W. Paprotte and R. Dirven (eds.), *The Ubiquity of Metaphor*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.

Ellis, A., and Beattie, G. W. (1986) *The Psychology of Language and Communication*. London: Geo. Weidenfeld & Nicolson.

Fillmore, C. J. (1968), 'The case for case', in E. Bach and R. T. Harms (eds.) (1968), 1–88.

—— (1977), 'The case for case reopened', in P. Cole and V. M. Sadock (eds.) (1977), 59–81.

Fraser, B. (1970), 'Idioms within a transformational grammar', *Foundations of Language* 6, 22–42.

Frawley, William (1992), *Linguistic Semantics*. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Geckeler, Horst (1971), *Strukturelle Semantik und Wortfeldtheorie*. Munich: Fink.

Geeraerts, Dirk (1993), 'Vagueness's puzzles, polysemy's vagaries', *Cognitive Linguistics* 4.3, 223–72.

Gibbs, R. W. (1990), 'Psycholinguistic studies on the conceptual basis of idiomaticity', *Cognitive Linguistics* 1.4, 417–51.

Givón, Talmy (1984), *Syntax: A Functional-Typological Introduction* I. Amsterdam: Benjamins.

GRAFTON, SUE (1994), *J is for Judgement*. London: Pan Books.
GRICE, H. P. (1975), 'Logic and conversation', in P. Cole and J. L. Morgan (eds.) (1975), 41–58.
HAAS, W. (1962), 'The theory of translation', *Philosphy* 37, 208–28. Reprinted in G. H. R. Parkinson (ed.), *The Theory of Meaning*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1968, pp. 86–108.
—— (1964), 'Semantic value', in *Proceedings of the IXth International Congress of Linguists*. The Hague: Mouton, pp. 1066–72.
HALLIDAY, M. A. K. (1970), 'Functional diversity in language', *Foundations of Language* 6, 322–61.
—— (1985), *An Introduction to Functional Grammar*. London: Edward Arnold.
HAMPTON, J. (1991), 'The combination of prototype concepts', in P. Schwanenflugel (ed.) (1991), 91–116.
HAWKINS, J. (1978), *Definiteness and Indefiniteness. A Study in Reference and Grammaticality Prediction*. London: Croom Helm.
HJELMSLEV, LOUIS (1961), *Prolegomena to a Theory of Language*, translated by F. J. Whitfield. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press.
HOCKETT, C. F. (1958), *A Course in Modern Linguistics*. New York: Macmillan.
HORN, L. (1984), 'Toward a new taxonomy for pragmatic inference: Q-based and R-based implicature', in D. Schiffrin (ed.), *Georgetown University Round Table on Language and Linguistics 1984: Meaning, Form and Use in Context: Linguistic Applications*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press, 11–42.
HUNN, E. S. (1983), 'The utilitarian factor in folk biological classification', *American Anthropologist* 84, 830–47.
HURFORD, J. R., and HEASLEY, B. (1983), *Semantics: A Coursebook*. London and New York: Cambridge University Press.
JACKENDOFF, RAY (1983), *Semantics and Cognition*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
—— (1990), *Semantic Structures*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
—— (1996), 'Conceptual semantics and cognitive linguistics', *Cognitive Linguistics* 7.1, 93–129.
JAKOBSON, R., and HALLE, M. (1956), *Fundamentals of Language*. The Hague: Mouton.
KASTOVSKY, DIETER (1980), 'Selectional restrictions and lexical solidarities', in D. Kastovsky (ed.), *Perspektiven der lexikalischen Semantik*. Bonn: Bouvier Verlag Herbert Grundmann, 70–92.
KATZ, J. J. (1972), *Semantic Theory*. New York: Harper & Row.
—— and FODOR, J. A. (1963), 'The structure of a semantic theory', *Language* 39, 170–210. Reprinted in J. A. Fodor and J. J. Katz (eds.) (1964), *The Structure of Language: Readings in the Philosophy of Language*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 479–518.
KITTAY, E. F., and LEHRER, A. J. (eds.) (1992), *Frames, Fields and Contrasts*: New Essays in Semantic and Lexical Organization. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
KÖVECSES, ZOLTÁN (1988), *The Language of Love*. Lewisburg: Bucknell University Press.
—— and RADDEN, GÜNTER (1998), 'Metonymy: developing a cognitive linguistic view', *Cognitive Linguistics* 9.1, 37–77.
LABOV, WILLIAM (1973), 'The boundaries of words and their meanings', in C.-J. N.

Bailey and R. W. Shuy (eds.), *New Ways of Analyzing Variation in English*. Washington: Georgetown University Press, 340–73.

LAKOFF, GEORGE (1987), *Women, Fire and Dangerous Things*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

—— (1990), 'The invariance hypothesis: is abstract reason based on image-schemas?' *Cognitive Linguistics* 12.1, 39–74.

—— and JOHNSON, MARK (1980), *Metaphors We Live By*. Chicago and London: Chicago University Press.

—— and TURNER, MARK (1989), *Beyond Cool Reason: A Field Guide to Poetic Metaphor*. Chicago and London: University of Chicago Press.

LANGACKER, R. W. (1987), *Foundations of Cognitive Grammar*, Vol. 1, *Theoretical Prerequisites*. Stanford: Stanford University Press.

—— (1991*a*), *Foundations of Cognitive Grammar*, Vol. 2, *Descriptive Application*. Stanford: Stanford University Press.

—— (1991*b*), *Concept, Image and Symbol: The Cognitive Basis of Grammar*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.

—— (1993), Lecture given to International Conference: 'New Trends in Semantics and Lexicography', held in Kazimierz, Poland, December 1993.

LARSON, RICHARD, and SEGAL, GABRIEL (1995), *Knowledge of Meaning*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

LEECH, G. N. (1974), *Semantics*. Harmondsworth: Penguin.

—— (1983), *Principles of Pragmatics*. London: Longman.

LEHRER, A. J. (1974), *Semantic Fields and Lexical Structure*. Amsterdam: North Holland.

—— (1985), 'Markedness and antonymy', *Journal of Linguistics* 21, 397–421.

—— and LEHRER, KEITH (1982), 'Antonymy', *Linguistics and Philosophy* 5, 483–501.

LEIBNIZ, GOTTFRIED WILHELM (1903), *Opuscules et fragments in édits de Leibniz*, ed. Louis Couturat. Paris: Presses Universitaires de France.

LEVIN, BETH, and PINKER, STEVEN (eds.) (1992), *Lexical & Conceptual Semantics*. Oxford: Blackwell.

—— and HOVAV RAPPAPORT, MALKA (1992), 'Wiping the slate clean: A lexical semantic exploration', in B. Levin and S. Pinker (eds.) (1992), 123–52.

LEVIN, S. R. (1977), *The Semantics of Metaphor*. Baltimore and London: Johns Hopkins University Press.

LEVINSON, S. C. (1983), *Pragmatics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

—— (1989), 'Review of Sperber and Wilson: *Relevance*', *Journal of Linguistics* 25, 455–72.

LYONS, JOHN (1963), *Structural Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

—— (1968), *Introduction to Theoretical Linguistics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

—— (1977), *Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

—— (1981), *Language, Meaning and Context*. London: Fontana.

—— (1995), *Linguistic Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

MCCAWLEY, J. D. (1981), *Everything that Linguists have Always Wanted to Know about Logic**. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.

MACKIN, R. (1978), 'On collocations: words shall be known by the company they

keep', in P. Strevens (ed.), *In Honour of A. S. Hornby*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

MAKKAI, ADAM (1972), *Idiom Structure in English*. The Hague: Mouton.

METTINGER, ARTHUR (1994), *Aspects of Semantic Opposition in English*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

MURPHY, G. L. (1991), 'Meaning and concepts', in P. Schwanenflugel (ed.) (1991), 11–36.

NEWMEYER, FREDRICK (1974), 'The regularity of idiom behaviour', *Lingua* 34, 327–42.

NIDA, E. A. (1975), *Componential Analysis of Meaning: An Introduction to Semantic Structures*. The Hague: Mouton.

ORTONY, ANDREW (ed.) (1979), *Metaphor and Thought*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

PALMER, F. R. (1986), *Mood and Modality*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

PARTEE, B. H. (1984), 'Compositionality', in F. Landman and F. Veldman (eds.), *Varieties of Formal Semantics*. Dordrecht: Foris, 281–311.

POTTIER, BERNARD (1974), *Linguistique Générale*. Paris: Klincksieck.

PULMAN, S. G. (1983), *Word Meaning and Belief*. London: Croom Helm.

PUSTEJOVSKY, JAMES (1995), *The Generative Lexicon*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

RICHARDS, I. A. (1965), *The Philosphy of Rhetoric*. New York: Oxford University Press.

ROSCH, E. H. (1973), 'Natural categories', *Cognitive Psychology* 4, 328–50.

—— (1978), 'Principles of categorisation', in E. Rosch and B. Lloyd (eds.), *Cognition and Categorisation*. Hillside, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

—— and MERVIS, C. (1975), 'Family resemblances: Studies in the internal structure of categories', *Cognitive Psychology* 7, 573–605.

RUHL, CHARLES (1989), *On Monosemy: A Study in Linguistic Semantics*. SUNY Series in Linguistics. Albany: State University of New York Press.

SAMPSON, GEOFFREY (1979), 'The indivisibility of words', *Journal of Linguistics* 15, 39–47.

SCHWANENFLUGEL, P. J. (ed.) (1991), *The Psychology of Word Meanings*. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

SEARLE, J. R. (1969), *Speech Acts: An Essay in the Philosophy of Language*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

SEBEOK, T. A. (ed.) (1966), *Current Trends in Linguistics*, Vol. 3. The Hague: Mouton.

SPERBER, DAN and WILSON, DEIRDRE (1986), *Relevance: Communication and Cognition*. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.

TALMY, LEONARD (1985), 'Lexicalization patterns: semantic structure in lexical forms', in T. Shopen (ed.), *Language Typology and Syntactic Description*, III, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 57–149.

TAYLOR, J. R. (1989), *Linguistic Categorization: Prototypes in Linguistic Theory*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

—— (1996), 'On running and jogging', *Cognitive Linguistics* 7.1, 21–34.

TSOHATZIDIS, S. L. (ed.) (1992), *Meanings and Prototypes: Studies in Linguistic Categorization*, London: Routledge.

TUGGY, DAVID (1993), 'Ambiguity, polysemy and vagueness', *Cognitive Linguistics* 4.3, 273–90.

TUȚESCU, M. (1975), *Précis de Sémantique Française*. Paris: Klincksieck.

UNGERER, F., and SCHMID, H.-J. (1996), *An Introduction to Cognitive Linguistics*. London: Longman.

WEINREICH, URIEL (1966), 'Explorations in semantic theory', in T. A. Sebeok (ed.) (1966), 395–477.

WIERZBICKA, ANNA (1996), *Semantics: Primes and Universals*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

WITTGENSTEIN, L. (1972), *Philosophical Investigations*, trans. G. E. M. Anscombe. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.

Subject index

abnormality (semantic) 219–24
  clash 221–2
  pleonasm 221, 223–4
absolute adjectives 290
absolute synonymy 157
abuse (of speech act) 344
accomplishments 279
active (voice) 280–1
active zones 77
activities 279
activity hierarchy 284
adjectives 289–90
  absolute vs syncategorematic 290
  attributive vs predicative 289–90
  gradable vs non-gradable 290
  modification 289
  order of modifiers 290–1
agentive (qualia) role 118
agentive role 283–4
  effector 283
  force 283
  instigator 283
Agreement Maxim 365–6
ambiguity 106–10, 309
  ambiguity tests 106
    autonomy 107
    identity test 106, 107
    independent sense relations 107
    independent truth conditions 107
    zeugma
  antagonism 108
  independent truth conditions 107
  non-lexical sources 109–10
  pragmatic (open) ambiguity 110
  of scope 36
analogues (lexical) 192
analytic sentences, analyticity 31, 251
animacy, animacy scale 273
anomaly 44–6
  corrigibility 44
  'cure' by replacement 44
  grammatical improvement by contextual manipulation 45
  semantic 45–6, 251–3
    dissonance 46
    improbability 46
    pleonasm 45
    vs grammatical
    zeugma 46, 108
antagonism (between readings) 106, 108
antonymous n-tuples 250
antonymy, antonyms 169–71
  equipollent antonyms 170
    characteristic meanings 170
    committedness of comparatives 170
  overlapping antonyms 171
    evaluative polarity 171
    inherentness 171
    partiality of comparatives 171
  polar antonyms 169–70
    characteristic meanings 170
    converseness of comparatives gradability 169
    impartiality of comparatives 170
    non-complementarity 170
approaches to meaning 10
  contextual 43
  linguistic 11–14
  neurological 11
  philosophical 11
  psychological 11
  semiotic 11

arguments and predicates 19–21
aspect (grammatical) 275–80
  habitual 278
  inchoative, medial, terminative 278
  perfect vs prospective 276–7
  perfective vs imperfective 276
  punctual vs durative 277
  punctual vs iterative 276
  uses of English progressive 278–80
aspectual character 278–80
assertives 342
attachments 156
attenuative 189
attributive adjectives 289
autohyponymy 110
automeronymy 187

backgrounding 58
Banter Principle 367
basic domains 141
basic level, basic-level categories 53, 136–7, 181
basicness 52, 53
  basic-level categories 53, 136–7, 181
  dependence and independence 52–3
  observation vocabulary 52
  primitivity 53
benefactive role 283
binarism 257
binarity and oppositeness 167
binding (of variables) 292
bipolar chains 189
  attenuatives 189–90
  implicit superlatives 189
bipoles 189
breaches of commitment 345
bridging inferences 371

calculability (implicatures) 351
cancellability (implicatures) 350
canonical necessity 56, 154
case roles *see under* functional roles 281–4
category boundaries 138–9
centred clusters 193
circumstantial roles 281
clash (semantic) 227
class relations 32–4
  and propositional relations 33
  disjunction 32
  identity 32
  inclusion 32
  intersection 32
  mapping 33, 34
    many-to-many 34
    many-to-one 33
    one-to-many 33
    one-to-one 33
  union 33
clichés 76
closed set items 89–90
clusters (lexical) 193–4
  centred clusters 193–4
co-hyponyms 166
co-meronymy 166–7
co-occurrence patterns between words 232
  extralinguistic factors 232
co-taxonymy 166
coding hypothesis 354
coercion of senses 120
collocational preferences 221
collocations 76
command-meaning 28
  compliance-value 28
commissives 342
communication 5–6
  channel 6
  hearer's meaning 6
  model 5
  noise 6
  sign meaning 6
  speaker's meaning 6
commutation 244
complementaries 168
  domain dependence 169
  logical definition 168
complex categories 78
compositionality 67–79
  limits to compositionality 70–9
    active zones 77
    non-compositional aspects of compositional expressions 77–9
      active zones 78
      complex categories 78–9
      noun compounds 77
    non-compositional expressions 70–5

clichés 76
collocations 76
frozen metaphors 74–5
idioms 72–4
models
building-block 79
holistic 79
scaffolding 79
modes of combination 68–9
additive 68
interactive 68–9
endocentric
indirect types 69
negational descriptors 69
relative descriptors 69
exocentric 69
principle of compositionality 67, 72
compound categories 139
concepts 127–40
classical approach 130–2
necessary and sufficient criteria 130
problems 130–2
concept network 127–8
domains 140
fuzzy boundaries 131
importance of 127
internal structure 132
links between concepts 128
profile and base 140
prototype theory 132–40
basic level categories 53, 136–7, 181
family resemblance 133
goodness-of-exemplar 132–3
mental representation 135–6
feature-based model 136
portrait model 135
problematic aspects 137–9
category boundaries 138
compound categories 139
context sensitivity 139
prototype effects 133–4
priming experiments 134
speed of verification experiments 134
types of conceptual category 139–40
word-concept mapping 127–8
conceptual categories as containers 206
conceptual gap 188
conceptual structure 129
conservativity 295–6
Consideration Maxim 366–7
constatives 337
constitutive (qualia) role 118
content plane 243
content words 90
context dependence (of conversational implicatures) 349–50
context in Relevance Theory 370
context sensitivity (prototypes) 139
contextual approach to meaning 43
contextual effects and relevance 369
contradictory propositions 31
contrary propositions 30–31
conventional implicature 24
conventional implicatures 349–50
conversational implicatures 349–61, 373–7
calculability 351
coding hypothesis 354
context dependence 349–50
conversational maxims 355–8
the Cooperative Principle 355–6
defeasibility/cancellability 350
flouting the maxims 360–1
Maxim of Manner 361
Maxim of Quality 360
Maxim of Quantity 360–1
Maxim of Relation 361
implicatures of politeness 361–8
maxim-based vs relevance-based accounts 354–5
non-detachability 350–1
problems of definition 353–4
relation to expressed proposition 352–3
relevance-theoretical approach 373–7
saying and contradictability 351–2
scalar implicature 359
standard implicatures 357–9
conversational maxims 355–8
Maxim of Manner 357
Maxim of Quality 355–6
Maxim of Quantity 356
Maxim of Relation 356–7
non-linguistic analogues 357–8
relation to cultural conventions 357–8
converseness 35
converses (lexical) 172

congruence 172
two- and three-place 172
correspondences (between domains in metaphor) 205–6
cost-benefit scale 363–4
count nouns 269–70
secondary uses 270
semi-mass use 271

dative/experiencer role 283
declaratives 337
declaratives (performative vbs) 343
deep cases *see under* functional roles 281–4
defeasibility (implicatures) 350
definite descriptions 314–15
definite reference 306–8, 312–18
conditions for success 306–8
definite descriptions 314–15
deixis 319–26
latent elements 313
proper names 313, 315–18
definite referring expressions 312–14
latent elements 313
NPs with definite determiners 314–15
personal pronouns 313
proper names 313, 315–18
temporal adverbs 313
degrees of membership (categories) 138
deixis 319–26
deictic vs non-deictic uses of locatives 32–5
discourse 323–4
non-deictic meaning in deictic elements 319
person, personal pronouns 319–20
social 322–3
spatial 320–1, 324
temporal 321–2
denotation 306
deontic modality 287–8
dependant (semantic) 226
derivational affix 89
derivational sense relations 149–50
descriptive meaning 46–58
characteristics 46–7
conceptualisation 47
displacement 47
logical 46
objectivity 47
referential 46–7
intrinsic dimensions 48–54
basicness 52–3
intensity 49–50
quality 48–9
specificity 50–1
vagueness 51–2
viewpoint 53–4
relative dimensions 54–8
necessity 54–6
salience 57
figure-ground effect 57
highlighting and backgrounding 58
presupposition 58
sufficiency 57
diagnosticity *see also* sufficiency 57
logical diagnosticity 57
natural diagnosticity 57
dimensions of meaning 43–61
descriptive 46–58
evoked 60–1
expressive 58–60
directional entailingness 296–8
downward entailment 296–7
negative polarity items 297–8
upward entailment 296–7
directionality of syntagmatic constraints 225–6
selector vs selectee 225
semantic head vs semantic dependant 226
directives 342
disambiguation 370–71
discontinuities (semantic) 241–2, 253–4
discourse deixis 323–4
discreteness, distinctness (of readings) 105–6
dissonance (semantic) 46
distinctness, distinctness (of readings) 105–6
antagonism 106
discreteness 105–6
distributional markedness 173
distributive plural 271
domain matrix 141
domains 140–1
basic domains 141
domain matrix 141
dual (number) 269

durative (aspect) 277
dysphemism 158

ellipted elements 372
enrichment (contextual) 353, 372
entailment 28–30, 250, 349–50
epistemic commitment 25
epistemic modality 287
equipollent antonyms 170
essential conditions 344
establishment (of readings) 108–10
  established vs non-established readings 109
euphemism 158
evaluative meaning 59
evoked meaning 60–1
  field, mode and style 61
exclamations 340
existential quantifier 291
experiencer role 283
expletives 59
explicature 370–3
  disambiguation 370–1
  enrichment 372–3
  reference assignment 371–2
  semantic incompleteness 372–3
explicit performativity 334–6
expression plane 243
expressive amplifiers 60
expressive constraint 129
expressive meaning 58–60
  evaluative meaning 59
  expletives 59
  expressive amplifiers 60
prosodic gradability 59
expressives (performative vbs) 342–3
extensional approach to meaning 21
extensions of meaning 199–215
  literal vs non-literal meaning 199–201
  metaphor 202–11
  metonymy 211–12
  naturalised, established and nonce extensions 201
  semantic change 214–15

facets 114–17, 147, 254
  ambiguity in containing constructions 115
  autonomy 115–16
  identity constraint 114
  independent metaphorical extensions 115
  independent proper nouns 115
  independent sense relations 115
  independent truth conditions 114
  unity 116
factitive role 282, 283
family resemblance 101, 132–3
felicity conditions 343–5
  essential 344
  preparatory 343–4
  sincerity 344
figure-ground effect 57
flouting the maxims 360–1
frozen metaphors 74
functional roles 281–4
  activity hierarchy 284
  agentive 281, 283
  dative/experiencer 282, 283
  factitive 283
  instrumental 282, 283
  locative 282, 283–4
  objective 282, 284
  participant vs circumstantial roles 281–2
fuzzy boundaries 131

gender and animacy 272–4
  natural vs grammatical gender 273
generalised quantifiers 294–5
generic level 181
generic reference 311–12
  collective reading 311–12
  distributed reading 311
Generosity Maxim 364
gestural deixis 324–5
Goodness-of-Exemplar ratings 132
gradability 169
gradable adjectives 290
grammatical constraint 129
grammatical meaning 89, 267
  adjectives and properties 289
  aspect 275–8
  functional roles 281–4
  gender and animacy 272–4
  modality 286–9
  number 269–72
  syntactctic categories 267–8

tense 274–5
voice 280–1
grammatical performativity 336–40
declaratives 337
exclamations 340
imperatives 339–40
interrogatives 338–9
grammatical word 88
grids 191–3
analogues, analogicity 192–3
ground (of metaphor) 202
guppy effect 78

habitual (aspect) 278
happiness conditions 343–5
head (semantic) 226
hierarchies 79–88
branching 179–88
beginner 180
meronomies 185–6
nodes 180
relation of differentiation 180
relation of dominance 180
taxonomies 180–1
higher order explicatures 373
highlighting 58
holonym 153
homonyms 109, 147
homonymy 109, 147
hyperonym 150
hyponymy, hyponyms 150–3, 250
difficulties of definition 151
hyponyms and superordinates 150–1
prototype approach 151–2
syntagmatic consequences 151
taxonymy 152
transitivity 152–3

ideational meaning 46
identity constraint 106, 114
identity test 106
idioms 72, 77
illocutionary acts 331–42
performative verbs 334–6
performativity 334–43
illocutionary force 26, 333–42
explicit vs implicit 333
image metaphors 209
image-schemas 207
impartiality 170
impartiality in polar antonyms 170
imperatives 339–40
imperfective (aspect) 276
implicated conclusions 375
implicated premises 375
implicatures 349–77
conventional 349–50
conversational 349–61, 373–7
implicit superlatives 189
impositives 363–4
impoverishment (of sense) 122–3
inappropriateness (semantic) 222
inchoative (aspect) 278
incompatibility, incompatibles 165–6, 250
co-taxonymy 166
incongruity 222
indefinite reference 308–10
ambiguity claims 309
specific vs non-specific 308–10
indirect speech acts 333
inflectional affix 89
ingredients 155
inherentness in antonyms 171
instrumental role 282, 283
integral parts 156
intensional approach to meaning 22
interrogatives 338–9
Irony Principle 367
iterative (aspect) 277–8

latency 282, 313
latent opposition 168
lexeme 88–9
lexical decomposition 239–61
aims 242–54
accounting for discontinuities 253–4
lexical contrasts and similarities 248–9
lexical relations and entailments 250–51
predicting anomaly 251–3
reduction 242–8
alternatives 260–1
correlations 240–1
discontinuities 241, 253–4
prima facie motivation 239–42
problematic aspects 254–7
binarism 258–9

bogus analyses 255
finiteness and exhaustiveness 256–7
modes of combination 259
over-hasty analyses 254–5
universal vs language-specific components 256
simplex-complex parallels 242
lexical gap 182–3, 187
lexical meaning 89, 111–19
between polysemy and monosemy 114–19
facets 114–17
perspectives 117–19
qualia roles 119
sense spectra, local senses 119–20
sub-senses 119
polysemy, polysemes 111–13
linear relations between polysemes 110–11
autoholonymy 111
autohyponymy 110–11
automeronymy 111
autosuperordination 111
non-linear polysemy 112
metaphor 112
systematic polysemy 113
lexical root 88
lexical rules 97
lexical semantics 85–261
approaches 96–102
componential 98–9
conceptual 100–1
formal 102
holistic 99–100
Haas 99, 100
Lyons 100
one-level vs two-level 96–7
polysemic vs monosemic 97
major problems 96
description of content 95–6
sense relations 96
structures in the lexicon 96
word meaning and syntactic properties 96
lexical senses 108, 122, 129
establishment 108–9
established vs non-established readings 109
homonymy vs polysemy 109
modulation 122, 129
enrichment 121
hyponymic 121–2
meronymic 122
impoverishment 122
selection, coercion and modulation 120
literal meaning 199–201
closest to basic human experience 200–1
default reading 200
earliest recorded use 199
most frequent reading 199
start of most plausible path of change 200
synchrony and diachrony 201
local sense 119–20
locative adverbs 313, 320–1
locative role 282, 283–4
goal 284
path 284
source 283
locutionary acts 331–2
logical equivalence 30
logical relations 34
converses 35
reflexive, irreflexive and non-reflexive 34
semi-converses 35
symmetric, asymmetric and non-symmetric 34
transitive, intransitive and non-transitive 34
loose talk 204

mapping 33, 127
word-concept mapping 127
marked term 172
markedness 172–3, 258
markedness and partiality 173
semantic markedness 173
mass nouns 269–71
secondary uses 270–71
material implication 29
Maxim of Manner 357
Maxim of Quality 355–6
Maxim of Quantity 356
Maxim of Relation 356
meaning postulates 260
medial (aspect) 278
mention *see* use and mention 36

meronomies 185–8
  automeronymy 187
  contrastive aspects 187–8
  levels 186
  lexical gaps 186–8
meronymy, meronyms 153–6
  diagnostic frames 153
  ingredients 155
  integral parts vs attachments 156
  logical properties 153
  meronyms and holonyms 153
  parts vs pieces 155–6
  prototype features 153–5
    congruence 155
    discreteness 154
    integrality 154
    motivation 154
    necessity 154
  supermeronyms and semi-meronyms 155
  transitivity 156
metaphor 112, 202–10
  analogue model (Black) 203–4
    primary and secondary subject 204
  and deviance 210–11
  conceptual approach (Lakoff) 205–9
    correspondences 205–6
      epistemic 206
      image metaphors 209
      ontological 205–6
    image-schemas 207–8
    metaphorical entailments 207
    personifications 209
    proverbs 209
    source domain 205
    target domain 205
  decorative function 209
  interaction of semantic fields (Haas) 203
  Relevance Theory 204–5
  substitution view 202
  vehicle, tenor and ground 202
metonymy 112, 211–13
  functions 213–14
  metonymy vs metaphor 211–12
  recurrent patterns 212–13
middle (voice) 280–1
minimal semantic constituent 71
misfiring (of speech act) 343
modality 286–9
  effects of negation 288
  epistemic vs deontic 287
  relation to deixis 288–9
  values of modals 287–8
modes of semantic combination 68, 259
  additive 68
  clusters 259
  configurations 259
  interactive 68
    endocentric 68
      Boolean 68
      relative descriptors 68
    exocentric 68
Modesty Maxim 365
modification 289
modulation of sense 120–3
  enrichment 121–2
    hyponymic 122
    meronymic 122
  impoverishment 122–3
monopolar chains 190–1
  degrees 190
  measures 190–1
  ranks 191
  sequences 191
  stages 190
morphological markedness 173

natural kind terms 55, 317
natural necessity 56
naturalised extensions 201
near-synonymy 159–60
necessity 54–6
  canonical necessity 56
  natural necessity 56
  social necessity 56
negative polarity items (negpols) 297–8
neutralisation 173, 258
nominal kind terms 55
non-descriptive dimensions of meaning 58–61
non-detachability (implicatures) 350–1
non-gradable adjectives 290
non-literal meaning 198–201
nonce readings 201–2
normality profile 43
noun compounds (semantics of) 77
number (grammatical) 269–72

countability 269–71
plural nouns with (optional) singular concord 272
secondary uses of count and mass nouns 270–1
semi-mass use of count nouns 271
singular nouns with (optional) plural concord 272
singular, plural, dual, trial, paucal 269

objective role 282, 283
patient 284
theme 284
observation vocabulary 52
ontological types 49
open (pragmatic) ambiguity 110
open set items 89
opposites 167–75
antonyms 169–71
characteristic features
binarity 167
inherentness 167
patency 168
complementaries 168
directional opposites 171–2
antipodals 171
converses 172
reversives 171
markedness 172
distributional markedness 173
markedness and partiality 173
morphological markedness 173
semantic markedness 173
polarity 174–5
overlapping antonyms 171

paradigmatic sense relations 143–76
relations of identity and inclusion 150–61
hyponymy 150–3
meronymy 153–6
synonymy 156–60
paradox 31, 222, 227
participant roles *see under* functional roles 281–4
partonym 153
passive (voice) 280–1
patency in opposites 168
paucal (number) 269
perfect (aspect) 276–7
perfective (aspect) 276
performative hypothesis 341–2
performative sentences 337
performative verbs 333–6, 342
assertives 342
commissives 342
declaratives 343
directives 342
expressives 342–3
truth-conditionality 335–6
performativity 333–40
grammatical 336–40
performative hypothesis 341–2
perlocutionary acts 331, 332
person deixis 319–20
personal pronouns 313, 319–20
ego-dominance 320
representative vs true use of plurals 320
personifications 209
perspectives, ways of seeing 117–19, 147
qualia roles 118–19
agentive 118–19
constitutive role 118
formal role 118
telic 118
perspectives, ways of seeing 147
philonyms 224
pleonasm 45, 223–9
and repetition 223
conditions for occurrence 226
plural 269–72
polar antonyms 169–70
polarity 174
evaluative 175
logical 174
morphological 174
polarity and partiality 175
positive and negative 174
privative 174
politeness 361–8
cost-benefit scale 363–4
impositives 363–4
maxims 363–8
Agreement Maxim 365–6
Consideration Maxim 366–7
Generosity Maxim 364
Modesty Maxim 365
Praise Maxim 365–6
Sympathy Maxim 366

Tact Maxim 363–4
Politeness Principle 361–3, 368
positive vs negative 362
Pollyanna Principle 366
polysemy, polysemes 109–10, 147, 210–1
coerced polysemy 109
linear relations between polysemes 110
regular 211
potency 273
pragmatic ambiguity 110
Praise Maxim 364–5
predicative adjectives 289–90
presupposition 58
priming experiments 134
Principle of Relevance 77, 369
processing effort and relevance 369
profile and base 140
progressive (English), meanings of 278–80
punctual verbs 280
stative verbs 279
verbs of perception 279–80
proper names 315–18
propositional acts 332
propositional content 24
propositional function 292
propositional independence 31
propositional meaning 46
propositional synonymy 158
propositions 25–6
incomplete propositions 26
prospective (aspect) 276–7
prototype theory 101, 132, 136–40
basic level categories 136–7
goodness-of-exemplar 132–3
mental representation 136
feature-based model 136
portrait model 135
problematic aspects 138, 139
category boundaries 138
compound categories 139
prototype effects 133–4
priming experiments 134
speed of verification experiments 134
types of conceptual category 140
proverbs 209
punctual (aspect) 277–8
punning *see under* zeugma 108

qualia roles 118–19
agentive 118–19
constitutive 118
formal 118
telic 118
quantification, quantifiers 35–6, 291–5
ambiguities of scope 292–4
conservativity 295–6
directional entailingness 296
existential quantifier 35, 291
generalised quantifier 294–5
interaction with negatives 291–3
propositional function 292
quantified NPs 291
quantifiers 291–5
restriction 291
scope 36, 291–4
universal quantifier 291–4
variable binding 291–2
wide scope preference hierarchy 293
question meaning 27
answer-conditions 27
answer-value 27

recurrent contrast test 70
reductive analysis 98, 242–8
reference 305–26
definite 306–8, 312–18
definite reference 306–8, 312–18
generic 311–2
indefinite 308–11
non-referential uses of referring expressions 312
referential meaning 46
referential stability 55
regular polysemy 211
Relevance Theory 368–77
criticisms of Gricean approach 369
explicature 370–73
higher order explicatures 373
implicated premises vs implicated conclusions 375
implicature vs explicature 373–5
Principle of Relevance 369
problem of context 370
strong vs weak implicatures 375–7
reversives 171–2
root morpheme 90

salience 57–8
  figure-ground effect 57
  highlighting and backgrounding 58
  presupposition 58
scalar implicature 359
scope 36, 291–4
  of quantifier 291
  ambiguity 292
segmental parts 155
  vs systemic parts 155
selectee 225
selection of senses 120
selectional preferences 221
selector 225
semantic change 214–15
semantic clash 221
  collocational vs selectional preferences 221
  inappropriateness 222
  incongruity 222
  paradox 222
semantic constituent 70–2
  minimal semantic constituent 71
semantic features 56
semantic incompleteness 372–3
semantic markedness 173
semantic primitives 247–8
semantic proportionality 71
semantics and syntax: a case study 284–6
  'clear' verbs 286
  'remove' verbs 286
  'wipe' verbs 286
semi-meronym 155
semiotics 7–10
  continuous and discrete signs 8
  iconic and arbitrary signs 7
  inguistic signs 9
  linguistic signs
    functional levels 10
    simple and complex 9
  natural and conventional signs 7
  paralinguistic signs 8–9
    illustration 9
    modulation 9
    punctuation 9
sense relations (general discussion) 145–9
  abstract vs concrete 146
  context sensitivity 147
  derivational 149–50
  discrimination 145
  lexicalisability 146
  multiple simultaneous relations 146–7
  paradigmatic 148
  recurrence 145
  related entities 147
  significance 149
  syntagmatic 148–9
sense spectra 119
sense, denotation and reference 21, 22
senses *see under* lexical senses 108
sentence meaning 22–4, 90
sincerity conditions 344
singular (number) 269
social deixis 322–3
social necessity 56
spatial deixis 320
  ego-dominance 321
  gestural vs symbolic 320, 324–5
  proximal, distal and remote 320
  psychological use 324
specificity 50
speech acts 331–45
  abuse 344
  breach of commitment 345
  felicity conditions 343–5
  indirect 333
  locutionary 331–2
  misfiring 343
  types
    illocutionary 332–43
      assertives 342
      commissives 342
      declarative 343
      directives 342
      expressives 342–3
    locutionary 331–2
    perlocutionary 332
  uptake 344–5
speed of verification experiments 134
standard implicatures 357–9
statement meaning 24–6
stative verbs in progressive 278
strict implication 29
strong implicatures 375–6
stylistic presupposition 221
sub-senses 119, 147
subject (grammatical), meaning of 283
sufficiency 57

supermeronym 155
superordinate 150
symbolic deixis 324–5
Sympathy Maxim 366
syncategorematic adjectives 290
synonymy, synonyms 156–60
  absolute synonymy 157–8
  near-synonymy 159–60
  propositional synonymy 158
  scale of synonymity 157
syntactic categories (meanings of) 267–8
syntagmatic relations of meaning 219–34
  abnormality 221–4
  directionality of constraints 225–6
  discourse interaction vs syntagmatic interaction 219–21
  normal vs abnormal cooccurrence 219–21
  normality vs interpretability 220
  pleonasm 223–4
  puzzling aspects 228–9
  specifying co-occurrence patterns between words 232–4
    arbitrary restrictions 233–4
    clichés 233
    non-compositional affinities 234
    stereotypic combinations 233
  specifying co-occurrence restrictions 229–31
syntagmatic sense relations 148–9, 224
  philonyms 224
  syntagmatic-paradigmatic connections 227–8
  tautonyms 224
  xenonyms 224
synthetic sentences, syntheticity 32, 251
systematic polysemy 113
systemic parts 155

Tact Maxim 363–4
tautonyms 224
taxonomies 180–3
  contrastive aspects 185
  intersecting 184
  levels 180–3
    basic level 181–2
    gaps and auto-taxonymy 182–3
    number of levels 182
    substantive 181
    technical 181
  natural vs ideal 183–4
taxonymy, taxonyms 152
telic (qualia) role 118
temporal adverbs 313
temporal deixis 321–2
  calendric vs non-calendric interpretations 321–2
tenor (of metaphor) 202
tense 274–5
  hodiernal systems 274
  metrical systems 274
  primary tenses 274–5
  primary vs secondary tenses 274
  secondary tenses 275
  vectorial systems 274
terminative (aspect) 278
thematic roles *see under* functional roles 281–4
transitivity (of meronymy) 156
transitivity (logical) 34
trial (number) 269
truth conditions 147

under-specification of messages 370
universal quantifier 291
unmarked term 172
uptake (of speech act) 344–5
use and mention 36–7
utterance act 331
utterance meaning 26–7

vagueness 51–2, 122–3
  ill-definedness 51
  laxness (vs strictness) 51–2
values of modals 287–8
vehicle (of metaphor) 202
voice (grammatical) 280–1
  active 280–1
    middle 280–1
  passive 280–1

weak implicatures 375–7
wide scope (quantifiers) 293–4
wide scope preference hierarchy 293–4
word 87–9
  derivational affix 89
  grammatical word 88
  inflectional affix 89
  lexeme 88–9

lexical root 88
word form 88–9
word families 149
word fields 179, 189–94
clusters 193–4
grids 191–2
hierarchies 179–80
branching hierarchies 179–80
linear structures 189
bipolar chains 189
bipoles 189
miscellaneous types 194
word-families 194
monopolar chains 190–1
word meaning 89–95
lexical vs grammatical meaning 89
content words 90
open vs closed set items 89–90
possible word meanings 90–5
word vs sentence meaning 90
Word-concept mapping 127–8
many-to-one 128
one-to-many 128
one-to-one 128
word-families 194
word-specific semantic properties 129
xenonyms 224
zeugma 46, 108

Author index

Allan, K. 299
Allwood, J.A. 39
Anderson, L.-G. 39
Anderson, E.S. 161
Anderson, S. 327
Argyle, M. 16
Aristotle 202
Austin, J.L. 331, 345

Baldinger, K. 261
Beattie, G.W. 16
Berlin, B. 131, 196
Black, M. 202, 203–4, 210–11, 216
Blakemore, D. 346, 353, 371, 373, 374, 378
Bolinger, D. 261
Brown, C.H. 161
Bühler, K. 319

Cann, R. 39, 81, 161, 294, 295, 296, 300
Chaffin, R. 161
Chesterman, A. 327
Chomsky, A. 92, 93, 94, 98, 102, 220
Comrie, B. 274
Cornwell, P. 201–2
Coseriu, E. 261
Croft, W.A. 216
Cruse, D.A. 44, 56, 60, 63, 72, 80, 81, 119, 124, 138, 142, 151–2, 154–6 161, 167, 171, 176, 190, 192, 195, 222, 235, 299, 315

Dahl, O. 39, 300
Deane, P.D. 261
Dillon, G.L. 81
Dirven, R. 216

Ellis, A. 16

Fillmore, C.J. 282–4, 300
Firth, J.R. 99
Fodor 98–9, 235, 247, 256–7, 261
Fraser, B. 81
Frawley, W. 299

Gibbs, R.W. 81
Geckeler, H. 261
Geeraerts, D. 124
Givón, T. 327
Grafton, S. 215–6
Grice, H.P. 353, 355–61, 363, 368, 369, 378

Haas, W. 99, 100, 102, 203, 204, 210, 216
Halliday, M.A.K. 46, 63, 287–8, 300
Hampton, J. 139, 142
Hawkins, J. 310
Heasley, B. 39
Hjelmslev, L. 98, 242–8, 261
Hockett, C.F. 47
Horn, L. 378
Hovav Rappaport, M. 285–6
Hunn, E.S. 196
Hurford, J.R. 39

Jackendoff, R. 94, 101, 102, 142, 235, 261, 306
Jakobson, R. 211

Kastovsky, D. 235
Katz, J.J. 81, 98, 99, 235, 247, 256–7, 261